



Latin for Beginners

Project Gutenberg's Latin for Beginners, by Benjamin Leonard D'Ooge This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org

Title: Latin for Beginners

Author: Benjamin Leonard D'Ooge

Release Date: April 25, 2006 [EBook #18251]

Language: English

Character set encoding: ISO-8859-1

*** START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK LATIN FOR BEGINNERS ***

Produced by Louise Hope, Dave Maddock and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net> (This file was made using scans of public domain material by TextKit.com)

[Transcriber's Notes:

This text file is intended for users whose computers or text readers cannot display either of the utf-8 versions (plain text or html). A few necessary changes have been made.

The macron (straight line, representing long vowels) has been replaced everywhere by a circumflex accent: â ê î ô û Â Ê Î Ô Û The "y" in "Pythia", "Lydia" and "peristylum" is also long, and is marked "y:" in vocabulary

lists.

The breve symbol, representing a short vowel, has been omitted. This symbol was used only in the introductory section on pronunciation (§1-18), and in one or two vocabulary entries. The notation [oo] represents short "oo". Letters shown with combined breve and macron have been expanded as "-ei or -êi", "-ius or -îus".

To make this unpaginated e-text easier to use, each chapter's Special Vocabulary has been included with its chapter *in addition to* its original location near the end of the book. The same was done with the irregular verbs. The vocabulary lists are at the beginning of each chapter, as far as possible from the Exercises.

Boldface is shown by «guillemets», italics by *lines*.

The variation between "æ" (English text) and "ae" (Latin text) is as in the original. Bracketed passages in the original are shown in [[double brackets]].]

* * * * *

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE, Ph.D.

Professor in the Michigan State Normal College

Ginn and Company Boston · New York · Chicago · London

Copyright, 1909, 1911 by Benjamin L. D'Ooge Entered at Stationers' Hall All Rights Reserved 013.4

The Athenæum Press Ginn and Company · Proprietors · Boston · U.S.A.

* * * * *

PREFACE

To make the course preparatory to Cæsar at the same time systematic, thorough, clear, and interesting is the purpose of this series of lessons.

The first pages are devoted to a brief discussion of the Latin language, its history, and its educational value. The body of the book, consisting of seventy-nine lessons, is divided into three parts.

Part I is devoted to pronunciation, quantity, accent, and kindred

introductory essentials.

Part II carries the work through the first sixty lessons, and is devoted

to the study of forms and vocabulary, together with some elementary constructions, a knowledge of which is necessary for the translation of the exercises and reading matter. The first few lessons have been made unusually simple, to meet the wants of pupils not well grounded in English grammar.

Part III contains nineteen lessons, and is concerned primarily with the

study of syntax and of subjunctive and irregular verb forms. The last three of these lessons constitute a review of all the constructions presented in the book. There is abundant easy reading matter; and, in order to secure proper concentration of effort upon syntax and translation, no new vocabularies are introduced, but the vocabularies in

Part II are reviewed.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers:

The forms are presented in their natural sequence, and are given, for the most part, in the body of the book as well as in a grammatical appendix. The work on the verb is intensive in character, work in other directions being reduced to a minimum while this is going on. The forms of the subjunctive are studied in correlation with the subjunctive constructions.

The vocabulary has been selected with the greatest care, using Lodge's "Dictionary of Secondary Latin" and Browne's "Latin Word List" as a basis. There are about six hundred words, exclusive of proper names, in the special vocabularies, and these are among the simplest and commonest words in the language. More than ninety-five per cent of those chosen are Cæsarian, and of these more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. The few words not Cæsarian are of such frequent occurrence in Cicero, Vergil, and other authors as to justify their appearance here. But teachers desiring to confine word study to Cæsar can easily do so, as the Cæsarian words are printed in the vocabularies in distinctive type. Concrete nouns have been preferred to abstract, root words to compounds and derivatives, even when the latter were of more frequent occurrence in Cæsar. To assist the memory, related English words are added in each special vocabulary. To insure more careful preparation, the special vocabularies have been removed from their respective lessons and placed by themselves. The general vocabulary contains about twelve hundred words, and of these above eighty-five per cent are found in Cæsar.

The syntax has been limited to those essentials which recent investigations, such as those of Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators, have shown to belong properly to the work of the first year. The constructions are presented, as far as possible, from the standpoint of English, the English usage being given first and the Latin compared or contrasted with it. Special attention has been given to the constructions of participles, the gerund and gerundive, and the infinitive in indirect statements. Constructions having a logical connection are not separated but are treated together.

Exercises for translation occur throughout, those for translation into Latin being, as a rule, only half as long as those for translation into English. In

Part III a few of the commoner idioms in Cæsar are

introduced and the sentences are drawn mainly from that author. From first to last a consistent effort is made to instill a proper regard for Latin word order, the first principles of which are laid down early in the course.

Selections for reading are unusually abundant and are introduced from the earliest possible moment. These increase in number and length as the book progresses, and, for the most part, are made an integral part of the lessons instead of being massed at the end of the book. This arrangement insures a more constant and thorough drill in forms and vocabulary, promotes reading power, and affords a breathing spell between succeeding subjects. The material is drawn from historical and mythological sources, and the vocabulary employed includes but few words not already learned. The book closes with a continued story which recounts the chief incidents in the life of a Roman boy. The last chapters record his experiences in Cæsar's army, and contain much information that will facilitate the interpretation of the Commentaries. The early emphasis placed on word order and sentence structure, the simplicity of the syntax, and the familiarity of the vocabulary, make the reading selections especially useful for work in sight translation.

Reviews are called for at frequent intervals, and to facilitate this branch of the work an Appendix of Reviews has been prepared, covering both the vocabulary and the grammar.

The illustrations are numerous, and will, it is hoped, do much to stimulate interest in the ancient world and to create true and lasting impressions of Roman life and times.

A consistent effort has been made to use simple language and clear explanation throughout.

As an aid to teachers using this book a "Teacher's Manual" has been prepared, which contains, in addition to general suggestions, notes on each lesson.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the numerous teachers who tested the advance pages in their classes, and, as a result of their experience, have given much valuable aid by criticism and suggestion. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss A. Susan Jones of the Central High School, Grand Rapids, Michigan; to Miss Clara Allison of the High School at Hastings, Michigan; and to Miss Helen B. Muir and Mr. Orland O. Norris, teachers of Latin in this institution.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

CONTENTS

Lesson Page

TO THE STUDENT--By way of Introduction 1-4

PART I. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT, HOW TO READ LATIN 5-11

PART II. WORDS AND FORMS

I-VI. FIRST PRINCIPLES--_Subject and Predicate, Inflection, Number, Nominative Subject, Possessive Genitive, Agreement of Verb, Direct Object, Indirect Object, etc._--DIALOGUE 12-24

VII-VIII. FIRST OR *Â*-DECLENSION--_Gender, Agreement of Adjectives, Word Order_ 25-30

IX-X. SECOND OR *O*-DECLENSION--GENERAL RULES FOR DECLENSION--*Predicate Noun, Apposition*--DIALOGUE 31-35

XI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS 36-37

XII. NOUNS IN «-ius» AND «-ium»--GERMÂNIA 38-39

XIII. SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)--Nouns in «-er» and «-ir»--ITALIA--DIALOGUE 39-41

XIV. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS 42-43

XV. ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH--_Cause, Means, Accompaniment, Manner_--THE ROMANS PREPARE FOR WAR 44-46

XVI. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES 46-47

XVII. THE DEMONSTRATIVE «is, ea, id»--DIALOGUE 48-50

XVIII. CONJUGATION--Present, Imperfect, and Future of «sum»-- DIALOGUE 51-53

XIX. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF «amô» AND «moneô» 54-56

XX. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF «amô» AND «moneô»-- *Meaning of the Imperfect*--NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN 56-57

XXI. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF «amô» AND «moneô»-- NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN (*Concluded*) 58-59

XXII. REVIEW OF VERBS--*The Dative with Adjectives*-- CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS 59-61

XXIII. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF «regô» AND «audiô»-- CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (*Concluded*) 61-63

XXIV. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF «regô» AND «audiô»-- *The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs* 63-65

XXV. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF «regô» AND «audiô» 65-66

XXVI. VERBS IN «-iô»--Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of «capiô»--*The Imperative* 66-68

XXVII. PASSIVE VOICE--Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of «amô» and «moneô»--PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA 68-71

XXVIII. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF «regô» AND «audiô»--PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*) 72-73

XXIX. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF «-iô» VERBS--PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE 73-75

XXX. SYNOPSES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS--THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM--_Place from Which, Separation, Personal Agent_ 75-78

XXXI. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF «sum»-- DIALOGUE 79-81

XXXII. PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS--*Meanings of the Perfect*--PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*) 81-83

XXXIII. PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE-- PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE 84-85

XXXIV. REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE--PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Concluded*) 86-87

XXXV. PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE--PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE 88-90

XXXVI. REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS--_Prepositions, Yes-or-No Questions_ 90-93

XXXVII. CONJUGATION OF «possum»--_The Infinitive used as in English--Accusative Subject of an Infinitive_-- THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA 93-96

XXXVIII. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN-- *Agreement of the Relative*--THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (*Concluded*) 97-101

XXXIX-XLI. THE THIRD DECLENSION--Consonant Stems 101-106

XLII. REVIEW LESSON--TERROR CIMBRICUS 107

XLIII. THIRD DECLENSION--*I*-Stems 108-110

XLIV. IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION-- GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION--THE FIRST BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE 111-112

XLV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION--THE ROMANS INVADE THE ENEMY'S COUNTRY 113-115

XLVI. THE FOURTH OR *U*-DECLENSION 116-117

XLVII. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE--_Place to Which, Place from Which, Place at or in Which, the Locative_-- Declension of «domus»--DÆDALUS AND ICARUS 117-121

XLVIII. THE FIFTH OR *Ê*-DECLENSION--*Ablative of Time* --DÆDALUS AND ICARUS (*Continued*) 121-123

XLIX. PRONOUNS--Personal and Reflexive Pronouns--DÆDALUS AND ICARUS (*Concluded*) 123-126

L. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN «ipse» AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE «idem»--HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE 126-127

LI. THE DEMONSTRATIVES «hic», «iste», «ille»--A GERMAN CHIEFTAIN ADDRESSES HIS FOLLOWERS--HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Continued*) 128-130

LII. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS--HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Concluded*) 130-132

LIII. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 133-135

LIV. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES--_Ablative with Comparatives_ 135-136

LV. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)-- Declension of «plūs» 137-138

LVI. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Concluded*)-- *Ablative of the Measure of Difference* 138-139

LVII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 140-142

LVIII. NUMERALS--*Partitive Genitive* 142-144

LIX. NUMERALS (*Continued*)--*Accusative of Extent*-- CÆSAR IN GAUL 144-146

LX. DEPONENT VERBS--*Prepositions with the Accusative* 146-147

PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS

LXI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD--Inflection of the Present-- *Indicative and Subjunctive Compared* 148-152

LXII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE 152-153

LXIII. INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE--_Sequence of Tenses_ 153-155

LXIV. INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE--*Substantive Clauses of Purpose* 156-159

LXV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF «possum»--*Verbs of Fearing* 160-161

LXVI. THE PARTICIPLES--Tenses and Declension 161-164

LXVII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS «volô», «nôlô», «mâlô»-- *Ablative Absolute* 164-166

LXVIII. THE IRREGULAR VERB «fîô»--*Subjunctive of Result* 167-168

LXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC--_Predicate Accusative_ 169-171

LXX. CONSTRUCTIONS WITH «cum»--_Ablative of Specification_ 171-173

LXXI. VOCABULARY REVIEW--*Gerund and Gerundive-- Predicate Genitive* 173-177

LXXII. THE IRREGULAR VERB «eô»--*Indirect Statements* 177-180

LXXIII. VOCABULARY REVIEW--THE IRREGULAR VERB «ferô»-- *Dative with Compounds* 181-183

LXXIV. VOCABULARY REVIEW--_Subjunctive in Indirect Questions_ 183-185

LXXV. VOCABULARY REVIEW--_Dative of Purpose or End for Which_ 185-186

LXXVI. VOCABULARY REVIEW--_Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description_ 186-188

LXXVII. REVIEW OF AGREEMENT--_Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative_ 189-190

LXXVIII. REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE 191-192

LXXIX. REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS 192-193

READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS 194-195

THE LABORS OF HERCULES 196-203

P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY 204-215

APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES

APPENDIX I. TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC. 226-260

APPENDIX II. RULES OF SYNTAX 261-264

APPENDIX III. REVIEWS 265-282

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES 283-298

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 299-331

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 332-343

INDEX 344-348

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

TO THE STUDENT--BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

«What is Latin?» If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,[1] and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

[Footnote 1: Pronounce *Lâ'shi-um*.]

«The Spread of Latin.» For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome's power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

«The Romans and the Greeks.» In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster. It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks--poets, artists, orators, and philosophers--flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preëminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

«Rome and the Modern World.» After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

«Latin and English.» Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French--which, you remember, is descended from Latin--and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

«Why study Latin?» The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin

throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study. Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

«Review Questions». Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome's power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?

PART I

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE ALPHABET

«1.» The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no *w* and no *j*.

«2.» The vowels, as in English, are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The other letters are consonants.

«3.» *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called *_I consonant_*.

Thus in *Iû-li-us* the first *i* is a consonant, the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS[1]

[Footnote 1: N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.]

«4.» Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

«5.» The vowels have the following sounds:

VOWELS[2] LATIN EXAMPLES

â as in *father* *hâc*, *stâs* *a* like the first *a* in *aha'*, never as in *hat* *a'-mat*, *ca-nâs* *ê* as in *they* *tê'-la*, *mê'-ta* *e* as in *met* *te'-net*, *mer'-cês* *î* as in *machine* *ser'-tî*, *prâ'-tî* *î* as in *bit* *si'-tis*, *bi'-bî* *ô* as in *holy* *Rô'-ma*, *ô'-ris* *o* as in *wholly*, never as in *hot* *mo'-do*, *bo'-nôs* *û* as in *rude*, or as *oo* in *boot* *û'-mor*, *tû'-ber* *u* as in *full*, or as *oo* in *foot* *ut*, *tû'-tus*

NOTE. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of *a*, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of *quantity* but also of *quality*.

[Footnote 2: Long vowels are marked ^, short ones ...]

[Transcriber's Note: In this version of the text, long vowels are shown with a circumflex accent ("hat") and short vowels are unmarked, as described in the introductory notes.]

«6.» In «diphthongs» (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

DIPHTHONGS LATIN EXAMPLES

«ae» as *ai* in *aisle* *tæ'*-*dae* «au» as *ou* in *out* *gau'*-*det* «ei» as *ei* in *eight* *dein'*-*de* «eu» as *e* [oo] (a short *e* followed by a short *u* in one syllable) seu «oe» like *oi* in *toil* *foe'*-*dus* «ui» like [oo] *i* (a short *u* followed by a short *i* in one syllable. Cf. English *we*) *cui*, *huic*

NOTE. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

«7.» «Consonants» are pronounced as in English, except that

CONSONANTS LATIN EXAMPLES

«c» is always like *c* in *cat*, never as in *cent* *ca'*-*dô*, *ci'*-*bus*, *cê'*-*na* «g» is always like *g* in *get*, never as in *gem* *ge'*-*mô*, *gig'*-*nô* «i consonant» is always like *y* in *yes* *iam*, *io'*-*cus* «n» before *c*, *qu*, or *g* is like *ng* in *sing* (compare the sound of *n* in *anchor*) *an'*-*co-ra* (*ang'*-*ko-ra*) «qu», «gu», and sometimes «su» before a vowel have the sound of *qw*, *gw*, and *sw*. Here *u* has the value of consonant *v* and is not counted a vowel in *quit*, *quî*, *lin'*-*gua*, *san'*-*guis*, *suâ'*-*de-ô* «s» is like *s* in *sea*, never as in *ease* *ro'*-*sa*, is «t» is always like *t* in *native*, never as in *nation* *ra'*-*ti-ô*, *nâ'*-*ti-ô* «v» is like *w* in *wine*, never as in *vine* «vî'-num», «vir» «x» has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*) and is like *x* in *extract*, not as in *exact* «ex'-trâ», «ex-âc'-tus» «bs» is like *ps* and «bt» like *pt* «urbs», «ob-ti'-ne-ô» «ch», «ph», and «th» are like *c*, *p*, *t* «pul'-cher», «Phoe'-bê», «the-â'-trum»

a. In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce *tt* as in *rat-trap*, not as in *rattle*; *pp* as in *hop-pole*, not as in *upper*. Examples, «mit'-tô», «Ap'pi-us», «bel'-lum.»

SYLLABLES

«8.» A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus «aes-tâ'-te» has three syllables, «au-di-en'-dus» has four.

a. Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English *inside* with Latin *în-sî'-de*.

«9.» Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus «a-mâ'-bi-lis», «me-mo'-ri-a», «in-te'-re-â», «a'-best», «pe-rê'-git».[3]

[Footnote 3: In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as «inter-eâ», «ab-est», «sub-âctus», «per-êgit», contrary to the correct phonetic rule.]

2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

a. A consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*. Thus «pû'-bli-cus», «a'-grî».

EXCEPTION. Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also *ll* and *rr*, follow rule *b*. Thus «ab'-lu-ô», «ab-rum'-pô», «il'-le», «fer'-rum».

b. In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.[4] Thus

«mag'-nus», «e-ges'-tâs», «vic-tô'-ri-a», «hos'-pes», «an'-nus», «su-bâc'-tus».

[Footnote 4: The combination *nct* is divided *nc-t*, as *fûnc-tus*, *sânc-tus*.]

3. The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'-ti-ma*; the one next to the last, the *pe-nult'*; the one before the penult, the *an'-te-pe-nult'*.

«10.» EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:

Vâ-de ad formícam, Ô píger, et cõnsíderâ vías éius et dísce sapiéntiam: quae cum nôn hábeat dúcem nec praeceptôrem nec príncipem, párat in aestâte cíbum síbi et cóngregat in mésse quod cómedat.

[[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]]

QUANTITY

«11.» The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

«12.» «Quantity of Vowels.» Vowels are either long (^) or short. In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

[Transcriber's Note: The wording of § 12 is as in the original, except that the macron (long-vowel symbol) has been replaced with a circumflex accent ("hat"), and the breve (short-vowel symbol) has been omitted.]

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h*; as «po-ê'-ta», «tra'-hô».

2. A vowel is short before *nt* and *nd*, before final *m* or *t*, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *l* or *r*. Thus «a'-mant», «a-man'-dus», «a-mâ'-bam», «a-mâ'-bat», «a'-ni-mal», «a'-mor».

3. A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*. Thus «în'-fe-rô», «re'-gêns», «sân'-xî», «sânc'-tus».

4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

«13.» «Quantity of Syllables.» Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

1. «A syllable is short»,

a. If it ends in a short vowel; as «a'-mô», «pi'-gri».

NOTE. In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word «me-mo'-ri-am» contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.

2. «A syllable is long»,

a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as «cû'-rô», «poe'-nae», «aes-tâ'-te».

b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant, as «cor'-pus», «mag'-nus».

NOTE. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus in «ter'-ra», «in'-ter», the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like «saxum» the first syllable is long because *x* has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*).

3. In determining quantity *h* is not counted a consonant.

NOTE. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say «cur'-rô» as it does «cû'-rô», and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare «mol'-lis» and «mô'-lis», «â-mis'-sî» and «â-mi'-sî».

ACCENT

«14.» Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as «mên'-sa», «Cae'-sar».

«15.» Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. Thus «mo-nê'-mus», «re'-gi-tur», «a-gri'-co-la», «a-man'-dus».

NOTE. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the *syllable* and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. §13.2, Note.)

«16.» Certain little words called *enclit'ics*[5] which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The most common are «-que», *and*; «-ve», *or*; and «-ne», the question sign. The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. Thus «populus'que», «dea'que», «rêgna've», «audit'ne».

[Footnote 5: Enclitic means *leaning back*, and that is, as you see, just what these little words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon the preceding word.]

HOW TO READ LATIN

«17.» To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. §15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

«18.» Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

EXCELSIOR [[HIGHER]]! [6]

The shades of night were falling fast,
As through an Alpine village passed
A youth, who bore, 'mid snow and
ice, A banner with the strange device, Excelsior!

Cadêbant noctis umbrae, dum Ibat per vîcum Alpicum
Gelû nivequ(e) adolêscêns, Vêxillum cum signô ferêns,
Excelsior!

His brow was sad; his eye beneath, Flashed like a falchion from its sheath, And like a silver clarion rung The accents of that unknown tongue, Excelsior!

Frôns trîstis, micat oculus Velut ê vâgînâ gladius; Sonantque similês tubae Accentûs lingu(ae) incognitae, Excelsior!

In happy homes he saw the light Of household fires gleam warm and bright; Above, the spectral glaciers shone, And from his lips escaped a groan, Excelsior!

In domibus videt clârâs Focôrum lûcês calidâs; Relucet glaciês âcris, Et rumpit gemitûs labrîs, Excelsior!

"Try not the Pass!" the old man said; "Dark lowers the tempest overhead, The roaring torrent is deep and wide!" And loud that clarion voice replied, Excelsior!

Dîcit senex, "Nê trânseâs! Suprâ nigrêscit tempestâs; Lâtus et altus est torrêns." Clâra vênit vòx respondêns, Excelsior!

At break of day, as heavenward The pious monks of Saint Bernard Uttered the oft-repeated prayer, A voice cried through the startled air, Excelsior!

Iam lûcêscêbat, et frâtrês Sâncîtî Bernardî vigilês Ôrâbant precês solitâs, Cum vòx clâmâvit per aurâs, Excelsior!

A traveler, by the faithful hound, Half-buried in the snow was found, Still grasping in his hand of ice That banner with the strange device, Excelsior!

Sêmi-sepultus viâtor Can(e) â fîdô reperîtur, Comprêndêns pugnô gelidô Illud vêxillum cum signô, Excelsior!

There in the twilight cold and gray, Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay, And from the sky, serene and far, A voice fell, like a falling star, Excelsior!

Iacet corpus exanimum Sed lûce frîgidâ pulchrum; Et caelô procul exiêns Cadit vòx, ut Stella cadêns, Excelsior!

[Footnote 6: Translation by C. W. Goodchild in *Praeco Latinus*, October, 1898.]

PART II

WORDS AND FORMS

LESSON I

FIRST PRINCIPLES

«19.» «Subject and Predicate.» 1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences. A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

Galba is a farmer «Galba est agricola» *The sailor fights* «Nauta pugnat»

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

SUBJECT PREDICATE *Galba is a farmer* «Galba» *The sailor fights* «Nauta» «pugnat»

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a *noun* or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (*pro*, "instead of," and *noun*), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, *Galba is a farmer; «he» is a sturdy fellow.*

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.

«20.» «The Object.» In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The «doer» of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the «subject». «That to which something is done» is the «direct object» of the verb. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

SUBJECT PREDICATE /-----\ *The boy hit the ball* (verb) (direct object)

a. A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a «transitive verb». A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called «intransitive», as, *I walk, he comes.*

«21.» «The Copula.» The verb *to be* in its different forms--*are, is, was, etc.*--does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the «copula», that is, *the joiner or link.*

«22.» In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the *nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas*:

1. «America est patria mea» *America is fatherland my*
2. «Agricola filiam amat» *(The) farmer (his) daughter loves*
3. «Filia est Iulia» *(His) daughter is Julia*
4. «Iulia et agricola sunt in insulâ» *Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island*
5. «Iulia aquam portat» *Julia water carries*
6. «Rosam in comîs habet» *(A) rose in (her) hair (she) has*
7. «Iulia est puella pulchra» *Julia is (a) girl pretty*
8. «Domina filiam pulchram habet» *(The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has*

a. The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, *_Latin has no article «the» or «a»; thus «agricola» may mean the farmer, a farmer_, or simply farmer.* Then, too, the personal pronouns, *_I, you, he, she, etc., and the possessive pronouns, my, your, his, her_, etc., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.*

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

«23.» «Inflection.» Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is, are; _was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer's; woman, women_*. This is called «inflection». The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its «declension», that of a verb its «conjugation».

«24.» «Number.» Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding *-s* or *-es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

«Naut-a pugnat» *The sailor fights* «Naut-ae pugnant» *The sailors fight*

«25.» RULE. *_Nouns that end in «-a» in the singular end in «-ae» in the plural_*.

«26.» Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

«agri'cola», *farmer* (agriculture)[1] «aqua», *water* (aquarium) «causa», *cause, reason* «do'mina», *lady of the house, mistress* (dominate) «filia», *daughter* (filial) «fortu'na», *fortune* «fuga», *flight* (fugitive) «iniu'ria», *wrong, injury* «luna», *moon* (lunar) «nauta», *sailor* (nautical) «puel'la», *girl* «silva», *forest* (silvan) «terra», *land* (terrace)

[Footnote 1: The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as «causa», *cause*, no comparison is needed.]

«27.» Compare again the sentences

«Nauta pugna-t» *The sailor fights* «Nautae pugna-nt» *The sailors fight*

In the first sentence the verb «pugna-t» is in the third person singular, in the second sentence «pugna-nt» is in the third person plural.

«28.» RULE. «Agreement of Verb.» *_A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject._*

«29.» RULE. *_In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in «-t», the third person plural in «-nt». The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called «personal endings»._*

«30.» Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each. The personal pronouns *he, she, it*, etc., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb's subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus «nauta pugnat» is translated *the sailor fights*, not *_the sailor he fights_*.

«ama-t» *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love* (amity, amiable) «labo'ra-t» " " " *labors, is laboring, does labor* «nuntia-t»[2] " " " *announces, is announcing, does announce* «porta-t» " " " *carries, is carrying, does carry* (porter) «pugna-t» " " " *fights, is fighting, does fight* (pugnacious)

[Footnote 2: The *u* in «nuntio» is long by exception. (Cf. §12.2.)]

«31.» EXERCISES

I. 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.

II. 1. Nauta pugnat, nautae pugnant. 2. Puella amat, puellae amant. 3. Agricola portat, agricolae portant. 4. Fīlia labōrat, fīliae labōrant. 5. Nauta nūntiat, nautae nūntiant. 6. Dominae amant, domina amat.

[Illustration: DOMINA]

LESSON III

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

«32.» «Declension of Nouns.» We learned above (§§19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence *The lady her daughter loves* might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences:

«Domina fīliam amat» «Fīliam domina amat» «Amat fīliam domina» «Domina amat fīliam» *The lady loves her daughter*

«Fīlia dominam amat» «Dominam fīlia amat» «Amat dominam fīlia» «Fīlia amat dominam» *The daughter loves the lady*

a. Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in «-a» and the object in «-am». The *form* of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.

2. As stated above (§23), this change of ending is called «declension», and each different ending produces what is called a «case». When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases, or changes of endings. In English we have three cases,--nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding 's or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, *who? whose? whom?*

«33.» The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

ENGLISH CASES	LATIN CASES	Declension	Name of case	Declension of	Name of case	of <i>who?</i>	and use	«domina»	and use	translation
Who?	Nominative--		«do'min-a»	Nominative--	S	case of the	<i>the lady</i>	case of the	I	subject subject N G
Whose?	Possessive--		«domin-ae»	Genitive--	U	case of the	<i>the lady's</i>	case of the	L	possessor of <i>the lady</i> possessor A R
Whom?	Objective--		«domin-am»	Accusative--	I	case of the	<i>the lady</i>	case of the	I	object direct object
Who?	Nominative--		«domin-ae»	Nominative--	I	case of the	<i>the ladies</i>	case of the	P	subject subject L U
Whose?	Possessive--		«domin-â'rum»	Genitive--	R	case of the	<i>the ladies'</i>	case of the	A	possessor of <i>the ladies</i> possessor L Whom?
Whom?	Objective--		«domin-âs»	Accusative--	I	case of the	<i>the ladies</i>	case of the	I	object direct object

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in «-a», observe that

- a. The nominative plural ends in «-ae».
- b. The genitive singular ends in «-ae» and the genitive plural in «-ârum».
- c. The accusative singular ends in «-am» and the accusative plural in «-âs».
- d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.

«34.» EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

1. Silva, silvâs, silvam. 2. Fugam, fugae, fuga. 3. Terrârum, terrae, terrâs. 4. Aquâs, causam, lûnâs. 5. Fîliae, fortûnae, lûnae. 6. Iniûriâs, agricolârum, aquârum. 7. Iniûriârûm, agricolae, puellâs. 8. Nautam, agricolâs, nautâs. 9. Agricolam, puellam, silvârûm.

LESSON IV

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

[See Transcriber's Note at beginning of text.]

NOUNS «dea», *goddess* (deity) Diâ'na, *Diana* «fera», *a wild beast* (fierce) Lâtô'na, *Latona* «sagit'ta», *arrow*

VERBS «est», *he (she, it) is*; «sunt», *they are* «necat», *he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill*

CONJUNCTION[A] «et», *and*

PRONOUNS «quis», interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., *who?* «cuius» (pronounced *c[oo]i'ý[oo]s*, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing., *whose?*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

«35.» We learned from the table (§33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

«Fîlia agricolae nautam amat», *the farmer's daughter* (or *the daughter of the farmer*) *loves the sailor*

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

«36.» RULE. «Nominative Subject.» _The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?_

«37.» RULE. «Accusative Object.» _The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?_

«38.» RULE. «Genitive of the Possessor.» _The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?_

[Illustration: DIANA SAGITTAS PORTAT ET FERAS NECAT]

«39.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. 1. Diâna est dea. 2. Lâtôna est dea. 3. Diâna et Lâtôna sunt deae. 4. Diâna est dea lûnae. 5. Diâna est filia Lâtônae. 6. Lâtôna Diânam amat. 7. Diâna est dea silvârûm. 8. Diâna silvam amat. 9. Diâna sagittâs portat. 10. Diâna ferâs silvae necat. 11. Ferae terrârûm pugnant.

For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona's daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers' daughters do labor. 4. The farmer's daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls' flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors' wrongs. 7. The farmer's daughter labors. 8. Diana's arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

«40.» CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1. Quis est Diâna? 2. Cuius filia est Diâna? 3. Quis Diânam amat? 4. Quis silvam amat? 5. Quis sagittâs portat? 6. Cuius filiae labôrât?

LESSON V

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «corô´na», *wreath, garland, crown* fâ´bula, *story (fable)* «pecû´nia», *money (pecuniary)* «pugna», *battle (pugnacious)* «victô´ria», *victory*

VERBS «dat», *he (she, it) gives* nârrat, *he (she, it) tells (narrate)*

CONJUNCTION[A] «quia» or «quod», *because*

«cui» (pronounced *c[oo]i*, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., *to whom? for whom?*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

«41.» «The Dative Case.» In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as *from, with, by, to, for, in, at*. [1]

[Footnote 1: Words like *to, for, by, from, in, etc.*, which define the relationship between words, are called «prepositions».]

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by

means of case forms which English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the *dative*.

«42.» When the nominative singular ends in «-a», the dative singular ends in «-ae» and the dative plural in «-is».

NOTE. Observe that the *genitive singular*, the *dative singular*, and the *nominative plural* all have the same ending, «-ae»; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns: «fuga», «causa», «fortûna», «terra», «aqua», «puella», «agricola», «nauta», «domina».

«43.» «The Dative Relation.» The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *to*, *towards*, *for*.

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as *She went to town*, *He ran towards the horse*, *Columbus sailed for America*. *In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as motion through space_ is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that to or towards which a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that for which something serves or exists.*

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions--a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

«44.» «The Indirect Object.» Examine the sentence

«Nauta fugam nûntiat», *the sailor announces the flight*

Here the verb, «nûntiat», governs the direct object, «fugam», in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons «to whom» the sailor announces the flight, as, *The sailor announces the flight «to the farmers»_*, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, *flight* («fugam») 2. Its indirect object, *farmers*

According to the preceding section, *to the farmers* is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:

«45.» RULE. «Dative Indirect Object.» *The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.*

a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

«46.» We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers_*, and we have

«Nauta agricolîs fugam nûntiat»

«47.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.

I. 1. Quis nautîs pecûniam dat? 2. Fîliae agricolae nautîs pecûniam dant. 3. Quis fortûnam pugnae nûntiat? 4. Galba agricolîs fortunam pugnae nûntiat. 5. Cui domina fâbulam nârrat? 6. Fîliae agricolae domina fâbulam nârrat. 7. Quis Diânae corônâ dat? 8. Puella Diânae corônâ dat quia Diânam amat. 9. Dea lûnae sagittâs portat et ferâs silvârûm necat. 10. Cuius victôriam Galba nûntiat? 11. Nautae victôriam Galba nûntiat.

Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies[2] a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (§22.a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana's.

[Footnote 2: Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition *to* to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.]

LESSON VI

FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

ADJECTIVES «bona», *good* «grâta», *pleasing* «magna», *large, great* «mala», *bad, wicked* «parva», *small, little* «pulchra», *beautiful, pretty* «sôla», *alone*

NOUNS ancil'la, *maidservant* Iûlia, *Julia*

ADVERBS[A] «cûr», *why* «nôn», *not*

PRONOUNS «mea», *my*; «tua», *thy, your* (possesives) «quid», interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., *what?*

«-ne», the question sign, an enclitic (§16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as «amat», *he loves*, but «amat'ne»? *does he love?* «est», *he is*; «estne»? *is he?* Of course «-ne» is not used when the sentence contains «quis», «cûr», or some other interrogative word.

[Footnote A: An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.]

«48.» «The Ablative Case.» Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the *ab'la-tive*.

«49.» When the nominative singular ends in «-a», the ablative singular ends in «-â» and the ablative plural in «-îs».

a. Observe that the final -a of the nominative is short, while the final -â of the ablative is long, as,

Nom. filia *Abl.* filiâ

b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns: «fuga», «causa», «fortûna», «terra», «aqua»,

«puella», «agricola», «nauta», «domina».

«50.» «The Ablative Relation.» The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from*, *with*, *by*, *at*, *in*. It denotes

1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of which it is deprived--generally translated by *from*.
2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done--translated by *with* or *by*.
3. The place where or the time when something happens--translated by *in* or *at*.

a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o'clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

«51.» «Prepositions.» While, as stated above (§41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

«52.» RULE. «Object of a Preposition.» _A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case._

«53.» Prepositions denoting the ablative relations *from*, *with*, *in*, *on*, are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

«â»[1] or «ab», *from*, *away from* «dê», *from*, *down from* «ê»[1] or «ex», *from*, *out from*, *out of* «cum», *with* «in», *in*, *on*

[Footnote 1: «â» and «ê» are used only before words beginning with a consonant; «ab» and «ex» are used before either vowels or consonants.]

1. *Translate into Latin, using prepositions.* In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

«54.» «Adjectives.» Examine the sentence

«Puella parva bonam deam amat», *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In this sentence «parva» (*little*) and «bonam» (*good*) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives*,[2] and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

[Footnote 2: *Pick out the adjectives in the following:* "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?' 'Yes, sir,' said I. 'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?'"]

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of «parva» shows that it belongs to «puella», and the ending of «bonam» that it belongs to «deam». Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called *agreement*. Observe that *the adjective and its noun agree in number and*

case.

«55.» Examine the sentences

«Puella est parva», *the girl is little* «Puella parva bonam deam amat», *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In the first sentence the adjective «parva» is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a *predicate adjective*. In the second sentence the adjectives «parva» and «bonam» are closely attached to the nouns «puella» and «deam» respectively, and are called *attributive adjectives*.

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following:

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

«56.» DIALOGUE

JULIA AND GALBA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diâna? G. Diâna, Iûlia, est pulchra dea lûnae et silvârûm. I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diâna? G. Lâtônâe filia, Iûlia, est Diâna. I. Quid Diâna portat? G. Sagittâs Diâna portat. I. Cûr Diâna sagittâs portat? G. Diâna sagittâs portat, Iûlia, quod malâs ferâs silvae magnae necat. I. Amatne Lâtôna filiam? G. Amat, et filia Lâtônâe amat. I. Quid filia tua parva portat? G. Corônâs pulchrâs filia mea parva portat. I. Cui filia tua corônâs pulchrâs dat? G. Diânae corônâs dat. I. Quis est cum filiâ tuâ? Estne sôla? G. Sôla nôn est; filia mea parva est cum ancillâ meâ.

a. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the *vocative* (Latin *vocâre*, "to call"). _In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative_. In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. _The Latin vocative rarely stands first_. Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.

b. Observe that questions answered by *yes* or *no* in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question *Is the sailor fighting?* «Pugnatne nauta?» you would say «Pugnat», *he is fighting*, or «Nôn pugnat», *he is not fighting*.

LESSON VII

THE FIRST OR Â-DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «casa, -ae», f., *cottage* «cêna, -ae, f., *dinner* «gallí'na, -ae», f., *hen, chicken* «în'sula, ae», f., *island* (pen-insula)

ADVERBS «de-in'de», *then, in the next place* «ubi», *where*

PREPOSITION «ad», *to*, with acc. to express motion toward

PRONOUN «quem», interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., *whom?*

VERBS *habitat*, *he (she, it) lives, is living, does live* (inhabit) «*laudat*», *he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise* (laud) «*parat*», *he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare* «*vocat*», *he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite* (vocation)

«57.» In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in «-a». All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in «-a» belong to the First Declension. It is also called the *Ā*-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel «a» plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:

CASE	NOUN	TRANSLATION	USE AND GENERAL MEANING
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domin-a</i>	<i>the lady</i>	The subject
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>domin-ae</i>	<i>of the lady</i>	The possessor or <i>the lady's</i> of something
			<i>Dat.</i> <i>domin-ae</i> <i>to</i> or <i>_for</i> Expressing the relation the lady <i>to</i> or <i>_for</i> , especially the indirect object
			<i>Acc.</i> <i>domin-am</i> <i>the lady</i> The direct object
			<i>Abl.</i> <i>domin-â</i> <i>from, with, by</i> , <i>Separation</i> (from_) <i>in</i> , the lady_ association or means (<i>with, by</i>), place where or time when (<i>in, at</i>)
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domin-ae</i>	<i>the ladies</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>domin-ârum</i>	<i>of the ladies</i>	or <i>the ladies'</i>
			<i>Dat.</i> <i>domin-âs</i> <i>to</i> or <i>_for</i> The same as the ladies_ the singular
			<i>Acc.</i> <i>domin-âs</i> <i>the ladies</i>
			<i>Abl.</i> <i>domin-âs</i> <i>from, with, by</i> , <i>in</i> , the ladies

«58.» «The Base.» That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the «base».

Thus, in the declension above, «*domin-*» is the base and «-a» is the termination of the nominative singular.

«59.» Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

«*pugna*», «*terra*», «*lûna*», «*ancil'la*», «*corô'na*», «*în'sula*», «*silva*»

«60.» «Gender.» In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called «natural gender». Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, "Have you seen my yacht? *She* is a beauty." And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, "Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken *it* home." Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called «grammatical gender».

Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but _names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter_. Thus we have in Latin the three words, «*lapis*», *a stone*; «*rûpês*», *a cliff*; and «*saxum*», *a rock*. «*Lapis*» is *masculine*, «*rûpês*» *feminine*, and «*saxum*» *neuter*. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and *must always be learned*, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

«61.» «Gender of First-Declension Nouns.» Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus «*silva*» is feminine, but «*nauta*», *sailor*, and «*agricola*», *farmer*, are masculine.

«62.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

I. 1. Agricola cum filiâ in casâ habitat. 2. Bona filia agricolae cênâ parat. 3. Cêna est grâta agricolae[1] et agricola bonam filiam laudat. 4. Deinde filia agricolae gallînâs ad cênâ vocat. 5. Gallînae filiam agricolae amat. 6. Malae filiae bonâs cênâs nôn parant. 7. Filia agricolae est grâta dominae. 8. Domina in însulâ magnâ habitat. 9. Domina bonae puellae parvae pecûniâ dat.

II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting («parat») a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter's good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

[Footnote 1: Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that *to which a feeling is directed*. (Cf. §43.)]

[Illustration]

What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

«63.» CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricolâ in casâ habitat? 2. Quid bona filia agricolae parat? 3. Quem agricola laudat? 4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallînâs ad cênâ? 5. Cuius filia est grâta dominae? 6. Cui domina pecûniâ dat?

LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «Italia, -ae», f., *Italy* Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily* «tuba, -ae», f., *trumpet (tube)* «via, -ae», f., *way, road, street (viaduct)*

ADJECTIVES «alta», *high, deep (altitude)* «clâra», *clear, bright; famous* «lâta», *wide (latitude)* «longa», *long (longitude)* «nova», *new (novelty)*

«64.» We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together and you have noticed an agreement between them in *case* and in *number* (§54). They agree also in *gender*. In the phrase «silva magna», we have a feminine adjective in «-a» agreeing with a feminine noun in «-a».

«65.» RULE. «Agreement of Adjectives.» _Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case._

«66.» Feminine adjectives in «-a» are declined like feminine nouns in «-a», and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

NOUN ADJECTIVE «domina» (base «domin-»), «bona» (base «bon-»), f., *lady good*

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* do'mina bona -a *Gen.* dominae bonae -ae *Dat.* dominae bonae -ae *Acc.* dominam bonam -am *Abl.* dominâ bonâ -â

PLURAL *Nom.* dominae bonae -ae *Gen.* dominâ'rum bonâ'rum -ârum *Dat.* dominîs bonîs -îs *Acc.* dominâs

bonâs -âs *Abl.* dominîs bonîs -îs

a. In the same way decline together «puella mala», *the bad girl*; «ancil'la parva», *the little maid*; «fortû'na magna», *great fortune*.

«67.» The words «dea», *goddess*, and «fîlia», *daughter*, take the ending «-âbus» instead of «-îs» in the *dative and ablative plural*. Note the *dative and ablative plural* in the following declension:

«dea bona» (bases «de-» «bon-»)

SINGULAR PLURAL *Nom.* dea bona *deae* *bonae* *Gen.* deae *bonae* *deâ'rum* *bonâ'rum* *Dat.* deae *bonae* *deâ'bus* *bonîs* *Acc.* deam *bonam* *deâs* *bonâs* *Abl.* deâ *bonâ* *deâ'bus* *bonîs*

a. In the same way decline together «fîlia parva».

«68.» «Latin Word Order.» The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my*, *daughter*, *dinner*, *farmers*.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf. §32.1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

I saw a game of football at Chicago last November (normal order) «*Last November*» *I saw a game of football at Chicago* *At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of football*

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the *middle*. Generally the *subject* is the most important word, and is placed *first*; usually the *verb* is the next in importance, and is placed *last*. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words--that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed--is as follows:

subject--modifiers of the subject--indirect object-- direct object--adverb--verb

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. _Notice the order of the Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin._

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as

«fîlia mea», *my daughter*; «mea fîlia», «*my*» *daughter*; «casa Galbae», *Galba's cottage*; «Galbae casa», «*Galba's*» *cottage*.

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

«Fîlia mea agricolîs cênam parat» (normal order) «Mea fîlia agricolîs parat cênam» («mea» and «cênam» emphatic) «Agricolîs fîlia mea cênam parat» («agricolîs» emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

«Fīlia mea casam parvam nōn amat» («parvam» not emphatic) «Fīlia mea parvam casam nōn amat» («parvam» more emphatic) «Parvam fīlia mea casam nōn amat» («parvam» very emphatic)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

5. The copula (as «est», «sunt») is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

«69.» EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are emphatic.

1. Longae nōn sunt tuae viae. 2. Suntne tubae novae in meâ casâ? Nōn sunt. 3. Quis lâta in silvâ habitat? Diâna, lûnae clârae pulchra dea, lâta in silvâ habitat. 4. Nautae altâs et lâtâs amant aquâs. 5. Quid ancilla tua portat? Ancilla mea tubam novam portat. 6. Ubi sunt Lesbia et Iûlia? In tuâ casa est Lesbia et Iûlia est in meâ. 7. Estne Italia lâta terra? Longa est Italia, nōn lâta. 8. Cui Galba agricola fâbulam novam nârrat? Fīliâbus dominae clârae fâbulam novam nârrat. 9. Clâra est însula Sicilia. 10. Quem laudat Lâtôna? Lâtôna laudat fīliam.

* * * * *

«First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§502-505»

* * * * *

LESSON IX

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «bellum, -î», n., *war* (re-bel) «cōstantia, -ae», f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness* dominus, -î, m., *master, lord* (dominate) «equus, -î», m., *horse* (equine) «frûmentum, -î», n., *grain* «lêgâtus, -î», m., *lieutenant, ambassador* (legate) «Mârcus, -î», m., *Marcus, Mark* «mûrus, -î», m., *wall* (mural) «oppidânus, -î», m., *townsman* «oppidum, -î», n., *town* «pîlum, -î», n., *spear* (pile driver) «servus, -î», m., *slave, servant* Sextus, -î, m., *Sextus*

VERBS «cûrat», *he (she, it) cares for*, with acc. «properat», *he (she, it) hastens*

«70.» Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

«71.» The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or O-Declension ends in «-us», «-er», «-ir», or «-um». The genitive singular ends in «-î».

«72.» «Gender.» Nouns in «-um» are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

«73.» «Declension of nouns in -us and -um.» Masculines in «-us» and neuters in «-um» are declined as follows:

«dominus» (base «domin-»), «pîlum» (base «pîl-»), m., *master* n., *spear*

TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS SINGULAR *Nom.* do´minus[1] -us pîlum -um *Gen.* dominî -î pîlî -î
Dat. dominô -ô pîlô -ô *Acc.* dominum -um pîlum -um *Abl.* dominô -ô pîlô -ô *Voc.* domine -e pîlum -um

PLURAL *Nom.* dominî -î pîla -a *Gen.* dominô´rum -ôrum pîlô´rum -ôrum *Dat.* dominîs -îs pîlîs -îs *Acc.* dominôs -ôs pîla -a *Abl.* dominîs -îs pîlîs -îs

[Footnote 1: Compare the declension of «domina» and of «dominus».]

a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in «-us» ends in «-e», as «domine», *O master*; «serve», *O slave*. This is the most important exception to the rule in §56.a.

«74.» Write side by side the declension of «domina», «dominus», and «pîlum». A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see §73.b), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in «-a».

c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in «-m» and the accusative plural in «-s».

d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

e. Final «-i» and «-o» are always *long*; final «-a» is *short*, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

«75.» Observe the sentences

«Lesbia est bona», *Lesbia is good* «Lesbia est ancilla», *Lesbia is a maidservant*

We have learned (§55) that «bona», when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a *predicate adjective*. Similarly a *noun*, as «ancilla», used in the *predicate* to define the subject is called a «predicate noun».

«76.» RULE. «Predicate Noun.» _A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb._

[Illustration: PILA]

«77.» DIALOGUE

GALBA AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

G. Quis, Mârce, est lēgâtus cum pîlô et tubâ? M. Lēgâtus, Galba, est Sextus. G. Ubi Sextus habitat?[2] M. In oppidô Sextus cum fîliâbus habitat. G. Amantne oppidânî Sextum? M. Amant oppidânî Sextum et laudant, quod magnâ cum cōstantiâ pugnat. G. Ubi, Mârce, est ancilla tua? Cûr nōn cēnam parat? M. Ancilla mea, Galba, equô lēgâtî aquam et frûmentum dat. G. Cûr nōn servus Sextî equum dominî cûrat? M. Sextus et servus ad mûrum oppidî properant. Oppidânî bellum parant.[3]

[Footnote 2: «habitat» is here translated *does live*. Note the *three* possible translations of the Latin present tense: «habitat» *he lives he is living he does live* Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.]

[Footnote 3: Observe that the verb «parô» means not only *to prepare* but also *to prepare for*, and governs the accusative case.]

[Illustration: LEGATUS CUM PILO ET TUBA]

«78.» CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubi filiae Sextî habitant? 2. Quem oppidânî amant et laudant? 3. Quid ancilla equô lēgâtî dat? 4. Cuius equum ancilla cûrat? 5. Quis ad mûrum cum Sextô properat? 6. Quid oppidânî parant?

LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «amîcus, -î», m., *friend* (amicable) «Germânia, -ae», f., *Germany* «patria, -ae», f., *fatherland* «populus, -î», m., *people* «Rhênus, -î», m., *the Rhine* «vîcus, -î», m., *village*

«79.» We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like «bona», in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. *Masculine* adjectives of this class are declined like «dominus», and *neuters* like pîlum. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

MASCULINE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE NEUTER NOUN AND ADJECTIVE «dominus bonus», *the good master* «pîlum bonum», *the good spear* BASES domin- bon- BASES pîl- bon-

TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS SINGULAR *Nom.* do'minus bonus -us pîlum bonum -um *Gen.* dominî bonî -î pîlî bonî -î *Dat.* dominô bonô -ô pîlô bonô -ô *Acc.* dominum bonum -um pîlum bonum -um *Abl.* dominô bonô -ô pîlô bonô -ô *Voc.* domine bone -e pîlum bonum -um

PLURAL *Nom.* dominî bonî -î îla bona -a *Gen.* dominô'rum bonô'rum -ôrum îlô'rum bonô'rum -ôrum *Dat.* dominîs bonîs -îs îlîs bonîs -îs *Acc.* dominôs bonôs -ôs îla bona -a *Abl.* dominîs bonîs -îs îlîs bonîs -îs

Decline together «bellum longum», «equus parvus», «servus malus», «mûrus altus», «frûmentum novum».

«80.» Observe the sentences

«Lesbia ancilla est bona», *Lesbia, the maidservant, is good* «Fîlia Lesbiae ancillae est bona», *the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good* «Servus Lesbiam ancillam amat», *the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant*

In these sentences «ancilla», «ancillae», and «ancillam» denote the class of persons to which *Lesbia* belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

«81.» RULE. «Apposition.» _An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains._

«82.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Patria servî bonî, vîcus servôrum bonôrum, bone popule. 2. Populus oppidî magnî, in oppidô magnô, in oppidîs magnîs. 3. Cum pîlîs longîs, ad pîla longa, ad mûrôs lâtôs. 4. Lêgâte male, amîcî legâtî malî, cêna grâta dominô bonô. 5. Frûmentum equôrum parvôrum, domine bone, ad lêgâtôs clârôs. 6. Rhênus est in Germâniâ, patriâ meâ. 7. Sextus lêgâtus pîlum longum portat. 8. Oppidânî bonî Sextô lêgâtô clârâ pecûniam dant. 9. Malî servî equum bonum Mârcî dominî necant. 10. Galba agricola et Iûlia filia bona labôrânt. 11. Mârcus nauta in însulâ Siciliâ habitat.

II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from («ex») a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for[1] the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening[1] to the little cottage[2] of Julia, the farmer's daughter.

[Footnote 1: See footnote 1, p. 33. Remember that «cûrat» is transitive and governs a direct object.]

[Footnote 2: Not the dative. (Cf. §43.)]

LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «arma, armôrum», n., plur., *arms*, especially defensive weapons «fâma, -ae», f., *rumor; reputation, fame* «galea, -ae», f., *helmet* «praeda, -ae», f., *booty, spoils* (predatory) «têlum, -î», n., *weapon of offense, spear*

ADJECTIVES «dûrus, -a, -um», *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome* (durable) «Rômânus, -a, -um», *Roman*. As a noun, «Rômânus, -î», m., *a Roman*

«83.» Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

MASCULINE FEMININE NEUTER SINGULAR *Nom.* bonus bona bonum *Gen.* bonî bonae bonî *Dat.* bonô bonae bonô *Acc.* bonum bonam bonum *Abl.* bonô bonâ bonô *Voc.* bone bona bonum

PLURAL *Nom.* bonî bonae bona *Gen.* bonôrum bonârum bonôrum *Dat.* bonîs bonîs bonîs *Acc.* bonôs bonâs bona *Abl.* bonîs bonîs bonîs

a. Write the declension and give it orally *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline «grâtus, -a, -um»; «malus, -a, -um»; «altus, -a, -um»; «parvus, -a, -um».

«84.» Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between

the adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, «nauta», *sailor*, is masculine and belongs to the first declension. The masculine form of the adjective «bonus» is of the second declension. Consequently, *a good sailor is «nauta bonus»*. So, the wicked farmer is «agricola malus». Learn the following declensions:

«85.» «nauta bonus» (bases naut- bon-), m., *the good sailor*

SINGULAR *Nom.* nauta bonus *Gen.* nautae bonî *Dat.* nautae bonô *Acc.* nautam bonum *Abl.* nautâ bonô *Voc.* nauta bone

PLURAL *Nom.* nautae bonî *Gen.* nautârum bonôrum *Dat.* nautîs bonîs *Acc.* nautâs bonôs *Abl.* nautîs bonîs *Voc.* nautae bonî

«86.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Est[1] in vicô nauta bonus. 2. Sextus est amîcus nautae bonî. 3. Sextus nautae bonô galeam dat. 4. Populus Rômânus nautam bonum laudat. 5. Sextus cum nautâ bonô praedam portat. 6. Ubi, nauta bone, sunt anna et têla lêgâtî Rômânî? 7. Nautae bonî ad bellum properant. 8. Fâma nautârum bonôrum est clâra. 9. Pugnae sunt grâtae nautîs bonîs. 10. Oppidânî nautâs bonôs cûrant. 11. Cûr, nautae bonî, malî agricolae ad Rhênum properant? 12. Malî agricolae cum bonîs nautîs pugnant.

II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba's daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

[Footnote 1: «Est», beginning a declarative sentence, *there is*.]

[Illustration: GALEAE]

LESSON XII

NOUNS IN *-IUS* AND *-IUM*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «filius, filî», m., *son* (filial) fluvius, fluvî, m., *river* (fluent) «gladius, gladi», m., *sword* (gladiator) «praesidium, praesi'dî», n., *garrison, guard, protection* «proelium, proelî», n., *battle*

ADJECTIVES «finitimus, -a, -um», *bordering upon, neighboring, near to*. As a noun, «finitimî, -ôrum», m., plur., *neighbors* «Germânus, -a, -um», *German*. As a noun, «Germânus, -î», m., *a German* «multus, -a, -um», *much*; plur., *many*

ADVERB «saepe», *often*

«87.» Nouns of the second declension in «-ius» and «-ium» end in «-î» in the genitive singular, *not* in «-îi», and the accent rests on the penult; as, «filî» from «filius» (*son*), «praesi'dî» from «praesi'dium» (*garrison*).

«88.» Proper names of persons in «-ius», and «filius», end in «-î» in the vocative singular, *not* in «-e», and the accent rests on the penult; as, «Vergi lí», *O Vergil*; «filî», *O son*.

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

«89.» «praesidium» (base praesidi-), «filius» (base fili-), n., *garrison* m., *son*

SINGULAR *Nom.* praesidium filius *Gen.* praesi'di filî *Dat.* praesidiô filiô *Acc.* praesidium filium *Abl.* praesidiô filiô *Voc.* praesidium filî

The plural is regular. Note that the «-i-» of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like «filius».

Decline together «praesidium parvum»; «filius bonus»; «fluvius longus», *the long river*; «proelium clârum», *the famous battle*.

«90.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Frûmentum bonae terrae, gladî malî, bellî longî. 2. Còstantia magna, praesidia magna, clâre Vergi lí. 3. Male serve, Ô clârum oppidum, male filî, filiî malî, filî malî. 4. Fluvî longî, fluviî longî, fluviôrum longôrum, fâma praesi'di magnî. 5. Cum gladiîs parvîs, cum deâbus clârîs, ad nautâs clârôs. 6. Multôrum proeliôrum, praedae magnae, ad proelia dûra.

GERMÂNIA

II. Germânia, patria Germânôrum, est clâra terra. In Germâniâ sunt fluviî multî. Rhênus magnus et lâtus fluvius Germâniae est. In silvîs lâfîs Germâniae sunt ferae multae. Multi Germânii in oppidîs magnis et in vîcîs parvîs habitant et multî sunt agricolae bonî. Bella Germânôrum sunt magna et clâra. Populus Germâniae bellum et proelia amat et saepe cum finitimîs pugnat. Fluvius Rhênus est finitimus oppidîs[1] multîs et clârîs.

[Footnote 1: Dative with «finitimus». (See §43.)]

LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «ager, agrî», m., *field* (acre) «côpia, -ae», f., *plenty, abundance* (copious); plur., *troops, forces* «Cornêlius, Cornê lí», m., *Cornelius* «lîrí'ca, -ae», f., *coat of mail, corselet* «praemium, praemî», n., *reward, prize* (premium) «puer, puerî», m., *boy* (puerile) «Rôma, -ae», f., *Rome* «scûtum, -î», n., *shield* (escutcheon) «vir, virî», m., *man, hero* (virile)

ADJECTIVES «legiônârius, -a, -um», [A] *legionary, belonging to the legion*. As a noun, «legiônârî, -ôrum», m., plur., *legionary soldiers* «lîber, lîbera, lîberum», *free* (liberty) As a noun. «lîberî, -ôrum», m., plur., *children* (lit. *the freeborn*) «pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum», *pretty, beautiful*

PREPOSITION «apud», *among*, with acc.

CONJUNCTION «sed», *but*

[Footnote A: The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in «-ius» ends in «-î» and the vocative in «-ie»; not in «-î», as in nouns.]

«91.» «Declension of Nouns in -er and -ir.» In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in «-os». This «-os» later became «-us» in words like «servus», and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in «-r», like «puer», *boy*; «ager», *field*; and «vir», *man*. These words are therefore declined as follows:

«92.» «puer», m., *boy* «ager», m., *field* «vir», m., *man* BASE «puer-» BASE «agr-» BASE «vir-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* puer ager vir ---- *Gen.* puerî agrî virî -î *Dat.* puerô agrô virô -ô *Acc.* puerum agrum virum -um *Abl.* puerô agrô virô -ô

PLURAL *Nom.* puerî agrî virî -î *Gen.* puerôrum agrôrum virôrum -ôrum *Dat.* puerîs agrîs virîs -îs *Acc.* puerôs agrôs virôs -ôs *Abl.* puerîs agrîs virîs -îs

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the general rule (§74.a).

b. The declension differs from that of «servus» only in the nominative and vocative singular.

c. Note that in «puer» the «e» remains all the way through, while in «ager» it is present only in the nominative. In «puer» the «e» belongs to the base, but in «ager» (base «agr-») it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce. Most words in «-er» are declined like «ager». _The genitive shows whether you are to follow «puer» or_ «ager».

«93.» Masculine adjectives in «-er» of the second declension are declined like nouns in «-er». A few of them are declined like «puer», but most of them like «ager». The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,

MASC. FEM. NEUT. *lîber lîbera lîberum* (*free*) is like «puer» *pulcher pulchra pulchrum* (*pretty*) is like «ager»

For the full declension in the three genders, see §469.b. c.

«94.» Decline together the words «vir lîber», «terra lîbera», «frûmentum lîberum», «puer pulcher», «puella pulchra», «oppidum pulchrum»

«95.» ITALIA[1]

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

Magna est Italiae fâma, patriae Rômânôrum, et clâra est Rôma, domina orbis terrârûm.[2] Tiberim,[3] fluvium Rômânûm, quis nôn laudat et pulchrôs fluviô fînitimôs agrôs? Altôs mûrôs, longa et dûra bella, clârâs victôriâs quis nôn laudat? Pulchra est terra Italia. Agrî bonî agricolîs præmia dant magna, et equî agricolârûm cõpiam frûmentî ad oppida et vîcôs portant. In agrîs populî Rômânî labôrânt multî servî. Viæ Italiae sunt longa et lâtae. Fînitima Italiae est însula Sicilia.

[Footnote 1: In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of the words.]

[Footnote 2: «orbis terrârûm», *of the world*.]

[Footnote 3: «Tiberim», *the Tiber*, accusative case.]

«96.» DIALOGUE

MARCUS AND CORNELIUS

C. Ubi est, Mârce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchrâ terrâ Italiâ? M. Nôn est, Cornêlî, in Italiâ. Ad fluvium Rhênum properat cum cõpiîs Rômânîs quia est[4] fâma Novî bellî cum Germânîs. Líber Germâniae populus Rômânôs Nôn amat. C. Estne filius tuus copiârum Rômânârum lêgâtus? M. Lêgâtus nôn est, sed est apud legiônâriôs. C. Quae[5] arma portat[6]? M. Scûtum magnum et lôricam dûram et galeam pulchram portat. C. Quae têla portat? M. Gladium et pîlum longum portat. C. Amatne lêgâtus filium tuum? M. Amat, et saepe filiô meô praemia pulchra et praedam multam dat. C. Ubi est terra Germânôrum? M. Terra Germânôrum, Cornêlî est finitima Rhênô, fluviô magnô et altô.

[Footnote 4: «est», before its subject, *there is*; so «sunt», *there are*.]

[Footnote 5: «Quae», *what kind of*, an interrogative adjective pronoun.]

[Footnote 6: What are the three possible translations of the present tense?]

[Illustration: LEGIONARIUS]

LESSON XIV

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «auxilium, auxili'î», n., *help, aid* (auxiliary) «castrum, -î», n., *fort* (castle); plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*) «cibus, -î», m., *food* «cõnsilium, cõnsi'î», n., *plan* (counsel) «dîligentia, -ae», f., *diligence, industry* magister, magistrî, m., *master, teacher*[A]

ADJECTIVES «aeger, aegra, aegrum», *sick* «crêber, crêbra, crêbrum», *frequent* «miser, misera, miserum», *wretched, unfortunate* (miser)

[Footnote A: Observe that «dominus», as distinguished from «magister», means *master* in the sense of *owner*.]

«97.» Observe the sentences

This is my shield This shield is mine

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, *_this shield is mine being equivalent to this shield is my shield_*. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

«98.» The possessives *my, mine, your, yours*, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR *1st Pers.* meus, mea, meum *my, mine 2d Pers.* tuus, tua, tuum *your, yours 3d Pers.* suus, sua, suum *_his (own), her (own), its (own)_ PLURAL 1st Pers.* noster, nostra, nostrum *our, ours 2d Pers.* vester, vestra, vestrum *your, yours 3d Pers.* suus, sua, suum *their (own), theirs*

NOTE. «Meus» has the irregular vocative singular masculine «mî», as «mî filî», *O my son*.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the *thing possessed* in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

Sextus is calling «his» boy «Sextus» } «suum puerum vocat» Julia is calling «her» boy «Iûlia» }

Observe that «suum» agrees with «puerum», and is unaffected by the gender of Sextus or Julia.

b. When *your, yours*, refers to *one* person, use «tuus»; when to *more than one*, «vester»; as,

Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty «Corônae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae» Girls, your wreaths are pretty «Corônae vestrae, puellae, sunt pulchrae»

c. «Suus» is a *reflexive* possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the *subject*. Thus, «Vir suôs servôs vocat» means *The man calls his (own) slaves*. Here *his* («suôs») refers to *man* («vir»), and could not refer to any one else.

d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. §22.a.) This is especially true of «suus, -a, -um», which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our *his own, her own*, etc.

«99.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. 1. Mârcus amîcô Sextô cònsilium suum nûntiat 2. Est còpia frûmentî in agrîs nostrîs. 3. Amîcî meî bonam cênâ ancillae vestrae laudant 4. Tua lôrîca, mî fîlî, est dûra. 5. Scûta nostra et têla, mî amîce, in castrîs Rômânîs sunt. 6. Suntne virî patriae tuae lîberî? Sunt. 7. Ubi, Cornêlî, est tua galea pulchra? 8. Mea galea, Sexte, est in casâ meâ. 9. Pîlum longum est tuum, sed gladius est meus. 10. Iûlia gallînâs suâs pulchrâs amat et gallînae dominam suam amat. 11. Nostra castra sunt vestra. 12. Est còpia praedae in castrîs vestrîs. 13. Amîcî tuî miserîs et aegrîs cibum et pecûniam saepe dant.

II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark's industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.[1] 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.[2] 4. There are [3] frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant's food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

[Footnote 1: Not the dative. Why?]

[Footnote 2: Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like nouns.]

[Footnote 3: Where should «sunt» stand? Cf. I. 2 above.]

[Illustration: AGRICOLA ARAT]

LESSON XV

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *WITH*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «carrus, -î», m., *cart, wagon* «inopia, -ae», f., *want, lack*; the opposite of «còpia» «studium, studî», n., *zeal, eagerness* (study)

ADJECTIVES «armâtus, -a, -um», *armed* «înfîrmus, -a, -um», *weak, feeble* (infirm) vali'dus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*

VERB «mâtûrat», *he (she, it) hastens*. Cf. *properat*

ADVERB «iam», *already, now*

«-que», conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. §16) and always added to the *second* of two words to be connected, as «arma têla'que», *arms and weapons*.

«100.» Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (§50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition *with*. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by «cum». This will become clear from the following sentences:

a. Mark is feeble *with* (for or because of) want of food *b.* Diana kills the beasts *with* (or by) her arrows *c.* Julia is *with* Sextus *d.* The men fight *with* great steadiness

a. In sentence *a*, *with* want (of food) gives the cause of Mark's feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the «ablative of cause»:

«Mârcus est înfîrmus inopiâ cibî»

b. In sentence *b*, *with* (or by) her arrows tells «by means of what» Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the «ablative of means»:

«Diâna sagittîs suîs ferâs necat»

c. In sentence *c* we are told that Julia is not alone, but «in company with» Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition «cum», and the construction is called the «ablative of accompaniment»:

«Îulia est cum Sextô»

d. In sentence *d* we are told how the men fight. The idea is one of «manner». This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with «cum», unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case «cum» may be omitted. This construction is called the «ablative of manner»:

«Virî (cum) cônstantiâ magnâ pugnant»

«101.» You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting *with*:

«102.» RULE. «Ablative of Cause.» _Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what?_

«103.» RULE. «Ablative of Means.» _Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? With what?_

N.B. «Cum» must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

«104.» RULE. «Ablative of Accompaniment.» _Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with «cum». This

answers the question With whom?_

«105.» RULE. «Ablative of Manner.» _The ablative with «cum» is used to denote the manner of an action. «Cum» may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? In what manner?_

«106.» What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (or by) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

«107.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Rômânî, clârus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agrîs suîs, vicîs, oppidîsque magnô studiô virî validî ad arma properant. Iam lêgatî cum legiônariîs ex Italiâ ad Rhênum, fluvium Germâniae altum et lâtum, properant, et servî equîs et carrîs cibum frûmentumque ad castra Rômâna portant. Inopiâ bonôrum têlôrum înfirmitate sunt Germânî, sed Rômânî armâti galeîs, lôricîs, scûtîs, gladiîs, pîlîsque sunt validî.

II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my friends in Galba's cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.

LESSON XVI

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

«108.» There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Gen.* -îus -îus -îus *Dat.* -î -î -î

Otherwise they are declined like «bonus, -a, -um». Learn the list and the meaning of each:

«alius, alia, aliud», *other, another* (of several) «alter, altera, alterum», *the one, the other* (of two) «ûnus, -a, -um», *one, alone*; (in the plural) *only* «ûllus, -a, -um», *any* «nûllus, -a, -um», *none, no* «sôlus, -a, -um», *alone* «tôtus, -a, -um», *all, whole, entire* «uter, utra, utrum», *which?* (of two) «neuter, neutra, neutrum», *neither* (of two)

«109.» PARADIGMS

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* nûllus nûlla nûllum *Gen.* nûllî'us nûllî'us nûllî'us *Dat.* nûllî nûllî nûllî *Acc.* nûllum nûllam nûllum *Abl.* nûllô nûllâ nûllô

MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* alius alia aliud *Gen.* alî'us alî'us alî'us *Dat.* aliî aliî aliî *Acc.* alium aliam aliud

Abl. aliô aliâ aliô

THE PLURAL IS REGULAR

a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in «-d» of «alius». The genitive «alfus» is rare. Instead of it use «alterius», the genitive of «alter».

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see §114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the «pronominal adjectives».

«110.» Learn the following idioms:

«alter, -era, -erum» ... «alter, -era, -erum», *the one ... the other* (of two) «alius, -a, -ud» ... «alius, -a, -ud», *one ... another* (of any number) «aliî, -ae, -a» ... «aliî, -ae, -a», *some ... others*

EXAMPLES

1. «Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum», *_the one town is large, the other small_* (of two towns).
2. «Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum», *_one town is strong, another weak_* (of towns in general).
3. «Aliî gladiôs, aliî scûta portant», *_some carry swords, others shields._*

«111.» EXERCISES

I. 1. In utrâ casâ est Iûlia? Iûlia est in neutrâ casâ. 2. Nûllî malô puerô praemium dat magister. 3. Alter puer est nauta, alter agricola. 4. Aliî virî aquam, aliî terram amant. 5. Galba ûnus (*or sôlus*) cum studiô labôrat. 6. Estne ûllus carrus in agrô meô? 7. Lesbia est ancilla alterius dominî, Tullia alterius. 8. Lesbia sôla cênâ parat. 9. Cêna nûllius alterius ancillae est bona. 10. Lesbia nûllî aliî virô cênâ dat.

NOTE. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. *weak because of*) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.

LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS, EA, ID

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «agrî cultûra, -ae», f., *agriculture* «Gallia, -ae», f., *Gaul* «domicilium, domîci'li», n., *dwelling place* (domicile), *abode* «Gallus, -i», m., *a Gaul* «lacrima, -ae», f., *tear* «fêmina, -ae», f., *woman* (female) «numerus, -î», m., *number* (numeral)

ADJECTIVE «mâtûrus, -a, -um», *ripe, mature*

ADVERB quô, *whither*

VERBS arat, *he (she, it) plows* (arable) «dêsîderat», *he (she, it) misses, longs for* (desire), with acc.

CONJUNCTION «an», *or*, introducing the second half of a double question, as *Is he a Roman or a Gaul*, «Estne Romanus an Gallus?»

«112.» A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as *this, that, these, those*. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, *Do you hear these?* and sometimes adjectives, as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called «demonstrative pronouns», in the latter «demonstrative adjectives».

«113.» Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as *pronouns* and as *adjectives*. The one used most is «is», masculine; «ea», feminine; «id», neuter SINGULAR: *this, that*; PLURAL: *these, those*

«114.» «Is» is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of «alius», §109.

BASE «e-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* is ea id eî eae ea (or iî) *Gen.* eius eius eî eî eî eî eî eî (or iîs iîs iîs) *Acc.* eum eam id eôs eâs ea *Abl.* eô eâ eô eîs eîs (or iîs iîs iîs)

Note that the base «e-» changes to «i-» in a few cases. The genitive singular «eius» is pronounced *eh'yus*. In the plural the forms with two «i»'s are preferred and the two «i»'s are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce «iî» as «î» and «iîs» as «îs».

«115.» Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun *he, she, it*. As a personal pronoun, then, «is» would have the following meanings:

SINGULAR *Nom.* «is», *he*; «ea», *she*; «id», *it* *Gen.* «eius», *of him or his*; «eius», *of her, her, or hers*; «eius», *of it or its* *Dat.* «eî», *to or for him*; «eî», *to or for her*; «eî», *to or for it* *Acc.* «eum», *him*; «eam», *her*; «id», *it* *Abl.* «eô», *with, from, etc., him*; «eâ», *with, from, etc., her*; «eô», *with, from, etc., it*

PLURAL *Nom.* «eî» or «iî», «eae», «ea», *they* *Gen.* «eôrum», «eârum», «eôrum», *of them, their* *Dat.* «eîs» or «iîs», «eîs» or «iîs», «eîs» or «iîs», *to or for them* *Acc.* «eôs, eâs, ea», *them* *Abl.* «eîs» or «iîs», «eîs» or «iîs», «eîs» or «iîs», *with, from, etc., them*

«116.» «Comparison between *suus* and *is*.» We learned above (§98.c) that «suus» is a *reflexive* possessive. When *his, her* (poss.), *its, their, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express his, her, its, their* by «eius», the genitive singular of «is», «ea», «id»; and *their* by the genitive plural, using «eôrum» to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and «eârum» to refer to a feminine one.

EXAMPLES

Galba calls his (own) son, «Galba suum filium vocat» *Galba calls his son* (not his own, but another's), «Galba eius filium vocat» *Julia calls her (own) children*, «Iûlia suôs liberôs vocat» *Julia calls her children* (not her own, but another's), «Iûlia eius liberôs vocat» *The men praise their (own) boys*, «virî suôs puerôs laudant» *The men praise their boys* (not their own, but others'), «virî eôrum puerôs laudant»

«117.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these

abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4. The other woman is calling her chickens (*her own*). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (*not her own*). 6. The Gaul praises his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

«118.» DIALOGUE[1]

CORNELIUS AND MARCUS

M. Quis est vir, Cornêlî, cum puerô parvô? Estne Rômânus et lîber? C. Rômânus nôn est, Mârce. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvîs Galliae. M. Estne puer fîlius eius servî an alterîus? C. Neutrîus fîlius est puer. Is est fîlius lêgâtî Sextî. M. Quô puer cum eô servô properat? C. Is cum servô properat ad lâtôs Sextî agrôs.[2] Tôtum frûmentum est iam mâtûrum et magnus servôrum numerus in Italiae[3] agrîs labôrat. M. Agricolaene sunt Gallî et patriae suae agrôs arant? C. Nôn agricolae sunt. Bellum amant Gallî, nôn agrî cultûram. Apud eôs virî pugnânt et fêminae auxiliô lîberôrum agrôs arant parantque cibum. M. Magister noster puerîs puellîsque grâtâs Gallôrum fâbulâs saepe nârrat et laudat eôs saepe. C. Mala est fortûna eôrum et saepe miserî servî multîs cum lacrimîs patriam suam dêsîderant.

[Footnote 1: There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason.]

[Footnote 2: When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is _adjective, genitive, noun_.]

[Footnote 3: A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.]

* * * * *

«Second Review, Lessons IX-XVII, §§506-509»

* * * * *

LESSON XVIII

«CONJUGATION» THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF «SUM»

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS lûdus, -î, m., *school* «socius, socî», m., *companion, ally* (social)

ADJECTIVES «îrâtus, -a, -um», *angry, furious* (irate) «laetus, -a, -um», *happy, glad* (social)

ADVERBS hodiê, *to-day* «îbi», *there, in that place* mox, *presently, soon*, of the immediate future «nunc», *now, the present moment* «nûper», *lately, recently*, of the immediate past

«119.» The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation* (cf. §23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, *I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried*, etc. In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed

differences in *tense, mood, voice, person, and number*.

«120.» «The Tenses.» The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its *tenses*. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

1. «The present», that is, *what is happening now, or what usually happens*, is expressed by THE PRESENT TENSE

2. «The past», that is, *what was happening, used to happen, happened, has happened, or had happened*, is expressed by THE IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

3. «The future», that is, *what is going to happen*, is expressed by THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES

«121.» «The Moods.» Verbs have inflection of *mood* to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive*.

a. A verb is in the *indicative* mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

«122.» «The Persons.» There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (*I sing*); the second person the person spoken to (*you sing*); the third person the person spoken of (*he sings*). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. §22 a; 29). We have already learned that «-t» is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and «-nt» of the third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL *1st Pers. I -m or -ô we -mus 2d Pers. thou or you -s you -tis 3d Pers. he, she, it -t they -nt*

«123.» Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called *regular* verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*. The verb *to be* is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

PRESENT INDICATIVE SINGULAR PLURAL *1st Pers. su-m, I am su-mus, we are 2d Pers. e-s, you[1] are es-tis, you[1] are 3d Pers. es-t, he, she, or it is su-nt, they are*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE SINGULAR PLURAL *1st Pers. er-a-m, I was er-â'-mus, we were 2d Pers. er-â-s, you were er-â'-tis, you were 3d Pers. er-a-t, he, she, or it was er-â-nt, they were*

FUTURE INDICATIVE SINGULAR PLURAL *1st Pers. er-ô, I shall be er'-i-mus, we shall be 2d Pers. er-i-s, you will be er'-i-tis, you will be 3d Pers. er-i-t, he will be er-u-nt, they will be*

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult §§12.2; 14; 15.

[Footnote 1: Observe that in English *you are, you were*, etc. may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.]

«124.» DIALOGUE

THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

S. Ubi es, Márce? Ubi est Quíntus? Ubi estis, amícî? M. Cum Quíntô, Sexte, in silvâ sum. Nôn sôlî sumus; sunt in silvâ multî aliî puerî. S. Nunc laetus es, sed nûper nôn laetus erâs. Cûr miser erâs? M. Miser eram quia amícî meî erant in aliô vicô et eram sôlus. Nunc sum apud sociôs meôs. Nunc laetî sumus et erimus. S. Erâtisne in lûdo hodiê? M. Hodiê nôn erâmus in lûdô, quod magister erat aeger. S. Eritisne mox in lûdô? M. Amícî meî ibi erunt, sed ego (*I*) nôn erô. S. Cûr nôn ibi eris? Magister, saepe irâtus, inopiam tuam studî dîligentiaeque nôn laudat. M. Nûper aeger eram et nunc înfîrmus sum.

«125.» EXERCISE

1. You are, you were, you will be, (*sing. and plur.*). 2. I am, I was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were, we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.

6. Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick. 7. Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy because of the boys' industry.

[Illustration: PUERI ROMANI IN LUDO]

LESSON XIX

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMÔ* AND *MONEÔ*

«126.» There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.[1] This vowel is called the *_distinguishing vowel_*, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

[Footnote 1: The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. §58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in §230.]

Below is given the *present infinitive* of a verb of each conjugation, the *present stem*, and the *distinguishing vowel*.

DISTINGUISHING CONJUGATION PRES. INFIN. PRES. STEM VOWEL I. «amâ're», *to love* «amâ-» «â» II. «monê're», *to advise* «monê-» «ê» III. «re'gere», *to rule* «rege-» «e» IV. «audí're», *to hear* «audi-» «î»

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping «-re», the ending of the present infinitive.

NOTE. The present infinitive of «sum» is «esse», and «es-» is the present stem.

«127.» From the present stem are formed the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses.

«128.» The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

«a'mô, amâ're» (*love*) «mo'neô, monê're» (*advise*) PRES. STEM «amâ-» PRES. STEM «monê-»

SINGULAR PLURAL PERSONAL ENDINGS 1. a'mô, *I love* mo'neô, *I advise* -ô 2. a'mâs, *you love* mo'nês, *you advise* -s 3. a'mat, *he (she, it) loves* mo'net, *he (she, it) advises* -t

1. amâ'mus, *we love* monê'mus, *we advise* -mus 2. amâ'tis, *you love* monê'tis, *you advise* -tis 3. a'mant, *they love* mo'nent, *they advise* -nt

1. The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses «-o» and not «-m». The form «amô» is for «amâ-ô», the two vowels «â-ô» contracting to «ô». In «moneô» there is no contraction. _Nearly all regular verbs ending in «-eo» belong to the second conjugation._

2. Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel («monê-ô» = «mo'neô»), and before final «-t» («amat», «monet») and «-nt» («amant», «monent»). Compare §12.2.

«129.» Like «amô» and «moneô» inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs[2]:

[Footnote 2: The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings.]

INDICATIVE PRESENT INFINITIVE PRESENT a'rô, *I plow* arâ're, *to plow* cû'rô, *I care for* cûrâ're, *to care for* *dê'leô, *I destroy* dêlê're, *to destroy* dèsî'derô, *I long for* dèsîderâ're, *to long for* dô,[3] *I give* da're, *to give* *ha'beô, *I have* habê're, *to have* ha'bitô, *I live, I dwell* habitâ're, *to live, to dwell* *iu'beô, *I order* iubê're, *to order* labô'rô, *I labor* labôrâ're, *to labor* lau'dô, *I praise* laudâ're, *to praise* mâtû'rô, *I hasten* mâtûrâ're, *to hasten* *mo'veô, *I move* movê're, *to move* nâr'rô, *I tell* nârrâ're, *to tell* ne'cô, *I kill* necâ're, *to kill* nûn'tiô, *I announce* nûntiâ're, *to announce* pa'rô, *I prepare* parâ're, *to prepare* por'tô, *I carry* portâ're, *to carry* pro'perô, *I hasten* properâ're, *to hasten* pug'nô, *I fight* pugnâ're, *to fight* *vi'deô, *I see* vidê're, *to see* vo'cô, *I call* vocâ're, *to call*

[Footnote 3: Observe that in «dô, dare», the «a» is *short*, and that the present stem is «da-» and not «dâ-». The only forms of «dô» that have a long are «dâs» (pres. indic.), «dâ» (pres. imv.), and «dâns» (pres. part.).]

«130.» «The Translation of the Present.» In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, _I live, I am living, or I do live_. In Latin the one expression «habitô» covers all three of these expressions.

«131.» EXERCISES

Give the *voice, mood, tense, person, and number* of each form.

I. 1. Vocâmus, properâtis, iubent. 2. Movêtis, laudâs, vidês. 3. Dêlêtis, habêtis, dant. 4. Mâtûrâs, dèsîderat, vidêmus. 5. Iubet, movent, necat. 6. Nârrâmus, movês, vident. 7. Labôrâtis, properant, portâs, parant. 8. Dêlet, habêtis, iubêmus, dâs.

N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (*sing.*). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

LESSON XX

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMÔ AND MONEÔ

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «fôrma, -ae», f., *form, beauty* «regîna, -ae», f., *queen* (regal) «poena, -ae», f., *punishment, penalty* superbia, -ae, f., *pride, haughtiness* «potentia, -ae», f., *power* (potent) «trîstîtîa, -ae», f., *sadness, sorrow*

ADJECTIVES «septem», indeclinable, *seven* «superbus, -a, -um», *proud, haughty* (superb)

CONJUNCTIONS «nôn sôlum ... sed etiam», *not only ... but also*

«132.» «Tense Signs.» Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was, shall, will*, etc., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs*.

«133.» «Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect.» The tense sign of the imperfect is «-bâ-», which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

PRESENT STEM TENSE SIGN PERSONAL ENDING «amâ-» «ba-» «m» *loving was I*

The inflection is as follows:

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II PERSONAL SINGULAR ENDINGS 1. amâ´bam, *I was loving* monê´bam, *I was advising* -m 2. amâ´bâs, *you were loving* monê´bâs, *you were advising* -s 3. amâ´bat, *he was loving* monê´bat, *he was advising* -t

PLURAL 1. amâbâ´mus, *we were loving* monêbâ´mus, *we were advising* -mus 2. amâbâ´tis, *you were loving* monêbâ´tis, *you were advising* -tis 3. amâ´bant, *they were loving* monê´bant, *they were advising* -nt

a. Note that the «â» of the tense sign «-bâ-» is shortened before «-nt», and before «m» and «t» when final. (Cf. §12.2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in §129.

«134.» «Meaning of the Imperfect.» The Latin imperfect describes an act as *going on* or *progressing in past time*, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

«135.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Vidêbâmus, dêsîderâbat, mâtûrâbâs. 2. Dabant, vocâbâtis, dêlêbâmus. 3. Pugnant, laudâbâs, movêbâtis. 4. Iubêbant, properâbâtis, portâbâmus. 5. Dabâs, nârrâbant, labôrâbâtis. 6. Vidêbant, movêbâs, nûntiâbâmus. 7. Necâbat, movêbam, habêbat, parâbâtis.

II. 1. You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

«136.» NI´OBE AND HER CHILDREN

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

Niobê, rêgina Thêbânôrum, erat pulchra fêmina sed superba. Erat superba nôn sôlum fôrma[1] suâ marîtique potentiâ[1] sed etiam magnô lîberôrum numerô.[1] Nam habêbat[2] septem filiôs et septem filiâs. Sed ea superbia erat rêgînae[3] causa magnae trîstîtiae et lîberîs[3] causa dûrae poenae.

NOTE. The words «Niobê», «Thêbânôrum», and «marîti» will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

[Footnote 1: Ablative of cause.]

[Footnote 2: Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See §134.)]

[Footnote 3: Dative, cf. §43.]

LESSON XXI

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMÔ* AND *MONEÔ*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *sacrum*, -î, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite* «*verbum*, -î», n., *word* (verb)

VERBS *sedeô*, -êre, *sit* (sediment) *volô*, -âre, *fly* (volatile)

ADJECTIVES «*interfectus*, -a, -um», *slain* «*molestus*, -a, -um», *troublesome, annoying* (molest) «*perpetuus*, -a, -um», *perpetual, continuous*

«*ego*», personal pronoun, *I* (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.

«137.» The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is «-bi-». This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

PRESENT STEM TENSE SIGN PERSONAL ENDING «amâ-» «bi-» «s» *love will you*

«138.» The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows.

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II SINGULAR 1. *amâ`bô*, *I shall love* *monê`bô*, *I shall advise* 2. *amâ`bis*, *you will love* *monê`bis*, *you will advise* 3. *amâ`bit*, *he will love* *monê`bit*, *he will advise*

PLURAL 1. *amâ`bimus*, *we shall love* *monê`bimus*, *we shall advise* 2. *amâ`bitis* *you will love* *monê`bitis*, *you will advise* 3. *amâ`bunt*, *they will love* *monê`bunt*, *they will advise*

a. The personal endings are as in the present. The ending «-bô» in the first person singular is contracted from «-bi-ô». The «-bi-» appears as «-bu-» in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of «erô», the future of «sum». _Pay especial attention to the accent._

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in §129.

«139.» EXERCISES

I. 1. *Movêbitis*, *laudâbis*, *arâbô*. 2. *Dêlêbitis*, *vocâbitis*, *dabunt*. 3. *Mâtûrâbis*, *dêsîderâbit*, *vidêbimus*. 4. *Habêbit*, *movêbunt*, *necâbit*. 5. *Nârrâbimus*, *monêbis*, *vidêbunt*. 6. *Labôrâbitis*, *cûrâbunt*, *dabis*. 7. *Habitâbimus*, *properâbitis*, *iubêbunt*, *parâbit*. 8. *Nûntiâbô*, *portâbimus*, *iubêbô*.

II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will move, you will give, (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell (*plur.*). 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7.

They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (*sing. and plur.*), he will destroy.

«140.» NI'OBÉ AND HER CHILDREN (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apollô et Diâna erant liberî Lâtônae. Iîs Thêbânî sacra crêbra parâbant.[1] Oppidânî amâbant Lâtônâ et liberôs eius. Id superbae rêgînae erat molestum. "Cûr," inquit, "Lâtônae et liberîs sacra parâtis? Duôs liberôs habet Lâtôna; quattuordecim habeô ego. Ubi sunt mea sacra?" Lâtôna iîs verbîs[2] îrâta liberôs suôs vocat. Ad eam volant Apollô Diânaque et sagittîs[3] suîs miserôs liberôs rêgînae superbae dêlent. Niobê, nûper laeta, nunc misera, sedet apud liberôs interfectôs et cum perpetuîs lacrimîs[4] eôs dêsiderat.

NOTE. Consult the general vocabulary for «Apollô», «inquit», «duôs», and «quattuordecim». Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

[Footnote 1: Observe the force of the imperfect here, *_used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing_*; so «amâbant» denotes a past situation of affairs. (See §134.)]

[Footnote 2: Ablative of cause.]

[Footnote 3: Ablative of means.]

[Footnote 4: This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.]

LESSON XXII

REVIEW OF VERBS · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «disciplîna, -ae», f., *training, culture, discipline* «Gâius, Gâî», m., *Caius*, a Roman first name «ôrnâmentum, -î», n., *ornament, jewel* Tiberius, Tibe' rî, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman first name

VERB «doceô, -êre», *teach* (doctrine)

ADVERB «maximê», *most of all, especially*

ADJECTIVE «antîquus, -qua, -quum», *old, ancient* (antique)

«141.» Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of «sum» and the verbs in §129.

«142.» We learned in §43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in §44 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases where «grâtus», *agreeable to*, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had «molestus», *annoying to*, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

«143.» RULE. «Dative with Adjectives.» *_The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning «near», also «fit», «friendly»,*

«pleasing», «like», and their opposites._

«144.» Among such adjectives memorize the following:

«idôneus, -a, -um», *fit, suitable* (for) «amîcus, -a, -um», *friendly* (to) «inimicus, -a, -um», *hostile* (to) «grâtus, -a, -um», *pleasing* (to), *agreeable* (to) «molestus, -a, -um», *annoying* (to), *troublesome* (to) «fînitimus, -a, -um», *neighboring* (to) «proximus, -a, -um», *nearest, next* (to)

«145.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Rômânî terram idôneam agrî cultûrae habent. 2. Gallî cõpiîs Rômânîs inimîcî erant. 3. Cui dea Lâtõna amîca non erat? 4. Dea Lâtõna superbae rêgînae amîca nõn erat. 5. Cibus noster, Mârce, erit armâtîs virîs grâtus. 6. Quid erat molestum populîs Italiae? 7. Bella longa cum Gallîs erant molesta populîs Italiae. 8. Agrî Germânõrum fluviõ Rhênõ fînitimî erant. 9. Rômânî ad silvam oppidõ proximam castra movêbant. 10. Nõn sõlum fõrma sed etiam superbia rêgînae erat magna. 11. Mox rêgîna pulchra erit aegra trîstitiâ. 12. Cûr erat Niobê, rêgîna Thêbânõrum, laeta? Laeta erat Niobê multîs filiîs et filiâbus.

II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field[1] suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

[Footnote 1: Why not the dative?]

«146.» CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apud antîquâs dominâs, Cornêlia, Âfricânî filia, erat[2] maximê clâra. Filiî eius erant Tiberius Gracchus et Gâius Gracchus. Î puerî cum Cornêliâ in oppidõ Rômâ, clârõ Italiae oppidõ, habitâbant. Ibi eõs cûrâbat Cornêlia et ibi magnõ cum studiõ eõs docêbat. Bona fêmina erat Cornêlia et bonam disciplînam maximê amâbat.

NOTE. Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

[Footnote 2: Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. §134.)]

LESSON XXIII

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGÔ* AND *AUDIÔ*

«147.» As we learned in §126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in «-e», and of the fourth in «-î». The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV «re´gõ, re´gere» (*rule*) «au´dio, audí´re» (*hear*) PRES. STEM «rege-» PRES. STEM «audí-»

SINGULAR 1. re´gõ, *I rule* au´diõ, *I hear* 2. re´gis, *you rule* au´dís, *you hear* 3. re´git, *he (she, it) rules* au´dit, *he (she, it) hears*

PLURAL 1. re´gimus, *we rule* audí´mus, *we hear* 2. re´gitis, *you rule* audí´tis, *you hear* 3. re´gunt, *they rule*

au'diunt, *they hear*

1. The personal endings are the same as before.
2. The final short «-e-» of the stem «rege-» combines with the «-ô» in the first person, becomes «-u-» in the third person plural, and becomes «-i-» elsewhere. The inflection is like that of «erô», the future of «sum».
3. In «audiô» the personal endings are added regularly to the stem «audî-». In the third person plural «-u-» is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as «audi-u-nt». Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final «-t» just as in «amô» and «moneô». (Cf. §12.2.)

Note that «-i-» is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. §12.1, 2.)

«148.» Like «regô» and «audiô» inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

INDICATIVE PRESENT INFINITIVE PRESENT

agô, *I drive* agere, *to drive* dîcô, *I say* dîcere, *to say* dûcô, *I lead* dûcere, *to lead* mittô, *I send* mittere, *to send* mûniô, *I fortify* mûnîre, *to fortify* reperiô, *I find* reperiîre, *to find* veniô, *I come* venîre, *to come*

«149.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis agit? Cûr venit? Quem mittit? Quem dûcis? 2. Quid mittunt? Ad quem veniunt? Cuius castra mûniunt? 3. Quem agunt? Venîmus. Quid puer reperit? 4. Quem mittimus? Cuius equum dûcitis? Quid dîcunt? 5. Mûnîmus, venîtis, dîcit. 6. Agimus, reperîtis, mûnîs. 7. Reperis, ducitis, dîcis. 8. Agitis, audimus, regimus.

II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (*sing. and plur.*). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive, he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (*all plur.*).

«150.» CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (*Concluded*)

Proximum domicîliô Cornêliae erat pulchrae Campânae domicilium. Campâna erat superba nôn solum fôrmâ suâ sed maximê ôrnâmentîs suîs. Ea[1] laudâbat semper. "Habêsne tû ûlla ornâmenta, Cornêlia?" inquit. "Ubi sunt tua ôrnâmenta?" Deinde Cornêlia filiôs suôs Tiberium et Gâium vocat. "Puerî meî," inquit, "sunt mea ôrnâmenta. Nam bonî liberî sunt semper bonae fêminae ôrnâmenta maximê clâra."

NOTE. The only new words here are «Campâna», «semper», and «tû».

[Footnote 1: «Ea», accusative plural neuter.]

[Illustration: "PUERI MEI SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA"]

LESSON XXIV

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGÔ AND AUDIÔ THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

«151.» PARADIGMS

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV SINGULAR 1. *regēbam, I was ruling audiēbam, I was hearing* 2. *regēbās, you were riding audiēbās, you were hearing* 3. *regēbat, he was ruling audiēbat, he was hearing*

PLURAL 1. *regēbāmus, we were ruling audiēbāmus, we were hearing* 2. *regēbātis, you were ruling audiēbātis, you were hearing* 3. *regēbant, they were ruling audiēbant, they were hearing*

1. The tense sign is «-bâ-», as in the first two conjugations.

2. Observe that the final «-e-» of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign «-bâ-». This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. «monēbam» and «regēbam»).

3. In the fourth conjugation «-ê-» is inserted between the stem and the tense sign «-bâ-» («audi-ê-ba-m»).

4. In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in §148.

«152.» EXERCISES

I. 1. *Agēbat, veniēbat, mittēbat, ducēbant.* 2. *Agēbant, mittēbant, ducēbas, muniēbant.* 3. *Mittēbāmus, ducēbātis, ducēbant.* 4. *Muniēbāmus, veniēbātis, ducēbās.* 5. *Mittēbās, veniēbāmus, reperiēbat.* 6. *Reperiēbās, veniēbās, audiēbātis.* 7. *Agēbāmus, reperiēbātis, muniēbat.* 8. *Agēbātis, ducēbam, muniēbam.*

II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (*sing. and plur.*), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (*sing. and plur.*), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (*sing. and plur.*), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (*sing. and plur.*), we were coming, they were ruling.

«153.» «The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.» We learned above (§20.a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an *intransitive* verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (§45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. §43.)

«crêdô, crêdere», *believe* (give belief to) «faveô, favêre», *favor* (show favor to) «noceô, nocêre», *injure* (do harm to) «pâreô, pâreere», *obey* (give obedience to) «persuâdeô, persuâdêre», *persuade* (offer persuasion to) «resistô, resistere», *resist* (offer resistance to) «studeô, studêre», *be eager for* (give attention to)

«154.» RULE. «Dative with Intransitive Verbs.» _The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs «crêdô», «faveô», «noceô», «pâreô», «persuâdeô», «resistô», «studeô», and others of like meaning._

«155.» EXERCISE

1. *Crêdisne verbis sociorum? Multi verbis eorum non credunt.* 2. *Mei finitimii consilio tuo non faverunt, quod bello student.* 3. *Tiberius et Gaius disciplinae durae non resistebant et Corneliae parebant.* 4. *Dea erat inimica septem filiabus reginae.* 5. *Dura poena et perpetua tristitia reginae non persuaderunt.* 6. *Nuper ea resistebat et nunc resistit potentiae Latoniae.* 7. *Mox sagittae volabunt et liberis miseris nocerunt.*

LESSON XXV

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGÔ* AND *AUDIÔ*

«156.» In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using «-bi-», as in the first and second conjugations, we use «-â-»[1] in the first person singular and «-ê-» in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final «-e-» of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final «-î-» of the stem is retained.[2]

[Footnote 1: The «-â-» is shortened before «-m» final, and «-ê-» before «-t» final and before «-nt». (Cf. §12.2.)]

[Footnote 2: The «-î-» is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel. (Cf. §12.1.)]

«157.» PARADIGMS

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV SINGULAR 1. re'gam, *I shall rule* au'diam, *I shall hear* 2. re'gês, *you will rule* au'diês, *you will hear* 3. re'get, *he will rule* au'diet, *he will hear*

PLURAL 1. regê'mus, *we shall rule* audiê'mus, *we shall hear* 2. regê'tis, *you will rule* audiê'tis, *you will hear* 3. re'gent, *they will rule* au'dient, *they will hear*

1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.

2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in §148.

«158.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Dîcet, dúcêtis, mûniêmus. 2. Dîcent, dîcêtis, mittêmus. 3. Mûnient, venient, mittent, agent. 4. Dúcet, mittês, veniet, aget. 5. Mûniet, reperiêtis, agêmus. 6. Mittam, veniêmus, regent. 7. Audiêtis, veniês, reperiês. 8. Reperiet, agam, dúcêmus, mittet. 9. Vidêbitis, sedêbô, vocâbimus.

II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (*sing. and plur.*), he will say. 5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6. Who[3] will believe the story? I[4] shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

[Footnote 3: Remember that «quis», *who*, is singular in number.]

[Footnote 4: Express by «ego», because it is emphatic.]

LESSON XXVI

VERBS IN -IÔ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION · THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

«159.» There are a few common verbs ending in «-iô» which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. §126.) Compare

«audiô, audí're» (*hear*), fourth conjugation «capiô, ca'pere» (*take*), third conjugation

«160.» The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of «capiô» are inflected as follows:

«capiô, capere», *take* PRES. STEM «cape-»

PRESENT IMPERFECT FUTURE SINGULAR 1. ca'piô capiê'bam ca'pam 2. ca'pis capiê'bâs ca'piês 3. ca'pit capiê'bat ca'pîet

PLURAL 1. ca'pimus capiêbâ'mus capiê'mus 2. ca'pitis capiêbâ'tis capiê'tis 3. ca'piunt capiê'bant ca'piunt

1. Observe that «capiô» and the other «-iô» verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation _two vowels occur in succession._ (Cf. capiô, audiô; capiunt, audiunt; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. capis, regis; capit, regit; etc.)

2. Like «capiô», inflect

«faciô, facere», *make, do* «fugiô, fugere», *flee* «iaciô, iacere», *hurl* «rapiô, rapere», *seize*

«161.» «The Imperative Mood.» The imperative mood expresses a command; as, *come! send!* The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. _The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding «-te» to the singular._

CONJUGATION SINGULAR PLURAL I. amâ, *love thou* amâ'te, *love ye* II. monê, *advise thou* monê'te, *advise ye* III. (a) rege, *rule thou* re'gite, *rule ye* (b) cape, *take thou* ca'pite, *take ye* IV. audî, *hear thou* audî'te, *hear ye* sum (irregular) es, *be thou* este, *be ye*

1. In the third conjugation the final -e- of the stem becomes -i- in the plural.

2. The verbs «dîcô», *say*; «dûcô», *lead*; and «faciô», *make*, have the irregular forms «dîc», «dûc», and «fac» in the singular.

3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of «veniô», «dûcô», «vocô», «doceô», «laudô», «dîcô», «sedeô», «agô», «faciô», «mûniô», «mittô», «rapiô».

«162.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Fugient, faciunt, iaciêbat. 2. Dêlê, nûntiâte, fugiunt. 3. Venîte, dîc, faciêtis. 4. Dûcite, iaciam, fugiêbant. 5. Fac, iaciêbâmus, fugimus, rapite. 6. Sedête, reperî, docête. 7. Fugiêmus, iacient, rapiês. 8. Reperient, rapiêbâtis, nocent. 9. Favête, resistê, pârebîtis.

10. Volâ ad multâs terrâs et dâ auxilium. 11. Ego tâla mea capiam et multâs ferâs dêlêbô. 12. Quis fâbulae tuae crêdet? 13. Este bonî, puerî, et audîte verba grâta magistrî.

II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3. She will give aid to the weak.[1] 4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5. Romans, tell[2] the famous story to your children.

[Footnote 1: Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. §99.II.3.)]

[Footnote 2: Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.]

* * * * *

«Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, §§510-512»

* * * * *

LESSON XXVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *AMÔ* AND *MONEÔ*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «âla, -ae», f., *wing* «deus, -î», m., *god (deity)*[A] «monstrum, -î», n., *omen, prodigy; monster*
ôrâculum, -î, n., *oracle*

VERB «vâstô, -âre», *lay waste, devastate*

ADJECTIVES «commôtus, -a, -um», *moved, excited* «maximus, -a, -um», *greatest (maximum)* «saevus, -a, -um», *fierce, savage*

ADVERBS «ita», *thus, in this way, as follows* «tum», *then, at that time*

[Footnote A: For the declension of «deus», see §468]

«163.» «The Voices.» Thus far the verb forms have been in the _active voice; *that is, they have represented the subject as performing_ an action; as,*

The lion ---> *killed* ---> the hunter

A verb is said to be in the *passive voice* when it represents its subject as *receiving* an action; as,

The lion <--- *was killed* <--- by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

«164.» «Passive Personal Endings.» In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL 1. -r, *I* 1. -mur, *we* 2. -ris, -re, *you* 2. -minî, *you* 3. -tur, *he, she, it* 3. -ntur, *they*

a. Observe that the letter «-r» appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the *passive sign*.

«165.» PARADIGMS

«amô, amâre» «monêo, monêre» PRES. STEM «amâ-» PRES. STEM «monê-»

PRESENT INDICATIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS SINGULAR a´mor, *I am loved* mo´neor, *I am advised*
-or[1] amâ´ris or amâ´re, monê´ris or monê´re. -ris or -re *you are loved you are advised* amâ´tur, *he is loved*
monê´tur, *he is advised* -tur

PLURAL amâ´mur, *we are loved* monê´mur, *we are advised* -mur amâ´minî, *you are loved* monê´minî, *you are advised* -mini aman´tur, *they are loved* monen´tur, *they are advised* -ntur

[Footnote 1: In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is «-or».]

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (TENSE SIGN «-bâ-»)

SINGULAR amâ´bar, monê´bar, -r *I was being loved I was being advised* amâbâ´ris or amâbâ´re, monêbâ´ris or monêbâ´re -ris or -re *you were being loved you were being advised* amâbâ´tur, monêbâ´tur, -tur *he was being loved he was being advised*

PLURAL amâbâ´mur, monêbâ´mur, -mur *we were being loved we were being advised* amâbâ´minî, monêbâ´minî, -minî *you were being loved you were being advised* amâban´tur, monêban´tur, -ntur *they were being loved they were being advised*

FUTURE (TENSE SIGN «-bi-»)

SINGULAR amâ´bor, monê´bor, -r *I shall be loved I shall be advised* amâ´beris, or amâ´bere monê´beris or monê´bere, -ris or -re *you will be loved you will be advised* amâ´bitur, monê´bitur, -tur *he will be loved he will be advised*

PLURAL amâ´bimur, monê´bimur, -mur *we shall be loved we shall be advised* amâbî´minî, monêbî´minî, -minî *you will be loved you will be advised* amâbun´tur, monêbun´tur, -ntur *they will be loved they will be advised*

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.

2. In the future the tense sign «-bi-» appears as «-bo-» in the first person, «-be-» in the second, singular number, and as «-bu-» in the third person plural.

3. Inflect «laudô», «necô», «portô», «moveô», «dêlêô», «iubeô», in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

«166.» Intransitive verbs, such as «mâtûrô», *I hasten*; «habitô», *I dwell*, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

«167.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudâris *or* laudâre, laudâs, datur, dat. 2. Dabitur, dabit, vidêminî, vidêtis. 3. Vocâbat, vocâbatur, dêlêbitis, dêlêbiminî. 4. Parâbatur, parâbat, cûrâs, cûrâris *or* cûrâre. 5. Portâbantur, portâbant, vidêbimur, vidêbimus. 6. Iubêris *or* iubêre, iubês, laudâbâris *or* laudâbâre, laudâbâs. 7. Movêberis *or* movêbere, movêbis, dabatur, dabant. 8. Dêlentur, dêlent, parâbâmur, parâbâmus.

II. 1. We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried. 2. I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered. 3. You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised. 4. I am called, I call, you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.

[Illustration: PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT]

«168.» PER´SEUS AND ANDROM´EDA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,[2] maximî[3] deôrum. Dê eô multâs fabulâs narrant poëtae. Eî favent deî, eî magica arma et âlâs dant. Eîs tâlîs armâtus et âlîs frêtus ad multâs terrâs volâbat et mônstra saeva dêlêbat et miserîs înfîrmîsque auxilium dabat.

Aethiopia est terra Âfricae. Eam terram Cêpheus[4] regêbat. Eî[5] Neptûnus, maximus aquârûm deus, erat îrâtus et mittit[6] mônstrum saevum ad Aethiopiam. Ibi mônstrum nôn solum lâtîs pulchrîsque Aethiopiae agrîs nocêbat sed etiam domicilia agricolârûm dêlêbat, et multôs virôs, fêminâs, lîberôsque necâbat. Populus ex agrîs fugiêbat et oppida mûrîs validîs mûniêbat. Tum Cêpheus magnâ trîstitiâ commôtus ad Iovis ôrâculum properat et ita dicit: "Amîcî meî necantur; agrî meî vâstantur. Audî verba mea, Iuppiter. Dâ miserîs auxilium. Age mônstrum saevum ex patriâ."

[Footnote 2: «Iovis», the genitive of «Iuppiter».]

[Footnote 3: Used substantively, *the greatest*. So below, l. 4, «miserîs» and «înfîrmîs» are used substantively.]

[Footnote 4: Pronounce in two syllables, *Ce'pheus*.]

[Footnote 5: «Eî», *at him*, dative with «îrâtus».]

[Footnote 6: The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.]

LESSON XXVIII

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGÔ* AND *AUDIÔ*

[Special Vocabulary]

VERBS «respondeô, -êre», *respond, reply* «servô, -âre», *save, preserve*

ADJECTIVE «cârus, -a, -um», *dear* (cherish)

CONJUNCTION «autem», *but, moreover, now*. Usually stands second, never first

NOUN «vîta, -ae», *f., life* (vital)

«169.» Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of «regô» and «audiô», and learn the passive of the same tenses (§§490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (§164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final «-e-» of the stem is not changed to «-i-», as it is in the active. We therefore have «re'geris» or «re'gere», *not* «re'giris», «re'gire».

c. Inflect «agô», «dîcô», «dûcô», «mûniô», «reperiô», in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

«170.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Agêbat, agêbâtur, mittêbat, mittêbâtur, dûcêbat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, mûniunt. 3. Mittor,

mittar, mittam, dúcêre, dúcere. 4. Dícêmur, dícimus, dícêmus, dícimur, mûniêbaminî. 5. Dûcitur, dúciminî, reperîmur, reperiar, agitur. 6. Agêbâmus, agêbâmur, reperîris, reperiêminî. 7. Mûnîminî, veniêbam, dúcêbar, dícêtur. 8. Mittiminî, mittitis, mittêris, mitteris, agêbâminî. 9. Dûcitur, dúcitur, mûniuntur, reperient, audientur.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were leading, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (*_sing. and plur.*). 6. *He was being led, he will come, you are said* (*sing. and plur.*).

«171.» PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Tum ôrâculum ita respondet: "Mala est fortûna tua. Neptûnus, magnus aquârûm deus, terrae Aethiopiae inimîcus, eâs poenâs mittit. Sed parâ îrâtô deô sacrum idôneum et mônstrum saevum ex patriâ tuâ agêtur. Andromeda filia tua est mônstrô grâta. Dâ eam mônstrô. Servâ câram patriam et vîtam populî tuî." Andromeda autem erat puella pulchra. Eam amâbat Cêpheus maximê.

LESSON XXIX

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *-IÔ* VERBS PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

[Special Vocabulary]

VERB «superô, -âre», *conquer, overcome* (insuperable)

NOUNS «cûra, -ae», f., *care, trouble* «locus, -î», m., *place, spot* (location). «Locus» is neuter in the plural and is declined «loca, -ôrum», etc. «perîculum, -î», n., *danger, peril*

ADVERBS «semper», *always* «tamen», *yet, nevertheless*

PREPOSITIONS «dê», with abl., *down from; concerning* «per», with acc., *through*

CONJUNCTION «si», *if*

«172.» Review the active voice of «capiô», present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§492).

a. The present forms «capior» and «capiuntur» are like «audior, audiuntur», and the rest of the tense is like «regor».

b. In like manner inflect the passive of «iaciô» and «rapiô».

«173.» «The Infinitive.» The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, «amâre», *to love*. Infinitive means *unlimited*. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the *finite*, or limited, verb forms.

«174.» The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

CONJ. PRES. PRES. INFINITIVE PRES. INFINITIVE STEM ACTIVE PASSIVE

I. «amâ-» amâ're, amâ'rî, *to love to be loved* II. «monê-» monê're, monê'rî, *to advise to be advised* III. «rege-» re'gere, re'gî, *to rule to be ruled* «cape-» ca'pere ca'pî, *to take to be taken* IV. «audî-» audî're, audî'rî, *to hear to be heard*

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add «-re» to the present stem.

a. The present infinitive of «sum» is «esse». There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final «-e» to «-î», except in the third conjugation, which changes final «-ere» to «-î».

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of «doceô», «sedeô», «volô», «cûrô», «mittô», «dûcô», «mûniô», «reperiô», «iaciô», «rapiô.»

«175.» The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

ACTIVE[1] PASSIVE CONJ. SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL I. «a'mâ» amâ'te amâ're, amâ'minî, *be thou loved be ye loved* II. «mo'nê» monê'te monê're, monê'minî, *be thou advised be ye advised* III. «re'ge» re'gite re'gere, regi'minî, *be thou ruled be ye ruled* «ca'pe» ca'pite ca'pere, capi'minî, *be thou taken be ye taken* IV. «au'dî» audî'te audî're, audî'minî, *be thou heard be ye heard*

1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular[2] and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in §174.3.

[Footnote 1: For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from §161.]

[Footnote 2: That is, using the personal ending «-re». A form like «amâre» may be either *indicative*, *infinitive*, or *imperative*.]

«176.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1. Tum Perseus âlîs ad terrâs multâs volabit. 2. Mônstrum saevum per aquâs properat et mox agrôs nostrôs vâstâbit. 3. Sî autem Cêpheus ad ôrâculum properâbit, ôrâculum ita respondêbit. 4. Quis tâlîs Perseî superâbitur? Multa mônstra tâlîs eius superâbuntur. 5. Cum cûrîs magnîs et lacrimîs multîs agricolae ex domiciliîs cârîs aguntur. 6. Multa loca vâstâbantur et multa oppida dêlêbantur. 7. Mônstrum est validum, tamen superâbitur. 8. Crêdsne semper verbîs ôrâculî? Ego îîs non semper crêdam. 9. Pârêbitne Cêpheus ôrâculô? Verba ôrâculî eî persuâdêbunt. 10. Si nôn fugiêmus, oppidum capiêtur et oppidânî necâbuntur. 11. Vocâte puerôs et nârrâte fâbulam clâram dê mônstrô saevô.

II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

LESSON XXX

SYNOPSIS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *FROM*

[Special Vocabulary]

VERBS «absum, abesse», irreg., *be away, be absent, be distant*, with separative abl. «adpropinquô, -âre», *draw near, approach* (propinquity), with dative[A] «contineô, -êre», *hold together, hem in, keep* (contain) «discêdô, -ere», *depart, go away, leave*, with separative abl. «egeô, -êre», *lack, need, be without*, with separative abl. «interficiô, -ere», *kill* «prohibeô, -êre», *restrain, keep from* (prohibit) «vulnerô, -âre», *wound* (vulnerable)

NOUNS «prôvincia, -ae», f., *province* «vînum, -î», n., *wine*

ADJECTIVE «dêfessus, -a, -um», *weary, worn out*

ADVERB «longê», *far, by far, far away*

[Footnote A: This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with «ad» and the accusative.]

«177.» You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:[1]

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II INDICATIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* a'mô
a'mor mo'neô mo'neor *Imperf.* amâ'bam amâ'bar monê'bam monê'bar *Fut.* amâ'bo amâ'bor monê'bo
monê'bor

[Footnote 1: Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.]

CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II IMPERATIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* a'mâ
amâ're mo'nê monê're

INFINITIVE *Pres.* amâ're amâ'rî monê're monê'rî

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION III («-iô» verbs) INDICATIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE
PASSIVE *Pres.* re'gô re'gor ca'piô ca'pior *Imperf.* regê'bam regê'bar capiê'bam capiê'bar *Fut.* re'gam re'gar
ca'piam ca'piar

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* re'ge re'gere ca'pe ca'pere

INFINITIVE *Pres.* re'gere re'gî ca'pere ca'pî

CONJUGATION IV INDICATIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* au'diô au'dior *Imperf.* audiê'bam audiê'bar
Fut. au'diam au'diar

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* au'dî audî're

INFINITIVE *Pres.* audî're audî'rî

1. Give the synopsis of «rapiô», «mûniô», «reperiô», «doceô», «videô», «dîcô», «agô», «laudô», «portô», and vary the person and number.

«178.» We learned in §50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.

«179.» RULE. «Ablative of the Place From.» _The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions «â» or «ab», «dê», «ê» or «ex»._

«Agricolae ex agrîs veniunt», *the farmers come from the fields*

a. «â» or «ab» denotes *from near* a place; «ê» or «ex», *out from it*; and «dê», *down from* it. This may be represented graphically as follows:

_____ || «â» or «ab» || «ê» or «ex» / _____ | _____ \\ | Place | / | _____ | ||
«dê» | V

«180.» RULE. «Ablative of Separation.» _Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning._

a. If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition «â» or «ab», «ê» or «ex», or «dê» is generally used. If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.

(a) «Perseus terram â mônstrîs liberat» *Perseus frees the land from monsters* (literal separation--actual motion is expressed) (b) «Perseus terram trîstitiâ liberat» *Perseus frees the land from sorrow* (figurative separation--no actual motion is expressed)

«181.» RULE. «Ablative of the Personal Agent.» _The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition «â» or «ab»._

a. In this construction the English translation of «â», «ab» is *by* rather than *from*. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom* the act was performed.

«Mônstrum â Perseô necâtur», *the monster is being slain by (lit. from) Perseus*

b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be «Perseus monstrum necat», *Perseus is slaying the monster*. In the passive the *object* of the active verb becomes the *subject*, and the *subject* of the active verb becomes the *ablative of the personal agent*, with «â» or «ab».

c. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition *by*. (Cf. §100. b.) _Means is a «thing»; the agent or actor is a «person»_. The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has «â» or «ab». Compare

«Fera sagittâ necâtur», *the wild beast is killed by an arrow* «Fera â Diânâ necâtur», *the wild beast is killed by Diana*

«Sagittâ», in the first sentence, is the ablative of means; «â Diânâ», in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

«182.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1. Viri inopiâ cibî dêfessî ab eô locô discêdent. 2. Gerinânî castrîs Rômânîs adpropinquâbant, tamen lêgâtus cōpiâs â proeliô continêbat. 3. Multa Gallôrum oppida ab Rômânîs capientur. 4. Tum Rômânî tōtum populum eôrum oppidôrum gladiîs pîlîsque interficient. 5. Oppidânî Rômânîs resistent, sed defessî longô proeliô

fugient. 6. Multî ex Galliâ fugiêbant et in Germânôrum vicîs habitâbant. 7. Miserî nautae vulnerantur ab inimîcîs[2] saevîs et cibô egent. 8. Discêdite et date virîs frûmentum et còpiam vîni. 9. Còpiae nostrae â proeliô continêbantur ab Sextô lêgatô. 10. Id oppidum ab prôvinciâ Rômânâ longê aberat.

II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

[Footnote 2: «inimîcîs», here used as a noun. See vocabulary.]

LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *SUM*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS aurum, -î, n., *gold* (oriole) «mora, -ae», f., *delay* «nâvigium, nâvi'gî», n., *boat, ship* «ventus, -î», m., *wind* (ventilate)

VERB «nâvigô, -âre», *sail* (navigate)

ADJECTIVES attentus, -a, -um, *attentive, careful* «dubius, -a, -um», *doubtful* (dubious) perfidus, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous* (perfidy)

ADVERB «anteâ», *before, previously*

PREPOSITION «sine», with abl., *without*

«183.» «Principal Parts.» There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the *principal parts*.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the present, the past, and the past participle; as *go, went, gone; see, saw, seen*, etc.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the _first person singular of the present indicative, *the* present infinitive, *the* first person singular of the perfect indicative, *and* the perfect passive participle._

«184.» «Conjugation Stems.» From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the «present stem», which is found from the present infinitive (cf. §126.a). The other two stems are the «perfect stem» and the «participial stem».

«185.» «The Perfect Stem.» The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be _found by dropping «-î» from the first person singular of the perfect_, the third of the principal parts. From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE (ENGLISH PAST PERFECT) THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

«186.» «The Endings of the Perfect.» The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL 1. -î, *I* 1. -imus, *we* 2. -istî, *you* 2. -istis, *you* 3. -it, *he, she, it* 3. -êrunt or -êre, *they*

«187.» Inflection of «sum» in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:

PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC. PRIN. PARTS sum esse fuî

PERFECT STEM fu-

PERFECT SINGULAR PLURAL fuî, *I have been, I was* fu'imus, *we have been, we were* fuistî, fuistis, *you have been, you were* fu'it, *he has been, he was* fuê'runt or fuê're, *they have been, they were*

PLUPERFECT (TENSE SIGN «-erâ-») fu'eram, *I had been* fuerâ'mus, *we had been* fu'erâs, *you had been* fuerâ'tis, *you had been* fu'erat, *he had been* fu'erant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN «-eri-») fu'erô, *I shall have been* fue'rimus, *we shall have been* fu'eris, *you will have been* fue'ritis, *you will have been* fu'erit, *he will have been* fu'erint, *they will have been*

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.
2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding «eram», the imperfect of «sum», to the perfect stem. The tense sign is «-erâ-».
3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding «erô», the future of «sum», to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in «-erint», not in «-erunt». The tense sign is «-eri-».
4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

«188.» DIALOGUE

THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

M. Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quînte? T. Ego in meô lûdô fuî et Quîntus in suô lûdô fuit. Bonî puerî fuimus. Fuitne Sextus in vîcô hodiê? M. Fuit. Nûper per agrôs proximôs fluviô properâbat. Ibi is et Cornêlius habent nâvigium. T. *Nâvigium* dîcis? Aliî[1] nârâ eam fâbulam! M. Vêrô (*Yes, truly*), pulchrum et novum nâvigium! Q. Cuius pecûniâ[2] Sextus et Cornêlius id nâvigium parant? Quis iîs pecûniam dat? M. Amîcî Cornêlî multum habent aurum et puer pecûniâ nôn eget. T. Quô puerî nâvigâbunt? Nâvigâbuntne longê â terrâ? M. Dubia sunt cônscilia eôrum. Sed hodiê, crêdô, sî ventus erit idôneus, ad maximam însulam nâvigâbunt. Iam anteâ ibi fuêrunt. Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et puerî magnô in perîculô erant. Q. Aqua ventô commôta est inimîca nautîs semper, et saepe perfidus ventus nâvigia rapit, agit, dêletque. Îî puerî, sî nôn fuerint maximê attentî, îrâtâ aquâ et validô ventô superâbuntur et ita interficientur.

[Footnote 1: Dative case. (Cf. §109.)]

[Footnote 2: Ablative of means.]

«189.» EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school. 2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river. 3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him. 4. Who says so? Marcus. 5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat. 6. Soon we shall sail with the boys. 7. There[3] will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.[4]

[Footnote 3: The expletive *there* is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English.]

[Footnote 4: This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with *we*.]

LESSON XXXII

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS «animus, -î», m., *mind, heart; spirit, feeling* (animate) «bracchium, bracchî», n., *forearm, arm*
«porta, -ae», f., *gate* (portal)

ADJECTIVES «adversus, -a, -um», *opposite; adverse, contrary* «plênus, -a, -um», *full* (plenty)

PREPOSITION «prô», with abl., *before; in behalf of; instead of*

ADVERB «diû», *for a long time, long*

«190.» «Meanings of the Perfect.» The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with *have*, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, *I have finished my work*. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the «perfect definite».

The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened _sometime in the past; *as, I finished my work.*_ As no definite time is specified, this is called the «perfect indefinite». It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

I {was finishing } my work (imperfect, §134) {used to finish} *I finished my work* (perfect indefinite) *I have finished my work* (perfect definite)

When telling a story the Latin uses the *perfect indefinite* to mark the different *forward steps* of the narrative, and the *imperfect* to *describe situations and circumstances* that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

«191.» «Inflection of the Perfect.» We learned in §186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

CONJ. I «amâvî» *I have loved, I loved or did love* CONJ. II «monûî» *I have advised, I advised or did advise*
CONJ. III «rêxî» *I have ruled, I ruled or did rule* «cêpî» *I have taken, I took or did take* CONJ. IV «audîvî» *I*

have heard, I heard or did hear

PERFECT STEMS «amâv-» «monu-» «rêx-» «cêp-» «audîv-»

SINGULAR 1. amâ´vî mo´nuî rê´xî cê´pî audî´vî 2. amâvis´tî monuis´tî rêxis´tî cêpis´tî audîvis´tî 3. amâ´vit mo´nuit rê´xit cê´pit audî´vit

PLURAL 1. amâ´vimus monu´imus rê´ximus cê´pimus audî´vimus 2. amâvis´tis monuis´tis rêxis´tis cêpis´tis audîvis´tis 3. amâvê´runt monuê´runt rêxê´runt cêpê´runt audîvê´runt *or or or or or* amâvê´re monuê´re rêxê´re cêpê´re audîvê´re

1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. _This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly._

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding «-vî» to the present stem. Like «amâvî» inflect «parâvî», «vocâvî», «cûrâvî», «laudâvî».

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

«192.» Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC. dô dare dedî *give* dêleô dêlêre dêlêvî *destroy* habeô habêre habuî *have* movêô movêre môvî *move* pâreô pârere pâruî *obey* prohibeô prohibêre prohîbuî *restrain, keep from* videô vidêre vîdî *see* dîcô dîcere dîxî *say* discêdô discêdere discessî *depart* dûcô dûcere dûxî *lead* faciô facere fêcî *make, do* mittô mittere mîsî *send* mûniô mûnire mûnivî *fortify* veniô venîre venî *come*

«193.» PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cêpheus, adversâ fortûnâ maximê commôtus, discessit et multîs cum lacrimîs populô Aethiopiae verba ôrâculî nârrâvit. Fâta Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, â têtô populô dêplôrâbantur, tamen nûllum erat auxilium. Deinde Cêpheus cum plênô trîstítiae animô câram suam fîliam ex oppidî portâ ad aquam dûxit et braccia eius ad saxa dûra revînxit. Tum amîcî puellae miserae longê discessêrunt et diû mônstrum saevum exspectâvêrunt.

Tum forte Perseus, âlîs frêtus, super Aethiopiam volâbat. Vîdit populum, Andromedam, lacrimâs, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram dêscendit. Tum Cêpheus eî têtâs cûrâs nârrâvit et ita dîxit: "Pârêbô verbîs ôrâculî, et prô patriâ fîliam meam dabô; sed sî id mônstrum interficiês et Andromedam servâbis, tibi (*to you*) eam dabô."

LESSON XXXIII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

«194.» CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV «amô» «moneô» «regô» «capiô» «audiô» PERFECT STEMS «amâv-» «monu-» «rêx-» «cêp-» «audîv-»

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE TENSE SIGN «-erâ-»

SINGULAR I had loved I had advised I had ruled I had taken I had heard

1. amâ´veram monu´eram rê´xeram cê´peram audî´veram 2. amâ´verâs monu´erâs rê´xerâs cê´perâs

audí'verás 3. amâ'verat monu'erat rê'xerat cê'perat audí'verat

PLURAL 1. amâ'verâ'mus monuerâ'mus rêxerâ'mus cêperâ'mus audí'verâ'mus 2. amâ'verâ'tis monuerâ'tis rêxerâ'tis cêperâ'tis audí'verâ'tis 3. ama'verant monu'erant rê'xerant cê'perant audí'verant

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE TENSE SIGN «-eri-»

SINGULAR I shall have I shall have I shall have I shall have I shall have loved advised ruled taken heard

1. amâ'verô monu'erô rê'xerô cê'perô audí'verô 2. amâ'veris monu'eris rê'xeris cê'peris audí'veris 3. amâ'verit monu'erit rê'xerit cê'perit audí'verit

PLURAL 1. amâ'verimus monue'rimus rêxe'rimus cêpe'rimus audí'verimus 2. amâ'veritis monue'ritis rêxe'ritis cêpe'ritis audí'veritis 3. amâ'verint monu'erint rê'xerint cê'perint audí'verint

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in §187.2-4 hold good here.

2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of «dô», «portô», «dêleô», «moveô», «habeô», «dícô», «discêdô», «faciô», «veniô», «mûniô.»

«195.» «The Perfect Active Infinitive.» The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding «-isse» to the perfect stem.

CONJ PERFECT STEM PERFECT INFINITIVE I. amâv- amâvis'se, *to have loved* II. monu- monuis'se, *to have advised* III. (a) rêx- rêxis'se, *to have ruled* (b) cêp- cêpis'se, *to have taken* IV. audí» audívis'se, *to have heard* sum fu- fuis'se, *to have been*

1. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of «dô», «portô», «dêleô», «moveô», «habeô», «dícô», «discêdô», «faciô», «veniô», «mûniô».

«196.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Habuistî, môvêrunt, miserant. 2. Vîdit, dîxeris, dûxisse. 3. Mîsistis, pâruêrunt, discesserâmus. 4. Mûnîvit, dederam, mîserô. 5. Habuerimus, dêlêvî, pâruit, fuisse. 6. Dederâs, mûnîveritis, vênêrâtis, mîsisse. 7. Vênêrâs, fêcisse, dederâtis, portâveris.

8. Quem verba ôrâculî môverant? Populum verba ôrâculî môverant. 9. Cui Cêpheus verba ôrâculî nârrâverit? Perseô Cêpheus verba ôrâculî nârrâverit. 10. Amîcî ab Andromedâ discesserint. 11. Mônstrum saevum domicilia multa dêlêverat. 12. Ubi mônstrum vîdistis? Id in aquâ vîdimus. 13. Quid mônstrum faciet? Mônstrum Andromedam interficiet.

II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (*sing. and plur.*). 4. To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (*sing. and plur.*). 6. I have given, you had moved (*sing. and plur.*), we had said. 7. You will have made (*_sing. and plur._*), they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from[1] the towns? They had departed because the monster had come. 10. Did Cepheus obey[2] the oracle[3]? He did.

[Footnote 1: «ex». What would «ab» mean?]

[Footnote 2: *Did ... obey*, perfect tense.]

[Footnote 3: What case?]

LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

[Special Vocabulary]

ADVERBS «*celeriter*», *quickly* (celerity) «*dênique*», *finally* «*graviter*», *heavily, severely* (gravity) «*subitô*», *suddenly*

VERB «*reportô, -âre, -âvî*», *bring back, restore; win, gain* (report)

«197.» A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

{ PRESENT = First of the principal parts TENSES { IMPERFECT = Present stem + -ba-m OF THE {
FUTURE = Present stem + -bô, Conj. I and II INDICATIVE { -a-m, Conj. III and IV { PERFECT = Third of
the principal parts { PLUPERFECT = Perfect stem + -era-m { FUTURE PERFECT = Perfect stem + -erô

«198.» The synopsis of the active voice of «*amô*», as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS «*amô, amâre, amâvî*»

PRES. STEM «*amâ-*»

{ *Pres. amô* INDIC. { *Imperf. amâbam* { *Fut. amâbô* PRES. IMV. *amâ* PRES. INFIN. *amâre*

PERF. STEM «*amâv-*»

{ *Perf. amâvî* INDIC. { *Pluperf. amâveram* { *Fut. perf. amâverô* PERF. INFIN. *amâvisse*

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of «*parô*», «*dô*», «*laudô*», «*dêleô*», «*habeô*», «*moveô*», «*pâreô*», «*videô*», «*đícô*», «*discêdô*», «*dúcô*», «*mittô*», «*capiô*», «*muniô*», «*veniô*».[1]

[Footnote 1: Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number.]

«199.» Learn the following principal parts:[2]

PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC.

IRREGULAR VERBS *sum esse fuî be ab´sum abes´se â´fuî be away dô dare dedî give*

CONJUGATION II *contineô continêre continuî hold in, keep doceô docêre docuî teach egeô egêre eguî need faveô favêre fâvî favor iubeô iubêre iussî order noceô nocêre nocuî injure persuâdeô persuâdêre persuâsî persuade respondeô respondêre respondî reply sedeô sedêre sêdî sit studeô studêre studuî be eager*

CONJUGATION III *agô agere êgî drive crêdô crêdere crêdidî believe fugiô fugere fûgî flee iaciô iacere iêcî hurl interficiô interficere interfêcî kill rapiô rapere rapuî seize resis´tô resis´tere re´stitî resist*

CONJUGATION IV repe'riô reperî're rep'perî find

[Footnote 2: These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.]

«200.» PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290. Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proeliô studêbat[3] et respondit,[3] "Verba tua sunt maximê grâta," et laetus arma sua magica parâvit.[3] Subitô mônstrum vidêtur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedae adpropinquat. Eius amîcî longê absunt et misera puella est sôla. Perseus autem sine morâ super aquam volâvit.[3] Subitô dêscendit[3] et dûrô gladiô saevum mônstrum graviter vulnerâvit.[3] Diû pugnâtur,[4] diû proelium est dubium. Dênique autem Perseus mônstrum interfêcit[3] et victôriam reportâvit.[3] Tum ad saxum vênit[3] et Andromedam lîberâvit[3] et eam ad Cêpheum dûxit.[3] Is, nûper miser, nunc laetus, ita dîxit[3]: "Tuô auxiliô, mî amîce, câra filia mea est lîbera; tua est Andromeda." Diû Perseus cum Andromedâ ibi habitâbat[3] et magnopere â tôtô populô amâbâtur.[3]

[Footnote 3: See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage.]

[Footnote 4: The verb pugnâtur means, literally, *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought*, or *the contest rages*. The verb pugnô in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by *it*, is called impersonal.]

LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

«201.» The fourth and last of the principal parts (§183) is the «perfect passive participle». _From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects._

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

CONJ. PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC. PERF. PASS. PART. I. amô amâ'-re amâ'v-î amâ't-us
This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation. II. mo'neô monê'-re mo'nu-î mo'nit-us III. regô
re'ge-re rêx-î rêct-us ca'piô ca'pe-re cêp-î capt-us IV. au'diô audî'-re audî'v-î audî't-us

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping «-us» from the perfect passive participle.

«202.» In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle; as, *I have been loved*, *I had been loved*, *I shall have been loved*._

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of «sum» as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

Perfect passive, «amâ'tus sum», *I have been or was loved* Pluperfect passive, «amâ'tus eram», *I had been loved* Future perfect passive, «amâ'tus erô», *I shall have been loved*

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of «moneô», «regô», «capiô», and «audiô», and give the English meanings.

«203.» «Nature of the Participle.» A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

«204.» The perfect passive participle is declined like «bonus, bona, bonum», and in the compound tenses (§202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

EXAMPLES IN SINGULAR «Vir laudatus est», *the man was praised, or has been praised* «Puella laudata est», *the girl was praised, or has been praised* «Consilium laudatum est», *the plan was praised, or has been praised*

EXAMPLES IN PLURAL «Viri laudati sunt», *the men were praised, or have been praised* «Puellae laudatae sunt», *the girls were praised, or have been praised* «Consilia laudata sunt», *the plans were praised, or have been praised*

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of «amô», «moneô», «regô», «capiô», and «audiô» (§§488-492).

«205.» «The perfect passive infinitive» is formed by adding «esse», the present infinitive of «sum», to the perfect passive participle; as, amâ't-us (-a, -um) «esse», *to have been loved*; mo'nit-us (-a, -um) «esse», *to have been advised*.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of «regô», «capiô», «audiô», and give the English meanings.

«206.» The future active infinitive is formed by adding «esse», the present infinitive of «sum», to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding «-ûrus, -a, -um» to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of «amô» is amat-û'rus (-a, -um) «esse», *to be about to love*.

a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:

Present, amâre (present stem), *to love* Perfect, amâvisse (perfect stem), *to have loved* Future, amâtûrus esse (participial stem), *to be about to love*

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of «laudô», «moneô», «regô», «capiô», «audiô», with the English meanings.

«207.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Fâbula Andromedae nârâtâ est. 2. Multae fâbulae â magistrô nârâtae sunt. 3. Ager ab agricolâ validô arâtus erat. 4. Agrî ab agricolîs validîs arâtî erant. 5. Aurum â servô perfidô ad domicilium suum portâtum erit. 6. Nostra arma â lêgâtô laudâta sunt. Quis vestra arma laudâvit? 7. Ab ancillâ tuâ ad cênâ vocâtae sumus. 8. Andromeda mônstrô nôn data est, quia mônstrum â Perseô necâtum erat.

II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5. The towns had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

LESSON XXXVI

REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS · PREPOSITIONS YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS

[Special Vocabulary]

«dexter, dextra, dextrum», *right* (dextrous) «sinister, sinistra, sinistrum», *left* «frustrâ», adv., *in vain* (frustrate)

«gerô, gerere, gessî, gestus», *bear, carry on; wear*; «bellum gerere», *to wage war* «occupô, occupâre, occupâvî, occupâtus», *seize, take possession of* (occupy) «postulô, postulâre, postulâvî, postulâtus», *demand* (ex-postulate) «recûsô, recûsâre, recûsâvî, recûsâtus», *refuse* «stô, stâre, stetî, status», *stand* «temptô, temptâre, temptâvî, temptâtus», *try, tempt, test; attempt* «teneô, tenêre, tenuî, ----», *keep, hold* (tenacious)

The word «ubi», which we have used so much in the sense of *where* in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. «ubi» = *when*, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as, «Ubi mônstrum audîvêrunt, fûgêrunt», *_when they heard the monster, they fled_*
2. «ubi» = *where*, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as, «Videô oppidum ubi Galba habitat», *_I see the town where Galba lives_*

«ubi» is called a *relative conjunction* because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. *When* in the first sentence is equivalent to *at the time* «*at which*»; and in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place* «*in which*».

«208.» The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in «-ûrus», which appears in the principal parts instead.

IRREGULAR VERBS

«sum» «esse» «fuî» «futûrus» *be* «absum» «abesse» «âfuî» «âfutûrus» *be away* «dô»[1] «dare» «dedî» «datus» *give*

[Footnote 1: «dô» is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short «a» in the present and participial stems.]

CONJUGATION I

«portô» «portâre» «portâvî» «portâtus» *carry*

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

CONJUGATION II

«contineô» «continêre» «continuî» «contentus» *hold in, keep* «dêleô» «dêlêre» «dêlêvî» «dêlêtus» *destroy* «doceô» «docêre» «docuî» «doctus» *teach* «egeô» «egêre» «eguî» ---- *lack* «faveô» «favêre» «fâvî» «fautûrus» *favor* «iubeô» «iubêre» «iussî» «iussus» *order* «moveô» «movêre» «môvî» «môtus» *move* «noceô» «nocêre» «nocuî» «nocitûrus» *injure* «pâreô» «pârêre» «pâruî» ---- *obey* «persuadeô» «persuâdêre» «persuâsî» «persuâsus» *persuade (from)* «prohibeô» «prohibêre» «prohibuî» «prohibitus» *restrain, keep* «respondeô» «respondêre» «respondî» «respônsus» *reply* «sedeô» «sedêre» «sêdî» «-sessus» *sit* «studeô» «studêre» «studuî» ---- *be eager* «videô» «vidêre» «vîdî» «vîsus» *see*

CONJUGATION III

«agô» «agere» «êgî» «âctus» *drive* «crêdô» «crêdere» «crêdidî» «crêditus» *believe* «dîcô» «dîcere» «dîxî» «dictus» *say* «discêdô» «discêdere» «discessî» «discessus» *depart* «dûcô» «dûcere» «dûxî» «ductus» *lead* «faciô»[2] «facere» «fêcî» «factus» *make* «fugiô» «fugere» «fûgî» «fugitûrus» *flee* «iaciô» «iacere» «iêcî» «iactus» *hurl* «interficiô» «interficere» «interfêcî» «interfectus» *kill* «mittô» «mittere» «mîsî» «missus» *send* «rapiô» «rapere» «rapuî» «raptus» *seize* «resistô» «resistere» «restitî» ---- *resist*

CONJUGATION IV

«mûniô» «mûnîre» «mûnîvî» «mûnîtus» *fortify* «reperiô» «reperîre» «rep'perî» «repertus» *find* «veniô» «venîre» «vênî» «ventus» *come*

[Footnote 2: «faciô» has an irregular passive which will be presented later.]

«209.» «Prepositions.» 1. We learned in §§52, 53 that only the *accusative* and the *ablative* are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

«â» or «ab», *from, by* «cum», *with* «dê», *down from, concerning* «ê» or «ex», *out from, out of* «prô», *before, in front of; for, in behalf of* «sine», *without*

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the *accusative* (§52). Of these we have had the following:

«ad», *to*; «apud», *among*; «per», *through*

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition «in» when meaning *in* or *on* governs the *ablative*; when meaning *to, into, against* (relations foreign to the ablative) «in» governs the *accusative*.

«210.» «Yes-or-No Questions.» Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like *who, why, when, etc.*, but expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, may take one of three forms:

1. *Is he coming?* (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.) 2. *Is he not coming?* (Expecting the answer *yes*.) 3. *He isn't coming, is he?* (Expecting the answer *no*.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. «Venitne?» *is he coming?* 2. «Nônne venit?» *is he not coming?* 3. «Num venit?» *he isn't coming, is he?*

a. «-ne», the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.

b. We learned in §56.b that *yes-or-no* questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, «ita», «vêrô», «certê», etc. (*so, truly, certainly, etc.*) may be used for *yes*, and «nôn», «minimê», etc. for *no* if the denial is emphatic, as, *by no means, not at all*.

«211.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

I. 1. Nônne habêbat Cornêlia ôrnâmenta aurî? Habêbat. 2. Num Sextus lêgâtus scûtum in dextrô bracchiô gerêbat? Nôn in dextrô, sed sinistrô in bracchiô Sextus scûtum gerêbat. 3. Frûstrâ bella multa ab Gallîs gesta

erant. 4. Ubi oppidum â perfidô Sextô occupâtum est, oppidânî miserî gladiô interfectî sunt. 5. Id oppidum erat plênium frûmentî. 6. Nônne Sextus ab oppidânîs frûmentum postulâvit? Vêrô, sed îî recûsâvêrunt frûmentum dare. 7. Cûr oppidum ab Sextô dêlêtum est? Quia frûmentum recûsâtum est. 8. Ea victôria nôn dubia erat. 9. Oppidânî erant dêfessî et armîs egêbant. 10. Num fugam temptâvêrunt? Minimê.

II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornaments of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She didn't have the lady's gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

* * * * *

«Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII-XXXVI, §§513-516»

* * * * *

LESSON XXXVII

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM* · THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

[Special Vocabulary]

«neque» or «nec», conj., *neither, nor, and ... not*; «neque ... neque», *neither ... nor* «castellum, -î», n., *redoubt, fort* (castle) «cotîdiê», adv., *daily* cessô, cessâre, cessâvî, cessâtus, *cease*, with the infin.

«incipiô, incipere, incêpî, inceptus», *begin* (incipient), with the infin. «oppugnô, oppugnâre, oppugnâvî, oppugnâtus», *storm, assail* «petô, petere, petivi» or «petîi, petîtus», *aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek, ask* (petition) «pônô, pônere, posuî, positus», *place, put* (position); «castra pônere», *to pitch camp* «possum, posse, potuî, ---», *be able, can* (potent), with the infin. «vetô, vetâre, vetuî, vetitus», *forbid* (veto), with the infin.; opposite of «iubeô», *command* «vincô, vincere, vîcî, victus», *conquer* (in-vincible) «vîvô, vîvere, vîxî, ---», *live, be alive* (re-vive)

«212.» Learn the principal parts of «possum», *I am able, I can*, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. §495.)

a. «Possum», *I can*, is a compound of «potis», *able*, and «sum», *I am*.

«213.» «The Infinitive with Subject Accusative.» The *infinitive* (cf. §173) is a *verbal noun*. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.

1. In English certain verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee*. Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, «Is virôs fugere iussit», *he commanded the men to flee*.

«214.» RULE. «Subject of the Infinitive.» *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

«215.» «The Complementary Infinitive.» In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its

meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls. This is called the complementary_ infinitive, as the predicate is not complete without the added infinitive.*

Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are «possum», *I am able, I can*; «properô», «mâtûrô», *I hasten*; «temptô», *I attempt*; as

«Rômânî Gallôs superâre possunt», *the Romans are able to (or can) conquer the Gauls* «Bellum gerere mâtûrant», *they hasten to wage war*

a. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

«Malî puerî esse bonî nôn possunt», *bad boys are not able to (or cannot) be good.*

Observe that «bonî» agrees with «puerî».

«216.» «The Infinitive used as a Noun.» In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer (= conquering) is pleasing*; *To see (= seeing) is to believe (= believing)*. The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with «est», as

«Superâre est grâtum», *to conquer is pleasing* «Vidêre est crêdere», *to see is to believe*

a. In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

«Galbam superâre inimîcôs est grâtum multîs», *for Galba to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many*

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence «superâre est grâtum», the predicate adjective «grâtum» is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with «superâre» the subject.

«217.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Magister lûdî lîberôs cum dîligentiâ labôrâre iussit. 2. Egêre cibô et vinô est virîs molestum. 3. Virî armâtî vetuêrunt Gallôs castra ibi pônere. 4. Estne lêgâtus in castellô an in mûrô? Is est prô portâ. 5. Ubi nostrî[1] fugere incêpêrunt, lêgâtus ab vestrîs[1] captus est. 6. Gallî castellum ibi oppugnâverant ubi praesidium erat înfîrmum. 7. Aliî pugnâre temptâbant, aliî portâs petêbant. 8. Fêminae prô domiciliîs sedêbant neque resistere validîs Gallîs poterant. 9. Bellum est saevum, nec înfîrmîs nec miserîs favet. 10. Sed virî arma postulâbant et studêbant Gallôs dê mûrîs agere. 11. Id castellum ab Gallîs occupârî Rômânîs nôn grâtum erit. 12. Gallî ubi â Rômânîs victî sunt, esse lîberî[2] cessâvêrunt. 13. Diû sine aquâ vîvere nôn potestis.

II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against[3] the walls. 5. But they were not able to (could not) take the town.

[Footnote 1: Supply *men*. «nostri», «vestrî», and «suî» are often used as nouns in this way.]

[Footnote 2: Not *children*. The Romans used «lîberî» either as an adjective, meaning *free*, or as a noun, meaning *the free*, thereby signifying their *free-born children*. The word was never applied to children of slaves.]

[Footnote 3: «in» with the accusative.]

«218.» THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA

Sabîni òlim cum Rômânîs bellum gerêbant et multâs victôriâs reportâverant. Iam agrôs proximôs mûris vâstâbant, iam oppidô adpropinquâbant. Rômânî autem in Capitôlium fûgerant et longê periculô aberant. Mûris validîs et saxîs altîs crêdêbant. Frûstrâ Sabîni têla iaciêbant, frûstrâ portâs dûrâs petêbant; castellum occupâre nôn poterant. Deinde novum cònsilium cêpêrunt.[4]

Tarpêia erat puella Rômâna pulchra et superba. Cotîdiê aquam còpiîs Rômânîs in Capitôlium portâbat. Eî[5] nôn nocêbant Sabîni, quod ea sine armîs erat neque Sabîni bellum cum fêminîs lîberîsque gerêbant. Tarpêia autem maximê amâbat òrnâmenta aurî. Cotîdiê Sabînôrum òrnâmenta vidêbat et mox ea dêsîderâre incipiêbat. Eî ûnus ex[6] Sabînîs dîxit, "Dûc còpiâs Sabînâs intrâ portâs, Tarpêia, et maxima erunt praemia tua."

[Footnote 4: «cònsilium capere», *to make a plan*. Why is the *perfect* tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph.]

[Footnote 5: Dative with «nocêbant». (Cf. §154.)]

[Footnote 6: «ex», *out of*, i.e. *from the number of*; best translated *of*.]

[Illustration: TARPEIA PUELLA PERFIDA]

LESSON XXXVIII

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

«219.» Sentences are *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

a. A *simple sentence* is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *The Romans approached the town.*

b. A *compound sentence* is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: *The Romans approached the town | and | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

c. A *complex sentence* is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements: *When the Romans approached the town | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus *the enemy fled* is independent, and *when the Romans approached the town* is dependent or subordinate.

d. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called *clauses*. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the *main clause* and the dependent statement the *subordinate clause*.

«220.» Examine the complex sentence

The Romans killed the men who were taken

Here are two clauses:

a. The main clause, *The Romans killed the men*

b. The subordinate clause, *who were taken*

The word *who* is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun *men*. It also connects the subordinate clause *who were taken* with the noun *men*. Hence the clause is an *adjective clause*. A pronoun that connects an *adjective clause* with a substantive is called a *relative pronoun*, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its *antecedent*. The relative pronouns in English are *who, whose, whom, which, what, that*.

«221.» The relative pronoun in Latin is «quî», «quae», «quod», and it is declined as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* «quî» «quae» «quod» «quî»
«quae» «quae» *Gen.* «cuius» «cuius» «cuius» «quôrum» «quârum» «quôrum» *Dat.* «cui» «cui» «cui»
«quibus» «quibus» «quibus» *Acc.* «quem» «quam» «quod» «quôs» «quâs» «quae» *Abl.* «quô» «quâ» «quô»
«quibus» «quibus» «quibus»

1. Review the declension of «is», §114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms «quî», «quae», and «quibus» are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive «cuius» and the dative «cui» are pronounced *c[oo]i'y[oo]s* (two syllables) and *c[oo]i* (one syllable).

«222.» «The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows:»[1]

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* *who, that which, what, that* *Gen. of whom, whose of which, of what, whose*
Dat. to or for whom to or for which, to or for what *Acc. whom, that which, what, that* *Abl. from, etc., whom*
from, etc., which or what

[Footnote 1: This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.]

a. We see from the table above that «quî», when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of *who* or by *that*; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by *which, what, or that*.

«223.» Note the following sentences:

The Romans killed the men who were taken *The Romans killed the woman who was taken* «Rômânî
interfêcêrunt virôs quî captî sunt» «Rômânî interfêcêrunt fêminam quae capta est»

In the first sentence *who* («quî») refers to the antecedent *men* («virôs»), and is *masculine plural*. In the second, *who* («quae») refers to *woman* («fêminam»), and *feminine singular*. From this we learn that the relative must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. «Virôs» and «fêminam» are accusatives, and «quî» and «quae» are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

«224.» RULE. «Agreement of the Relative.» *A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.*

«225.» «Interrogative Pronouns.» An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are *who? which? what?* In Latin they are «quis?» «quid?» (pronoun) and «quî?» «quae?» «quod?» (adjective).

«226.» Examine the sentences

a. *Who is the man?* «Quis est vir?» b. *What man is leading them?* «Quî vir eôs ducit?»

In *a*, *who* is an interrogative *pronoun*. In *b*, *what* is an interrogative *adjective*. Observe that in Latin «quis», «quid» is the *pronoun* and «quî», «quae», «quod» is the *adjective*.

«227.» 1. The interrogative adjective «quî», «quae», «quod» is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See §221.)

2. The interrogative pronoun «quis», «quid» is declined like «quî», «quae», «quod» in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* «quis», *who?* «quid», *what? which?* *Gen.* «cuius», *whose?* «cuius», *whose?* *Dat.* «cui», *to or for whom?* «cui», *to or for what or which?* *Acc.* «quem», *whom?* «quid», *what? which?* *Abl.* «quô», *from, etc., whom?* «quô», *from, etc., which or what?*

NOTE. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting *quis* and *quid*.

«228.» EXERCISES

I. 1. *Quis est aeger? Servus quem amô est aeger.* 2. *Cuius scûtum habês? Scûtum habeô quod lêgâtus ad castellum mîsit.* 3. *Cui lêgâtus suum scûtum dabit? Fîliô meô scûtum dabit.* 4. *Ubi Germânî antîquî vîvêbant? In terrâ quae est proxima Rhênô Germânî vîvêbant.* 5. *Quibuscum[1] Germânî bellum gerêbant? Cum Rômânîs, qui eôs superâre studêbant, Germânî bellum gerêbant.* 6. *Quî virî castra pônunt? Î sunt virî quôrum armîs Germânî victî sunt.* 7. *Quibus tâlîs côpiae nostrae eguêrunt? Gladiîs et telîs nostrae côpiae eguêrunt.* 8. *Â quibus porta sinistra tenêbâtur? Â sociîs porta sinistra tenêbâtur.* 9. *Quae prôvinciae â Rômânîs occupâtae sunt? Multae prôvinciae â Rômânîs occupâtae sunt.* 10. *Quibus virîs deî favêbunt? Bonîs virîs deî favêbunt.*

[Footnote 1: «cum» is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them.]

[Illustration: GERMANI ANTIQUI]

II. 1. *What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won.* 3. *The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle.* 4. *Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent.* 5. *They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.*

«229.» THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (*Concluded*)[2]

Tarpêia, commôta ôrnamētîs Sabînôrum pulchrîs, diû resistere nôn potuit et respondit: "Date mihi[3] ôrnâmenta quae in sinistrîs bracchîs geritis, et celeriter côpiâs vestrâs in Capitôlium dûcam." Nec Sabînî recûsâvêrunt, sed per dûrâs magnâsque castellî portâs properâvêrunt quô[1] Tarpêia dûxit et mox intrâ validôs et altôs mûrôs stâbant. Tum sine morâ in[2] Tarpêiam scûta graviter iêcêrunt; nam scûta quoque in sinistrîs bracchiîs gerêbant. Ita perfida puella Tarpêia interfecta est; ita Sabînî Capitôlium occupâvêrunt.

[Footnote 2: Explain the use of the tenses in this selection.]

[Footnote 3: *to me.*]

[Footnote 1: *quô = whither, to the place where.* Here «quo» is the relative adverb. We have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, *whither? to what place?*]

[Footnote 2: *upon.*]

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS

[Special Vocabulary]

«barbarus, -a, -um», *strange, foreign, barbarous*. As a noun, «barbarî, -ôrum», m., plur., *savages, barbarians* «dux, ducis», m., *leader (duke)*. Cf. the verb «dûcô» «eques, equitis», m., *horseman, cavalryman* (equestrian) «iûdex, iûdicis, m., *judge* «lapis, lapidis», m., *stone* (lapidary) «mîles, mîlitis», m., *soldier* (militia) «pedes, peditis», m., *foot soldier* (pedestrian) «pês, pedis», [A] m., *foot* (pedal) «prînceps, prîncipis», m., *chief* (principal) «rêx, rêgis», m., *king* (regal) «summus, -a, -um», *highest, greatest* (summit) «virtûs, virtûtis», f., *manliness, courage* (virtue)

[Footnote A: Observe that «e» is *long* in the nom. sing, and *short* in the other cases.]

«230.» «Bases and Stems.» In learning the first and second declensions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we called the «base». If to the base we add «-â» in the first declension, and «-o» in the second, we get what is called the «stem». Thus «porta» has the base «port-» and the stem «portâ-»; «servus» has the base «serv-» and the stem «servo-».

These stem vowels, «-â-» and «-o-», play so important a part in the formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named from them respectively the *Â-* and *O-*Declensions.

«231.» «Nouns of the Third Declension.» The third declension is called the Consonant or *I-*Declension, and its nouns are classified according to the way the *stem* ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant, the word is said to have a *consonant stem*; if the stem ends in «-i-», the word is said to have an «*i-*»*stem*. _In consonant stems the stem is the same as the base. In «*i-*»stems the stem is formed by adding «-i-» to the base._ The presence of the «*i*» makes a difference in certain of the cases, so the distinction is a very important one.

«232.» Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

I. Stems that add «-s» to the base to form the nominative singular. II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

CLASS I

«233.» Stems that add «-s» to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

«prînceps», «mîles», m., «lapis», m., *chief soldier* m., *stone* BASES OR STEMS «prîncip-» «mîlit-» «lapid-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS M. AND F. *Nom.* prînceps mîles lapis -s *Gen.* prîncipis mîlitis lapidis -is *Dat.* prîncipî mîlitî lapidî -î *Acc.* prîncipem mîlitem lapidem -em *Abl.* prîncipe mîlite lapide -e

PLURAL *Nom.* prîncipês mîlitês lapidês -ês *Gen.* prîncipum mîlitum lapidum -um *Dat.* prîncipibus mîlitibus lapidibus -ibus *Acc.* prîncipês mîlitês lapidês -ês *Abl.* prîncipibus mîlitibus lapidibus -ibus

«rêx», «iûdex», «virtûs», f., m., *king* m. *judge* *manliness* BASES OR STEMS «rêg-» «iûdic-» «virtût-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS M. AND F. *Nom.* rêx iûdex virtûs -s *Gen.* rêgis iûdicis virtûtis -is *Dat.* rêgî

iūdicī virtū'tī -ī *Acc.* rēgem iūdicem virtū'tem -em *Abl.* rēge iūdice virtū'te -e

PLURAL *Nom.* rēgēs iūdicēs virtū'tēs -ēs *Gen.* rēgum iūdicum virtū'tum -um *Dat.* rēgibus iūdicibus virtū'tibus -ibus *Acc.* rēgēs iūdicēs virtū'tēs -ēs *Abl.* rēgibus iūdicibus virtū'tibus -ibus

1. The base or stem is found by dropping «-is» in the genitive singular.

2. Most nouns of two syllables, like «prīnceps» («prīncip-»), «mīles» («mīlit-»), «iūdex» («iūdic-»), have «i» in the base, but «e» in the nominative.

a. «lapis» is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:

a. A final «-t» or «-d» is dropped before «-s»; thus «mīles» for «mīlets», «lapis» for «lapids», «virtūs» for «virtūts».

b. A final «-c» or «-g» unites with «-s» and forms «-x»; thus «iūdec» + «s» = «iūdex», «rēg» + «s» = «rēx».

4. Review §74 and apply the rules to this declension.

In like manner decline «dux, ducis», m., *leader*; «eques, equitis», m., *horseman*; «pedes, peditis», m., *foot soldier*; «pēs, pedis», m., *foot*.

«234.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Neque peditēs neque equitēs occupāre castellum Rômānum poterant. 2. Summā virtūte mūrōs altōs cotīdiē oppugnābant. 3. Pedes mīlitum lapidibus quī dē mūrō iaciēbantur saepe vulnerābantur. 4. Quod novum cōsiliū dux cēpit? 5. Is perfidam puellam pulchrīs ōrnāmentīs temptāvit. 6. Quid puella fēcit? 7. Puella commōta aurō mīlitēs per portās dūxit. 8. Tamen praemia quae summō studiō petīverat nōn reportāvit. 9. Apud Rômānōs antīquōs Tarpēia nōn est laudāta.

II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That («illud») ship is the *Victory*. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.

[Illustration: NAVIGIUM]

LESSON XL

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

«Caesar, -aris», m., *Caesar* «captīvus, -ī», m., *captive, prisoner* «cōsul, -is», m., *consul* «frāter, frātris», m., *brother* (fraternity) «homō, hominis», m., *man, human being* «impedīmentum, -ī», n., *hindrance* (impediment); plur. «impedīmenta, -ōrum», *baggage* «imperātor, imperātōris», m., *commander in chief, general* (emperor) «legiō, legiōnis», f., *legion* «māter, mātris», f., *mother* (maternal) «ōrdō, ōrdinis», m., *row, rank* (order) «pater, patris», m., *father* (paternal) «salūs, salūtis», f., *safety* (salutary) «soror, sorōris», f., *sister*

(sorority)

CLASS II

«235.» Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add «-s.» They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

«236.» PARADIGMS

MASCULINES AND FEMININES

«cônsul», «legiô», f., «ôrdô», «pater», m., m., *consul legion m., row father* BASES OR STEMS «cônsul-»
«legiôn-» «ôrdin-» «patr-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS M. AND F. *Nom.* cônsul legiô ôrdô pater -- *Gen.* cônsulis legiônis ôrdinis patris -is *Dat.* cônsulî legiônî ôrdinî patrî -î *Acc.* cônsulem legiônem ôrdinem patrem -em *Abl.* cônsule legiône ôrdine patre -e

PLURAL *Nom.* cônsulês legiônês ôrdinês patrês -ês *Gen.* cônsulum legiônium ôrdinum patrum -um *Dat.* cônsulibus legiônibus ôrdinibus patribus -ibus *Acc.* cônsulês legiônês ôrdinês patrês -ês *Abl.* cônsulibus legiônibus ôrdinibus patribus -ibus

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.
2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in -in- and -ôn- drop -n- and end in -ô in the nominative, as legiô (base or stem legiôn-), ôrdô (base or stem ôrdin-).
3. Bases or stems in -tr- have -ter in the nominative, as pater (base or stem patr-).
4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. *Always learn this with the nominative.*

«237.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Audísne tubâs, Mârce? Nôn sôlum tubâs audiô sed etiam ôrdinês militum et carrôs impedîmentôrum plênôs vidêre possum. 2. Quâs legiônês vidêmus? Eae legiônês nûper ex Galliâ vênêrunt. 3. Quid ibi fêcêrunt? Studêbantne pugnâre an sine virtûte erant? 4. Multa proelia fêcêrunt[1] et magnâs victôriâs et multôs captîvôs reportâvêrunt. 5. Quis est imperâtor eârum legiônium? Caesar, summus Rômânôrum imperâtor. 6. Quis est eques quî pulchram corônâ gerit? Is eques est frâter meus. Eî corôna â cônsule data est quia summâ virtûte pugnâverat et â barbarîs patriam servâverat.

II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now («nûper»). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained[2] from wrong[3]. 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Cæsar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

[Footnote 1: «proelium facere» = *to fight a battle.*]

[Footnote 2: «contineô.» Cf. §180.]

[Footnote 3: Abl. iniûriâ.]

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (*Concluded*)

[Special Vocabulary]

«calamitâs, calamitâtis», f., *loss, disaster, defeat* (calamity) «caput, capitis», n., *head* (capital) «flûmen, flûminis», n., *river* (flume) «labor, labôris», m., *labor, toil* «opus, operis», n., *work, task* «ôrâtor, ôrâtôris», m., *orator* «rîpa, -ae», f., *bank* (of a stream) «tempus, temporis», n., *time* (temporal) «terror, terrôris», m., *terror, fear* «victor, victôris», m., *victor*

«accipiô, accipere, accêpî, acceptus», *receive, accept* «cônfirâmô, cômfirmâre, cômfirmâvî, cômfirmâtus», *_strengthen, establish, encourage_* (confirm)

«238.» Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

«flûmen», «tempus», «opus», «caput», n., *river* n., *time* n., *work* n., *head* BASES OR STEMS «flûmin-»
«tempor-» «oper-» «capit-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* flûmen tempus opus caput -- *Gen.* flûminis temporis operis capitis -is
Dat. flûminî temperî operî capitî -î *Acc.* flûmen tempus opus caput -- *Abl.* flûmine tempore opere capite -e

PLURAL *Nom.* flûmina tempora opera capita -a *Gen.* flûminum temporum operum capitum -um *Dat.* flûminibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus *Acc.* flûmina tempora opera capita -a *Abl.* flûminibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus

1. Review §74 and apply the rules to this declension.

2. Bases or stems in -in- have -e- instead of -i- in the nominative, as flûmen, base or stem flûmin-.

3. Most bases or stems in -er- and -or- have -us in the nominative, as opus, base or stem oper-; tempus, base or stem tempor-.

«239.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1. Barbarî ubi Rômam cêpêrunt, maxima rêgum opera dêlêvêrunt. 2. Rômânî multâs calamitâtês â barbarîs accêpêrunt. 3. Ubi erat summus terror apud oppidânôs, animî dubiû eôrûm ab ôrâtôre clarô cômfirmâti sunt. 4. Rôma est in rîpîs flûminis magnî. 5. Ubi Caesar imperâtor mîlitês suôs arma capere iussit, îî â proeliô continêrî nôn potuêrunt. 6. Ubi proelium factum est, imperâtor reperîrî nôn potuit. 7. Imperâtor sagittâ in capite vulnerâtus erat et stâre nôn poterat. 8. Eum magnô labôre pedes ex proeliô portâvit. 9. Is bracchiîs suîs imperâtôrem tenuit et eum ex perîculîs summîs servâvit. 10. Virtûte suâ bonus mîles ab imperâtôre corônâ accêpit.

II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, "By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster." 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.

[Illustration: Corona]

LESSON XLII

REVIEW LESSON

«240.» Review the paradigms in §§233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

TERROR CIMBRICUS[1]

Ôlim Cimbrî et Teutonês, populî Germâniae, cum fêminîs lîberîsque Italiae adpropinquâverant et côpiâs Rômânâs maximô proeliô vîcerant. Ubi fuga legiônnum nûntiâta est, summus erat terror tôtius Rômae, et Rômânî, graviter commôtî, sacra crêbra deîs faciêbant et salûtem petêbant.

Tum Mânlius ôrâtor animôs populî ita cônfirmâvit:--"Magnum calamitâtem accêpimus. Oppida nostra â Cimbrîs Teutonibusque capiuntur, agricolae interficiuntur, agrî vâstantur, côpiae barbarôrûm Rômae adpropinquant. Itaque, nisi novîs animîs proelium novum faciêmus et Germânôs ex patriâ nostrâ sine morâ agêmus, erit nûlla salûs fêminîs nostrîs lîberîsque. Servâte lîberôs! Servâte patriam! Anteâ superâtî sumus quia imperâtôrês nostrî fuêrunt ïnfîrmî. Nunc Marius, clârus imperâtôr, quî iam multâs aliâs victôriâs reportâvit, legiônês dúcet et animôs nostrôs terrôre Cimbricô lîberâre mâtûrâbit."

Marius tum in Âfricâ bellum gerêbat. Sine morâ ex Âfricâ in Italiam vocâtus est. Côpiâs novâs nôn sôlum tôti Italiae sed etiam prôvinciâs sociôrûm imperâvit.[2] Disciplînâ autem dÛrâ labôribusque perpetuîs mîlitês exercuit. Tum cum peditibus equitibusque, quî iam proeliô studêbant, ad Germânôrûm castra celeriter properâvit. Diû et âcriter pugnâtum est.[3] Dênique barbarî fÛgêrunt et multî in fugâ ab equitibus sunt interfectî. Marius pater patriae vocâtus est.

[Footnote 1: About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country. First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul. Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri. A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the *terror Cimbricus* continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter.]

[Footnote 2: *He made a levy* (of troops) *upon*, «imperâvit» with the acc. and the dat.]

[Footnote 3: Cf. §200. II. 2.]

LESSON XLIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION · I-STEMS

[Special Vocabulary]

«animal, animâlis (-ium[A])», n., *animal* «avis, avis (-ium)», f., *bird* (aviation) «caedês, caedis (-ium)», f., *slaughter* *calcar*, *calcâris* (-ium), n., *spur* «cîvis, cîvis (-ium)», m. and f., *citizen* (civic) «cliêns, clientis (-ium)», m., *retainer*, *dependent* (client) «fînis, fînis (-ium)», m., *end*, *limit* (final); plur., *country*, *territory* «hostis, hostis (-ium)», m. and f., *enemy* in war (hostile). Distinguish from «inimîcus», which means a *personal* enemy «ignîs, ignis (-ium)», m., *fire* (ignite) «însigne, însignis (-ium)», n. *decoration*, *badge* (ensign) «mare, maris (-ium[B])», n., *sea* (marine) «nâvis, nâvis (-ium)», f., *ship* (naval); «nâvis longa», *man-of-war* «turris, turris (-ium)», f., *tower* (turret) «urbs, urbis (-ium)», f., *city* (suburb). An «urbs» is larger

than an «oppidum».

[Footnote A: The genitive plural ending «-ium» is written to mark the i-stems.]

[Footnote B: The genitive plural of «mare» is not in use.]

«241.» To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must know whether or not it is an «i»-stem. Nouns with «i»-stems are

1. Masculines and feminines:

a. Nouns in «-ês» and «-îs» with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. Thus «caedês, caedis», is an «i»-stem, but «mîles, mîlitis», is a consonant stem.

b. Nouns in «-ns» and «-rs».

c. Nouns of one syllable in «-s» or «-x» preceded by a consonant.

2. Neuters in «-e», «-al», and «-ar».

«242.» The declension of «i»-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems. Note the following differences:

a. Masculines and feminities have «-ium» in the genitive plural and «-îs» or «-ês» in the accusative plural.

b. Neuters have «-î» in the ablative singular, and an «-i-» in every form of the plural.

«243.» «Masculine and Feminine I-Stems.» Masculine and feminine «i»-stems are declined as follows:

«caedês», f., «hostis», «urbs», f., «cliêns», m., *slaughter m., enemy city retainer* STEMS «caedi-» «hosti-» «urbi-» «clienti-» BASES «caed-» «host-» «urb-» «client-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS M. AND F. *Nom.* caedês hostis urbs cliêns[1] -s, -is, or -ês *Gen.* caedis hostis urbis clientis -is *Dat.* caedî hostî urbî clientî -î *Acc.* caedem hostem urbem clientem -em (-im) *Abl.* caede hoste urbe cliente -e (-î)

PLURAL *Nom.* caedês hostês urbês clientês -ês *Gen.* caedium hostium urbium clientium -ium *Dat.* caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus *Acc.* caedîs, -ês hostîs, -ês urbîs, -ês clientîs, -ês -îs, -ês *Abl.* caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus

[Footnote 1: Observe that the vowel before «-ns» is long, but that it is shortened before «-nt». Cf. §12.2, 3.]

1. «avis», «cîvis», «fînis», «ignis», «nâvis» have the ablative singular in «-î» or «-e».

2. «turris» has accusative «turrim» and ablative «turrî» or «turre».

«244.» «Neuter I-Stems.» Neuter «i»-stems are declined as follows:

«însigne», n., «animal», n., «calcar», *decoration animal n., spur* STEMS «însigni-» «animâli-» «calcâri-» BASES «însign-» «animâl-» «calcâr-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* însigne animal calcar -e or -- *Gen.* însignis animâlis calcâris -is *Dat.*

însignî animâlî calcârî -î *Acc.* însigne animal calcar -e *or -- Abl.* însignî animâlî calcârî -î

PLURAL *Nom.* insignia animâlia calcâria -ia *Gen.* insignium animâlium calcârium -ium *Dat.* insignibus animâlibus calcâribus -ibus *Acc.* insignia animâlia calcâria -ia *Abl.* insignibus animâlibus calcâribus -ibus

1. Review §74 and see how it applies to this declension.
2. The final «-i-» of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to «-e».
3. A long vowel is shortened before final «-l» or «-r». (Cf. §12.2.)

«245.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1. Quam urbem videmus? Urbs quam vidētis est Rōma. 2. Cīvēs Rōmānī urbem suam turribus altīs et mūrīs longīs mūniverant. 3. Ventī nāvīs longās prohibēbant fīnibus hostium adpropinquāre. 4. Imperātor a clientibus suis calcāria aurī et alia insignia accēpit. 5. Mīlitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus bella saeva gessērunt et eōs caede magnā superāvērunt. 6. Alia animālia terram, alia mare amant. 7. Nāvēs longae quae auxilium ad imperātōrem portābant ignī ab hostibus dēlētāe sunt. 8. In eō marī avis multās vīdimus quae longē â terrā volāverant. 9. Nōne vīdistis nāvīs longās hostium et ignīs quibus urbs nostra vāstābātur? Certē, sed nec caedem cīvium nec fugam clientium vīdimus. 10. Avēs et alia animālia, ubi ignem vīdērunt, salūtem fugā petere celeriter incēpērunt. 11. Num. iūdex in peditum ōrdinibus stābat? Minimē, iūdex erat apud equitēs et equus eius însigne pulchrum gerēbat.

[Illustration: NAVES LONGAE]

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2. When the general[2] heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.[3]

[Footnote 2: Place first.]

[Footnote 3: Not the accusative. Why?]

LESSON XLIV

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]

«arbor, arboris», f., *tree* (arbor) «collis, collis (-ium)», m., *hill* «dēns, dentis (-ium)», m., *tooth* (dentist) fōns, fontis (-ium), m., *fountain, spring; source* «iter, itineris», n., *march, journey, route* (itinerary) «mēnsis, mēnsis (-ium)», m., *month* «moenia, -ium», n., plur., *walls, fortifications*. Cf. «mūrus» «mōns, montis (-ium)», m., *mountain*; «summus mōns», *top of the mountain* «numquam», adv., *never* «pōns, pontis», m., *bridge* (ponton) «sanguis, sanguinis», m., *blood* (sanguinary) «summus, -a, -um», *highest, greatest* (summit) «trāns», prep, with acc., *across* (transatlantic) «vīs (vīs)», gen. plur. «virium», f. *strength, force, violence* (vim)

«246.» PARADIGMS

[Transcriber's Note: The original text gives «vî-» and «vîr-» as the "Bases" of «vîs», and omits the "Stems" for both words. The forms have been regularized to agree with the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

«vîs», f., *force* «iter», n., *march* STEMS «vî-» and «vîri-» «iter-» and «itiner-» BASES «v-» and «vîr-» «iter-» and «itiner-»

SINGULAR *Nom.* vîs iter *Gen.* vîs (rare) itineris *Dat.* vî (rare) itinerî *Acc.* vim iter *Abl.* vî itinere

PLURAL *Nom.* vîrês itinera *Gen.* vîrium itinerum *Dat.* vîribus itineribus *Acc.* vîrîs, or -ês itinera *Abl.* vîribus itineribus

«247.» There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions.[1] The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

1. «Masculine» are nouns in «-or», «-ôs», «-er», «-es» (gen. «-itis»).

a. «arbor», *tree*, is feminine; and «iter», *march*, is neuter.

2. «Feminine» are nouns in «-ô», «-is», «-x», and in «-s» preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but «ô».

a. Masculine are «collis» (*hill*), «lapis», «mênsis» (*month*), «ôrdô», «pês», and nouns in «-nis» and «-guis»--as «ignis», «sanguis» (*blood*)--and the four monosyllables

«dêns», *a tooth*; «môn», *a mountain* «pôn», *a bridge*; «fôn», *a fountain*

3. «Neuters» are nouns in «-e», «-al», «-ar», «-n», «-ur», «-us», and «caput».

[Footnote 1: Review §60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.]

«248.» Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

«animal» «calamitâs» «flûmen» «lapis» «nâvis» «avis» «caput» «ignis» «legiô» «opus» «caedês» «eques» «însigne» «mare» «salûs» «calcar» «fînis» «labor» «mîles» «urbs»

«249.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. *The First Bridge over the Rhine.* Salûs sociôrum erat semper câra Rômânîs. Ôlim Gallî, amîcî Rômânôrum, multâs iniûriâs ab Germânîs quî trâns flûmen Rhenum vivêbant accêperant. Ubi lêgâtû ab iîs ad Caesarem imperâtorem Rômânium vênêrunt et auxilium postulâvêrunt, Rômânî magnîs itineribus ad hostium fînîs properâvêrunt. Mox ad rîpâs magnî flûminis vênêrunt. Imperâtor studêbat còpiâs suâs trâns fluvium dúcere, sed nûllâ viâ[2] poterat. Nûllâs nâvis habêbat. Alta erat aqua. Imperâtor autem, vir clârus, numquam adversâ fortûnâ commôtus, novum cònsilium cêpit. Iussit suôs[3] in[4] lâtô flûmine facere pontem. Numquam antea pôn in Rhênô vîsus erat. Hostês ubi pontem quem Rômânî fêcerant vîdêrunt, summô terrôre commôtî, sine morâ fugam parâre incêpêrunt.

II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near («ad») a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies' country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7.

When the foot soldiers[5] saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.[2]

[Footnote 2: Abl. of manner.]

[Footnote 3: «suôs», used as a noun, *his men*.]

[Footnote 4: We say *build a bridge over*; the Romans, *_make a bridge on_*.]

[Footnote 5: Place first.]

* * * * *

«Fifth Review, Lessons XXXVII-XLIV, §§517-520»

* * * * *

LESSON XLV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · I-STEMS

[Special Vocabulary]

«âcer, âcris, âcre», *sharp, keen, eager* (acid) «brevis, breve», *short, brief* «difficilis, difficile», *difficult* «facilis, facile», *facile, easy* «fortis, forte», *brave* (fortitude) «gravis, grave», *heavy, severe, serious* (grave) «omnis, omne», *every, all* (omnibus) «pâr», gen. «paris», *equal* (par) «paucî, -ae, -a», *few, only a few* (paucity) «secundus, -a, -um», *second; favorable*, opposite of adversus «signum, -î», n., *signal, sign, standard* «vêlôx», gen. «vêlôcis», *swift* (velocity)

«conlocô, conlocâre, conlocâvî, conlocâtus», *arrange, station, place* (collocation) «dêmônstrô, dêmônstrâre, dêmônstrâvî, dêmônstrâtus», *_point out, explain_* (demonstrate) «mandô, mandâre, mandâvî, mandâtus», *commit, intrust* (mandate)

«250.» Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like «bonus», «aeger», or «líber»), or they are of the third declension.

«251.» Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have «i»-stems, and they are declined almost like nouns with «i»-stems.

«252.» Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, «bonus», m.; «bona», f.; «bonum», n. Such an adjective is called an *adjective of three endings*. Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:

- I. Adjectives of three endings-- a different form in the nominative for each gender.
- II. Adjectives of two endings-- masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.
- III. Adjectives of one ending-- masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

«253.» Adjectives of the third declension in «-er» have three endings; those in «-is» have two endings; the others have one ending.

CLASS I

«254.» Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

«âcer, âcris, âcre», *keen, eager* STEM «âcri-» BASE «âcr-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* âcer âcris âcre âcrês âcrês âcria
Gen. âcris âcris âcris âcrium âcrium âcrium *Dat.* âcrî âcrî âcrî âcribus âcribus âcribus *Acc.* âcrem âcrem âcre
 âcrîs, -ês âcrîs, -ês âcria *Abl.* âcrî âcrî âcrî âcribus âcribus âcribus

CLASS II

«255.» Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

«omnis, omne», *every, all*[1] STEM «omni-» BASE «omn-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* omnis omne omnês
 omnia *Gen.* omnis omnis omnium omnium *Dat.* omnî omnî omnibus omnibus *Acc.* omnem omne omnîs, -ês
 omnia *Abl.* omnî omnî omnibus omnibus

[Footnote 1: «omnis» is usually translated *every* in the singular and *all* in the plural.]

CLASS III

«256.» Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

«pâr», *equal* STEM «pari-» BASE «par-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* pâr pâr parês paria
Gen. paris paris parium parium *Dat.* parî parî paribus paribus *Acc.* parem pâr parîs, -ês paria *Abl.* parî parî
 paribus paribus

1. All «i»-stem adjectives have «-î» in the ablative singular.
2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.
3. Decline «vir âcer», «legiô âcris», «animal âcre», «ager omnis», «scûtum omne», «proelium pâr».

«257.» There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

«258.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. *The Romans invade the Enemy's Country.* Ôlim peditês Rômânî cum equitibus vêlôcibus in hostium urbem iter faciêbant. Ubi nôn longê âfuêrunt, rapuêrunt agricolam, quî eîs viam brevem et facilem dêmonstrâvit. Iam Rômânî moenia alta, turrîs validâs aliaque opera urbis vidêre poterant. In moenibus stâbant multî prîncipês. Prîncipês ubi vîdêrunt Rômânôs, iussêrunt civîs lapidês aliaque têla dê mûrîs iacere. Tum militês fortês continêrî â proeliô nôn poterant et âcer imperâtor signum tubâ darî iussit. Summâ vî omnês mâtûrâvêrunt. Imperâtor Sextô lêgâtô impedîmenta omnia mandâvit. Sextus impedîmenta in summô colle conlocâvit. Grave

et âcre erat proelium, sed hostês nôn parês Rômânîs erant. Aliî interfectî, aliî captî sunt. Apud captîvôs erant mâter sororque rêgis. Paucî Rômânôrum ab hostibus vulnerâtî sunt. Secundum proelium Rômânîs erat grâtum. Fortûna fortibus semper favet.

II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.

[Illustration: AQUILA LEGIONIS]

LESSON XLVI

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]

«adventus, -ûs», m., *approach, arrival* (advent) «ante», prep. with acc., *before* (ante-date) «cornû, -ûs», n., *horn, wing* of an army (cornucopia); «â dextrô cornû», *on the right wing*; «â sinistrô cornû», *on the left wing* «equitâtus, -ûs», m., *cavalry* «exercitus, -ûs», m., *army* «impetus, -ûs», m., *attack* (impetus); «impetum facere in», with acc., *to make an attack on* «lacus, -ûs, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus», m., *lake* «manus, -ûs», f., *hand; band, force* (manual) «portus, -ûs», m., *harbor* (port) «post», prep. with acc., *behind, after* (post-mortem)

«cremô, cremâre, cremâvî, cremâtus», *burn* (cremate) «exerceô, exercêre, exercuî, exercitus», *practice, drill, train* (exercise)

«259.» Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

«260.» Masculine nouns end in «-us», neuters in «-û». The genitive ends in «-ûs».

a. Feminine by exception are «domus», *house*; «manus», *hand*; and a few others.

PARADIGMS

[Transcriber's Note: The "Stems" are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

«adventus», «cornû», m., *arrival* n., *horn* STEMS «adventu-» «cornu-» BASES «advent-» «corn-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS MASC. NEUT. *Nom.* adventus cornû -us -û *Gen.* adventûs cornûs -ûs -ûs
Dat. adventuî (û) cornû -uî (û) -û *Acc.* adventum cornû -um -û *Abl.* adventû cornû -û -û

PLURAL *Nom.* adventûs cornua -ûs -ua *Gen.* adventuum cornuum -uum -uum *Dat.* adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus
Acc. adventûs cornua -ûs -ua *Abl.* adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.
2. «lacus», *lake*, has the ending «-ubus» in the dative and ablative plural; «portus», *harbor*, has either «-ubus» or «-ibus».
3. «cornû» is the only neuter that is in common use.

«261.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris vélôcês hostium equitês âcrem impetum in castra fêcêrunt. 2. Continêre exercitum â proeliô nôn facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiônês ex castrîs dúcî. 4. Prô castrîs cum hostium equitâtû pugnâtum est. 5. Post tempus breve equitâtus trâns flûmen fûgit ubi castra hostium posita erant. 6. Tum victor imperâtor agrôs vâstâvit et vicôs hostium cremâvit. 7. Castra autem nôn oppugnâvit quia mîlitês erant dêfessî et locus difficilis. 8. Hostês nôn cessâvêrunt iacere têla, quae paucîs nocuêrunt. 9. Post adversum proelium principês Gallôrum lêgâtôs ad Caesarem mittere studêbant, sed populô persuâdêre nôn poterant.

II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see it (*fem.*) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Cæsar didn't make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

LESSON XLVII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE · THE DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

[Special Vocabulary]

Athênae, -ârum, f., plur., *Athens* Corinthus, -î, f., *Corinth* «domus, -ûs», locative «domî», f., *house, home* (dome). Cf. «domicilium» «Genâva, -ae», f., *Geneva* Pompêii, -ôrum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in Campania. See map «propter», prep. with acc., *on account of, because of* rûs, rûris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. «rûra», n., *country* (rustic) «tergum, tergî», n., *back*; «â tergô», *behind, in the rear* «vulnus, vulneris», n., *wound* (vulnerable)

«committô, committere, commîsî, commissus», *intrust, commit*; «proelium committere», *join battle* «convocô, convocâre, convocâvî, convocâtus», *call together, summon* (convoke) «timeô, timêre, timuî, ----», *fear; be afraid* (timid) «vertô, vertere, vertî, versus», *turn, change* (convert); «terga vertere», *to turn the backs, hence to retreat*

«262.» We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following:

«Galba ad» (or «in») «oppidum properat» «Galba ab» («dê» or «ex») «oppidô properat» «Galba in oppidô habitat»

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

«263.» RULE. «Accusative of the Place to.» _The «place to which» is expressed by «ad» or «in» with the accusative. This answers the question Whither?_

«264.» RULE. «Ablative of the Place from.» _The «place from which» is expressed by «â» or «ab», «dê», «ê» or «ex», with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence?_ (Cf. Rule, §179.)

«265.» RULE. «Ablative of the Place at or in.» _The «place at or in which» is expressed by the ablative with «in». This answers the question Where?_

a. The ablative denoting the *place where* is called the _locative ablative (cf. «locus», place)_.

«266.» «Exceptions.» Names of towns, small islands,[1] «domus», *home*, «rûs», *country*, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

«Galba Athênâs properat», *Galba hastens to Athens* «Galba Athênîs properat», *Galba hastens from Athens*
 «Galba Athênîs habitat», *Galba lives at (or in) Athens* «Galba domum properat», *Galba hastens home* «Galba rûs properat», *Galba hastens to the country* «Galba domô properat», *Galba hastens from home* «Galba rûre properat», *Galba hastens from the country* «Galba rûrî» (less commonly «rûre») «habitat», *Galba lives in the country*

a. Names of *countries*, like «Germânia», «Italia», etc., do not come under these exceptions. _With them prepositions must not be omitted._

[Footnote 1: Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.]

«267.» «The Locative Case.» We saw above that the place-relation expressed by *at* or *in* is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the *locative case*. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, «domî», *at home*, and a few other words.

«268.» RULE. «Locative and Locative Ablative.» _To express the «place in which» with names of towns and small islands, «if they are singular and of the first or second declension», use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as_,

«Galba Rômae habitat», *Galba lives at Rome* «Galba Corinthî habitat», *Galba lives at Corinth* «Galba domî habitat», *Galba lives at home*

Here «Rômae», «Corinthî», and «domî» are *locatives*, being *singular* and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

«Galba Athênîs habitat», *Galba lives at Athens*, «Galba Pompêiîs habitat», *Galba lives at Pompeii*

«Athênîs» and «Pompêiîs» are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives «Athênæ» and «Pompêiî» are *plural* and there is no plural locative case form.

«269.» The word «domus», *home*, *house*, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (§468).

«270.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Corinthî omnia însignia aurî â ducibus victôribus rapta erant. 2. Caesar Genâvam exercitum magnîs îtineribus dûxit. 3. Quem pontem hostês cremâverant? Pontem in Rhênô hostês cremâverant. 4. Pompêiîs multâs Rômânôrum domôs vidêre poteritis. 5. Rômâ cônsul equô vêlôcî rûs properâvit. 6. Domî cônsulîs hominês multî sedêbant. 7. Imperâtor iusserat lêgâtum Athênâs cum multîs nâvibus longîs nâvigâre. 8. Ante moenia urbis sunt ôrdinês arborum altârum. 9. Propter arborês altâs nec lacum nec portum reperîre potuimus. 10. Proeliîs crêbrîs Caesar legiônês suâs quæ erant in Galliâ exercêbat. 11. Cofîdiê in locô idoneô castra pônêbat et mûniêbat.

II. 1. Cæsar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a

swift horse.[2] 2. He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3. After his arrival Cæsar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4. The enemy hastened to retreat, some because[3] they were afraid, others because[3] of wounds. 5. Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit.[4] 6. Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

[Footnote 2: Latin says "by a swift horse." What construction?]

[Footnote 3: Distinguish between the English conjunction *because* («quia» or «quod») and the preposition *because of* («propter».)]

[Footnote 4: *used to sit*, express by the imperfect.]

[Illustration: DAEDALUS ET ICARUS]

«271.» DAED´ALUS AND IC´ARUS

Crêta est însula antîqua quae aquâ altâ magnî maris pulsâtur. Ibi ôlim Mînôs erat rêx. Ad eum vênit Daedalus quî ex Graeciâ patriâ fugiêbat. Eum Mînôs rêx benignîs verbîs accêpit et eî domicilium in Crêtâ dedit. [5]Quô in locô Daedalus sine cûrâ vîvebat et rêgî multa et clâra opera faciêbat. Post tempus longum autem Daedalus patriam câram dêsîderâre incêpit. Domum properâre studêbat, sed rêgî persuâdêre nôn potuit et mare saevum fugam vetâbat.

[Footnote 5: *And in this place*; «quô» does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a _connecting relative, and is translated by and_ and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.]

LESSON XLVIII

THE FIFTH OR Ê-DECLENSION · THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

[Special Vocabulary]

«aciês, -êi», f., *line of battle* «aestâs, aestâtis», f., *summer* «annus, -î», m., *year (annual)* «diês, diêi», m., *day (diary)* «fidês, fidei», no plur., f., *_faith, trust; promise, word; protection; «in fidem venîre», to come under the protection_* «fluctus, -ûs», m. *wave, billow (fluctuate)* «hiems, hiemis», f., *winter* «hôra, -ae», f., *hour* «lûx, lûcis», f., *light (lucid)*; «prîma lux», *daybreak* «merîdiês», acc. -em, abl. -ê, no plur., m., *midday (meridian)* «nox, noctis (-ium)», f., *night (nocturnal)* «prîmus, -a, -um», *first (prime)* «rês, reî», f., *thing, matter (real)*; «rês gestae», *deeds, exploits (lit. things performed)*; «rês adversae», *adversity*; «rês secundae», *prosperity* «spês, spei», f., *hope*

«272.» «Gender.» Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except «diês», *day*, and «merîdiês», *midday*, which are usually masculine.

«273.» PARADIGMS

[Transcriber's Note: The "Stems" are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

«diês», «rês», f., m., *day thing* STEMS «diê-» «rê-» BASES «di-» «r-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* diês rês -ês *Gen.* diêi reî -êi *or* -eî *Dat.* diêi reî -êi *or* -eî *Acc.* diem rem -em *Abl.* diê rê -ê

PLURAL *Nom.* diēs rēs -ēs *Gen.* diērum rērum -ērum *Dat.* diēbus rēbus -ēbus *Acc.* diēs rēs -ēs *Abl.* diēbus rēbus -ēbus

1. The vowel «e» which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending «-ēi» after a consonant, as in «r-ēi»; and before «-m» in the accusative singular, as in «di-em». (Cf. §12.2.)

2. Only «diēs» and «rēs» are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. «Aciēs», *line of battle*, and «spēs», *hope*, have the nominative and accusative plural.

«274.» The ablative relation (§50) which is expressed by the prepositions *at*, *in*, or *on* may refer not only to place, but also to time, as *at noon*, *in summer*, *on the first day*. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

«275.» RULE. «The Ablative of Time.» _The time «when» or «within which» anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition._

a. Occasionally the preposition «*in*» is found. Compare the English *Next day we started* and «*On*» *the next day we started*.

«276.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. *Galba the Farmer.* Galba agricola rūri vīvit. Cofīdiē prīmā lūce labōrāre incipit, nec ante noctem in studiō suō cessat. Merīdiē Iūlia filia eum ad cēnam vocat. Nocte pedēs dēfessōs domum vertit. Aestāte filiū agricolae auxiliū patrī dant. Hieme agricola eōs in lūdum mittit. Ibi magister pueris multās fābulās dē rēbus gestīs Caesaris nārrat. Aestāte filiū agricolae perpetuīs labōribus exercentur nec grave agrī opus est iīs molestum. Galba sine ūllā cūrā vivit nec rēs adversās timet.

II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Cæsar's line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Cæsar's protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast's teeth.

«277.» DAED´ALUS AND IC´ARUS (*Continued*)

Tum Daedalus gravibus cūrīs commōtus filiō suō Îcarō ita dixit: "Animus meus, Îcare, est plēnus trīstitiæ nec oculī lacrimīs egent. Discēdere ex Crētā, Athēnās properāre, maximē studeō; sed rēx recusat audīre verba mea et omnem reditūs spem ēripit. Sed numquam rēbus adversīs vincar. Terra et mare sunt inimīca, sed aliam fugæ viam reperiam." Tum in artīs ignōtās animum dīmittit et mīrum capit cōsilium. Nam pennās in ōrdine pōnit et vērās ālās facit.

LESSON XLIX

PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED · PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

[Special Vocabulary]

«amīcitiā, -æ», f., *friendship* (amicable) «itaque», conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly* «littera, -æ», f., *a letter* of the alphabet; plur., *a letter, an epistle* «metus, metūs», m., *fear* «nihil, indeclinable», n., *nothing* (nihilist) «nūntius, nūnti», m., *messenger*. Cf. «nūntiō» «pāx, pācis», f., *peace* (pacify) «rēgnum, -ī», n., *reign, sovereignty, kingdom* «supplicum, supplī´cū», n., *punishment*; «supplicum sūmere dē», with abl., *inflict*

punishment on; «supplicum dare», *suffer punishment*. Cf. «poena»

«placeô, placêre, placuî, placitus», *be pleasing to, please*, with dative. Cf. §154 «sûmô, sûmere, sûmpsi, sûmptus», *take up, assume* «sustineô, sustinêre, sustinuî, sustentus», *sustain*

«278.» We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:

1. «Personal pronouns», which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, «ego», *I*; «tû», *you*; «is», *he*. (Cf. §279. etc.)
2. «Possessive pronouns», which denote possession; as, «meus», «tuus», «suus», etc. (Cf. §98.)
3. «Reflexive pronouns», used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, *he saw himself*. (Cf. §281.)
4. «Intensive pronouns», used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, *_I myself saw it_*. (Cf. §285.)
5. «Demonstrative pronouns», which point out persons or things; as, «is», *this, that*. (Cf. §112.)
6. «Relative pronouns», which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; as, «quî», *who*. (Cf. §220.)
7. «Interrogative pronouns», which ask a question; as, «quis», *who?* (Cf. §225.)
8. «Indefinite pronouns», which point out indefinitely; as, *_some one, any one, some, certain ones_*, etc. (Cf. §296.)

«279.» The demonstrative pronoun «is», «ea», «id», as we learned in §115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they*, etc.).

«280.» The personal pronouns of the first person are «ego», *I*; «nôs», *we*; of the second person, «tû», *thou* or *you*; «vôs», *ye* or *you*. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR FIRST PERSON SECOND PERSON *Nom.* ego, *I* tû, *you* *Gen.* meî, *of me* tuî, *of you* *Dat.* mihi, *to or for me* tibi, *to or for you* *Acc.* mê, *me* tê, *you* *Abl.* mê, *with, from*, etc., *me* tê, *with, from*, etc., *you*

PLURAL *Nom.* nôs, *we* vôs, *you* *Gen.* nostrum or nostrî, *of us* vestrum or vestrî, *of you* *Dat.* nôbîs, *to or for us* vobîs, *to or for you* *Acc.* nôs, *us* vôs, *you* *Abl.* nôbîs, *with, from*, vobîs, *with, from*, etc., *you* etc., *us*

1. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for emphasis or contrast.

«281.» «The Reflexive Pronouns.» 1. The personal pronouns «ego» and «tû» may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

«videô mê», *I see myself* «vidêmus nôs», *we see ourselves* «vidês tê», *you see yourself* «vidêtis vôs», *you see yourselves*

2. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (_himself, herself, itself, themselves_) has a special form, used only in these senses, and declined alike in the singular and plural.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL *Gen.* suî *Acc.* sê *Dat.* sibi *Abl.* sê

EXAMPLES «Puer sê videt», *the boy sees himself* «Puella sê videt», *the girl sees herself* «Animal sê videt», *the animal sees itself* «Îi sê vident», *they see themselves*

a. The form «sê» is sometimes doubled, «sêsê», for emphasis.

3. Give the Latin for

I teach myself We teach ourselves You teach yourself You teach yourselves He teaches himself They teach themselves

«282.» The preposition «cum», when used with the ablative of «ego», «tû», or «suî», is appended to the form, as, «mêcum», *with me*; «têcum», *with you*; «nôbîscum», *with us*; etc.

«283.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. 1. Mea mâter est câra mihi et tua mâter est câra tibi. 2. Vestrae litterae erant grâtae nôbis et nostrae litterae erant grâtae vôbîs. 3. Nûntius rêgis quî nôbîscum est nihil respondêbit. 4. Nûntîi pâcem amîcitiâque sibi et suis sociîs postulâvêrunt. 5. Sî tû arma sûmês, ego rêgnum occupâbô. 6. Uter vestrum est cîvis Rômânus? Neuter nostrum. 7. Eô tempore multî supplicium dedêrunt quia rêgnum petierant. 8. Sûme supplicium, Caesar, dê hostibus patriae âcribus. 9. Prîmâ lûce aliî metû commôtî sêsê fugae mandâvêrunt; aliî autem magnâ virtûte impetum exercitûs nostrî sustinuêrunt. 10. Soror rêgis, ubi dê adversô proeliô audîvit, sêsê Pompêiîs interfêcit.

II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us[1] the way? The gods will show you[1] the way.

[Footnote 1: Not accusative.]

DAED´ALUS AND IC´ARUS (*Concluded*)

«284.» Puer Îcarus ûnâ[2] stâbat et mîrum patris opus vidêbat. Postquam manus ultima[3] âlîs imposita est, Daedalus eâs temptâvit et similis avî in aurâs volâvit. Tum âlâs umerîs fîlî adligâvit et docuit eum volâre et dîxit, "Tê vetô, mî fîlî, adpropinquâre aut sôlî aut marî. Sî fluctibus adpropinquâveris,[4] aqua âlîs tuîs nocêbit, et sî sôlî adpropinquâveris,[4] ignis eâs cremâbit." Tum pater et filius iter difficile incipiunt. Âlâs movent et aurae sêsê committunt. Sed stultus puer verbîs patris nôn pâret. Sôlî adpropinquat. Âlae cremantur et Îcarus in mare dêcidit et vitam âmittit. Daedalus autem sine ûllô perîculô trâns fluctûs ad însulam Siciliam volâvit.

[Footnote 2: Adverb, see vocabulary.]

[Footnote 3: «manus ultima», *the finishing touch*. What literally?]

[Footnote 4: Future perfect. Translate by the present.]

LESSON L

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ÎDEM*

[Special Vocabulary]

«corpus, corporis», n., *body* (corporal) «densus, -a, -um», *dense* «îdem, e'adem, idem», demonstrative pronoun, *the same* (identity) «ipse, ipsa, ipsum», intensive pronoun, *self; even, very* «mîrus, -a, -um», *wonderful, marvelous* (miracle) «ôlim», adv., *formerly, once upon a time* «pars, partis (-ium)», f., *part, region, direction* «quoque», adv., *also*. Stands *after* the word which it emphasizes «sôl, sôlis», m., *sun* (solar) «vêrus, -a, -um», *true, real* (verity)

«dêbeô, dêbêre, dêbuî, dêbitus», *owe, ought* (debt) «êripiô, êriperere, êripuî, êreptus», *snatch from*

«285.» «Iipse» means *-self* (*him-self, her-self, etc.*) or is translated by *even* or *very*. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.

a. «Iipse» must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive «suî». The latter is always used as a pronoun, while «ipse» is regularly adjective. Compare

«Homô sê videt», *the man sees himself* (reflexive) «Homô ipse perîculum videt», *the man himself* (intensive) *sees the danger* «Homô ipsum perîculum videt», *the man sees the danger itself* (intensive)

«286.» Except for the one form «ipse», the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. §§108, 109). Learn the declension (§481).

«287.» The demonstrative «îdem», meaning *the same*, is a compound of «is». It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* îdem e'adem idem *Gen.* eius'dem eius'dem eius'dem *Dat.* eî'dem eî'dem eî'dem *Acc.* eun'dem ean'dem idem *Abl.* eô'dem eâ'dem eô'dem

PLURAL *Nom.* î'dem eae'dem e'adem eî'dem *Gen.* eôrun'dem eârun'dem eôrun'dem *Dat.* îs'dem îs'dem îs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem *Acc.* eôs'dem eâs'dem e'adem *Abl.* îs'dem îs'dem îs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem

a. From forms like «eundem» (eum + -dem), «eôrundem» (eôrum + -dem), we learn the rule that «m» before «d» is changed to «n».

b. The forms «îidem», «îisdem» are often spelled and pronounced with one «î».

«288.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1. Ego et tû[1] in eâdem urbe vîvimus. 2. Iter ipsum nôn timêmus sed ferâs saevâs quae in silvâ dênsâ esse dîcuntur. 3. Ôlim nôs ipsî idem iter fêcimus. 4. Eô tempore multâs ferâs vîdimus. 5. Sed nôbîs nôn nocuêrunt. 6. Caesar ipse scûtum dê manibus mîlitis êripuit et in ipsam aciem properâvit. 7. Itaque mîlîtês summâ virtûte têla in hostium corpora iêcêrunt. 8. Rômânî quoque gravia vulnera accêpêrunt. 9. Dênique hostês terga vertêrunt et ommîs in partîs[2] fûgêrunt. 10. Eâdem hôrâ litterae Rômam ab imperâtôre ipsô missae sunt. 11. Eôdem mênse captîvî quoque in Italiam missî sunt. 12. Sed multî propter vulnera iter difficile trâns montîs facere recûsâbant et Genâvae esse dîcêbantur.

II. 1. At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you?[3] 5. On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

[Footnote 1: Observe that in Latin we say *I and you*, not *_you and I_*.]

[Footnote 2: Not *parts*, but *directions*.]

[Footnote 3: Cf. §210.]

«289.» HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE[4]

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rômânôrum, ubi in exsilium ab îrâtîs Rômânîs êiectus est, â Porsenâ, rēge Etrûscôrum, auxilium petiit. Mox Porsena magnîs cum cōpiîs Rômam vênit, et ipsa urbs summô in perîculô erat. Omnibus in partibus exercitus Rômânus victus erat. Iam rēx montem Iâniculum[5] occupâverat. Numquam antea Rômânî tantô metû tenêbantur. Ex agrîs in urbem properabânt et summô studiô urbem ipsam mûniêbant.

[Footnote 4: The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay's well-known poem "Horatius" in his *Lays of Ancient Rome*. Read the poem in connection with this selection.]

[Footnote 5: The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.]

LESSON LI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

[Special Vocabulary]

«hic, haec, hoc», demonstrative pronoun, *this* (of mine); *he, she, it* «ille, illa, illud», demonstrative pronoun *that* (yonder); *he, she, it* «invîsus, -a, -um», *hateful, detested*, with dative Cf. §143 «iste, ista, istud», demonstrative pronoun, *that* (of yours); *he, she, it* «lîbertâs, -âtîs», f., *liberty* «modus, -î», m., *measure; manner, way, mode* «nômen, nôminis», n., *name* (nominate) «oculus, -î», m., *eye* (oculist) «prîstinus, -a, -um», *former, old-time* (pristine) «pûblicus, -a, -um», *public, belonging to the state*; «rês pûblica, reî pûblica», f., *the commonwealth, the state, the republic* «vestîgium, vestî'gî», n., *footprint, track; trace, vestige* «vôx, vôcis», f., *voice*

«290.» We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun «is» and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use «hic», «iste», or «ille». These demonstratives, like «is», are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

«hic» «iste» «ille» SPEAKER ----->----->-----> *this, he; that, he; that, he* (near);
(remote); (more remote)

a. In dialogue «hic» refers to a person or thing near the speaker; «iste», to a person or thing near the person addressed; «ille», to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, §293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.

«291.» «Hic» is declined as follows:

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* hic haec hoc *Gen.* huius huius huius *Dat.* huic huic huic *Acc.* hunc hanc hoc *Abl.* hîc hîc hîc

PLURAL *Nom.* hî hae haec *Gen.* hôrum hârûm hôrum *Dat.* hîs hîs hîs *Acc.* hôs hâs haec *Abl.* hîs hîs hîs

a. «Huius» is pronounced *h[oo]´y[oo]s*, and «huic» is pronounced *h[oo]ic* (one syllable).

«292.» The demonstrative pronouns «iste», «ista», «istud», and «ille», «illa», «illud», except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms «istud» and «illud», are declined exactly like «ipse», «ipsa», «ipsum». (See §481.)

«293.» «MODEL SENTENCES»

Is this horse (of mine) strong? «Estne hic equus validus?»

That horse (of yours) is strong, but that one (yonder) is weak «Iste equus est validus, sed ille est infirmus»

Are these (men by me) your friends? «Suntne hî amîcî tuî?»

Those (men by you) are my friends, but those (men yonder) are enemies «Istî sunt amîcî meî, sed illî sunt inimîcî»

«294.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. *A German Chieftain addresses his Followers.* Ille fortis Germânôrum dux suôs convocâvit et hîc modô animôs eôrum cõfirmâvit. "Vôs, quî in hîs fînibus vîvitis, in hunc locum convocâvî[1] quia mêcum débêtis istôs agrôs et istâs domôs ab iniûriîs Rômânôrum liberâre. Hoc nôbîs nôn difficile erit, quod illî hostês hâs silvâs dênâs, ferâs saevâs quârum vestîgia vident, montês altôs timent. Sî fortês erimus, deî ipsî nôbîs viam salûtis dêmonstrâbunt. Ille sôl, istî oculî calamîtâtês nostrâs vîdêrunt.[1] Itaque nômen illîus reî pûblicaе Rômânae nôn sôlum nôbis, sed etiam omnibus hominibus quî libertâtem amant, est invîsum. Ad arma vôs vocô. Exercête istam prîstinam virtûtem et vincêtis."

[Footnote 1: The perfect definite. (Cf. §190.)]

II. 1. Does that bird (of yours)[2] sing? 2. This bird (of mine)[2] sings both[3] in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder)[2] in the country don't sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you)[2] and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours)[2] you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For («propter») these deeds («rês») we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

[Footnote 2: English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. §290.)]

[Footnote 3: *both ... and*, «et ... et».]

[Illustration: HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT]

«295.» HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Continued*)

Altera urbis pars mûrîs, altera flûmine satis mûnîrî vidêbâtur. Sed erat pôns in flûmine quî hostibus iter paene dedit. Tum Horâtius Cocles, fortis vir, magnâ vôte dîxit, "Rescindite pontem, Rômânî! Brevî tempore Porsena in urbem cõpiâs suâs trâdûcet." Iam hostês in ponte erant, sed Horâtius cum duôbus (cf. §479) comitibus ad extrêmam pontis partem properâvit, et hi sôli aciem hostium sustinuêrunt. Tum vêrô cívês Rômânî pontem â tergô rescindere incipiunt, et hostês frûstrâ Horâtium superâre temptant.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

[Special Vocabulary]

«incolumis, -e», *unharméd* «nê ... quidem», adv., *not even*. The emphatic word stands between «nê» and «quidem» «nisi», conj., *unless, if ... not* «paene», adv., *almost* (pen-insula) «satis», adv., *enough, sufficiently* (satisfaction) «tantus, -a, -um», *so great* «vêrô», adv., *truly, indeed, in fact*. As a conj. *but, however*, usually stands second, never first.

«dêcidô, dêcidere, dêcidî, ----», *fall down* (deciduous) «dêsiliô, dêsilîre, dêsiluî, dêsultus», *leap down, dismount* «maneô, manêre, mânsî, mânsûrus», *remain* «trâdûcô, trâdûcere, trâdûxî, trâductus», *lead across*

«296.» The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to *some person* or *some thing*, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns «quis» and «quî», which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of «quis» or «quî» and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, §§221, 227.

«297.» Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

MASC. FEM. NEUT. «quis» «quid», *some one, any one* (substantive) «quî» «qua» or «quae» «quod», *some, any* (adjective), §483 «aliquis» «aliquid», *some one, any one* (substantive), §487 «aliquî» «aliqua» «aliquid», *some, any* (adjective), §487 «quîdam» «quaedam» «quoddam», «quiddam», *_a certain, a certain one_*, §485 «quisquam» «quicquam» or «quidquam» (no plural), *any one* (at all) (substantive), §486 «quisque» «quidque», *each one, every one* (substantive), §484 «quisque» «quaeque» «quodque», *each, every* (adjective), §484

[Transcriber's Note: In the original text, the combined forms (masculine/feminine) were printed in the "masculine" column.]

NOTE. The meanings of the neuters, *something*, etc., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, «quis-»forms and «quid-»forms are mostly used as substantives, «quî-»forms and «quod-»forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites «quis» and «quî» never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after «sî», «nisi», «nê», «num» (as, «sî quis», *if any one*; «sî quid», *if anything*; «nisi quis», *_unless some one_*). Generally «aliquis» and «aliquî» are used instead.

c. The forms «qua» and «aliqua» are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives «quî» and «aliquî» respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative «quî?»

d. Observe that «quîdam» (quî + -dam) is declined like «quî», except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural «m» of «quî» becomes «n» (cf. §287.a): «quendam», «quandam», «quôrundam», «quârundam;» also that the neuter has «quiddam» (substantive) and «quoddam» (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. «Quîdam» is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.

e. «Quisquam» and «quisque» (substantive) are declined like «quis».

f. «Quisquam», *any one* («quicquam» or «quidquam», *anything*), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective *any* is «ûllus, -a, -um» (§108).

«298.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1. Aliquis dê ponte in flûmen dêcidit sed sine ûllô perîculô servâtus est. 2. Est vêrô in vîtâ cuiusque hominis aliqua bona fortûna. 3. Nê mîlitum quidem[1] quisquam in castrîs mânsit. 4. Sî quem meae domî vidês, iubê eum discêdere. 5. Sî quis pontem tenet, nê tantus quidem exercitus capere urbem potest. 6. Urbs nôn satis mûnîta erat et merîdiê rêx quîdam paene côpiâs suâs trâns pontem trâdûxerat. 7. Dênique mîles quîdam armâtus in fluctûs dêsiluit et incolumis ad alteram rîpam oculôs vertit. 8. Quisque illî fortî mîlitî aliquid dare dêbet. 9. Tanta vêrô virtûs Rômânus semper placuit. 10. Ôlim Corinthus erat urbs satis magna et paene par Rômae ipsî; nunc vêrô moenia dêcidêrunt et pauca vestîgia urbis illîus reperîrî possunt. 11. Quisque libertâtem amat, et aliquibus vêrô nômen rêgis est invîsum.

II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

[Footnote 1: Observe that «quîdam» and «quidem» are different words.]

«299.» HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Concluded*)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mânsit, Horâtius iussit comitês discêdere et sôlus mîrâ cônstantiâ impetum illius tôtius exercitûs sustinêbat. Dênique magnô fragôre pônns in flûmen dêcidit. Tum vêrô Horâtius tergum vertit et armâtus in aquâs dêsiluit. In eum hostês multa têla iêcêrunt; incolumis autem per fluctûs ad alteram rîpam trânâvit. Eî propter tantâs rês gestâs populus Rômânus nôn sôlum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horâti in locô públicô posuit.

* * * * *

«Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, §§521-523»

* * * * *

LESSON LIII

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

[Special Vocabulary]

«aquila, -ae», f., *eagle* (aquiline) «audâx», gen. «audâcis», adj., *bold, audacious* «celer, celeris, celere», *swift, quick* (celerity). Cf. «vêlôx» «explôratôr, -ôris», m., *scout, spy* (explorer) «ingêns», gen. «ingentis», adj., *huge, vast* «medius, -a, -um», *middle, middle part of* (medium) «mêns, mentis (-ium)», f., *mind* (mental). Cf. «animus» «opportûnus, -a, -um», *opportune* «quam», adv., *than*. With the superlative «quam» gives the force of *as possible*, as «quam» audâcissimî virî, *men as bold as possible* «recens», gen. «recentis», adj., *recent* «tam», adv., *so*. Always with an adjective or adverb, while «ita» is generally used with a verb

«quaerô, quaerere, quaesívî, quaesîtus», *ask, inquire, seek* (question). Cf. «petô»

«300.» The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the

positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix *-er* for the comparative and *-est* for the superlative; as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*. Less frequently we use the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful*.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

«301.» Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE *clârus*, -a, -um *clârior*, *clârûs* *clârissimus*, -a, -um (*bright*) (*brighter*) (*brightest*) (BASE *clâr-*) *brevis*, *breve* *brevior*, *brevius* *brevissimus*, -a, -um (*short*) (*shorter*) (*shortest*) (BASE *brev-*) *vêlôx* *vêlôcior*, *vêlôcius* *vêlôcissimus*, -a, -um (*swift*) (*swifter*) (*swiftest*) (BASE *veloc-*)

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding «-ior» masc. and fem., and «-ius» neut.; the superlative by adding «-issimus, -issima, -issimum».

«302.» Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs «magis», *more*; «maximê», *most*; as, «idôneus», *suitable*; «magis idôneus», *more suitable*; «maximê idôneus», *most suitable*.

«303.» «Declension of the Comparative.» Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* *clârior* *clârûs* *clârôrês* *clârîôra* *Gen.* *clârîôris* *clârîôris* *clârîôrum* *clârîôrum* *Dat.* *clârîôri* *clârîôri* *clârîôribus* *clârîôribus* *Acc.* *clârîorem* *clârîus* *clârîôrês* *clârîôra* *Abl.* *clârîôre* *clârîôre* *clârîôribus* *clârîôribus*

a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare «longus», *long*; «fortis», *brave*; «recêns» (base, «recent-»), *recent*; and decline the comparative of each.

«304.» Adjectives in «-er» form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding «-rimus», «-a», «-um» to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE *âcer*, *âcris*, *âcre* *âcior*, *âcrius* *âcerrimus*, -a, -um (BASE *acr-*) *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum* *pulchrior*, *pulchrius* *pulcherrimus*, (BASE *pulchr-*) -a, -um *lîber*, *lîbera*, *lîberum* *lîberior*, *lîberius* *lîberrimus*, -a, -um (BASE *lîber-*)

a. In a similar manner compare «miser», «aeger», «crêber».

«305.» The comparative is often translated by *quite*, *too*, or *somewhat*, and the superlative by *very*; as, «altior», *quite* (_too, somewhat) *high*; «altissimus», *very high*. _

«306.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Quid explôrâtôrês quaerêbant? Explôrâtôrês tempus oportfûissimum itinerî quaerêbant. 2. Mediâ in silvâ ignîs quam crêberrimôs fêcimus, quod ferâs tam audâcis numquam anteâ vîderâmus. 3. Antîquîs temporibus Germânî erant fortiôrês quam Gallî. 4. Caesar erat clârior quam inimîcî[1] quî eum necâvêrunt. 5. Quisque scûtum ingêns et pîlum longius gerêbat. 6. Apud barbarôs Germânî erant audâcissimî et fortissimî. 7. Mêns

hominum est celerior quam corpus. 8. Virî aliquârum terrârum sunt miserrimî. 9. Corpora Germânorum erant ingentiôra quam Rômânorum. 10. Âcerrimî Gallôrum prîncipês sine ûllâ morâ trâns flûmen quoddam equôs vêlôcissimôs trâdûxêrunt. 11. Aestâte diês sunt longiôrês quam hieme. 12. Imperâtor quîdam ab explôrâtôribus dê recentî adventû nâvium longârum quaesîvit.

II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3. The Roman name was most hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest[2] punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Cæsar.[3] 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general's friendship.

[Footnote 1: Why is this word used instead of «hostês»?]

[Footnote 2: Use the superlative of «gravis».]

[Footnote 3: Accusative. In a comparison the noun after «quam» is in the same case as the one before it.]

N.B. Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

LESSON LIV

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT QUAM

[Special Vocabulary]

«alacer, alacris, alacre», *eager, spirited, excited* (alacrity) «celeritâs, -âtis», f., *speed* (celerity) «clâmor, clâmôrîs», m., *shout, clamor* «lênis, lêne», *mild, gentle* (lenient) «mulier, muli'êris», f., *woman* «multitûdô, multitûdinis», f., *multitude* «nêmo», dat. «nêminî», acc. «nêminem» (gen. «nûllûs», abl. «nûllô», from «nûllus»), no plur., m. and f., *no one* «nôbilis, nôbile», *well known, noble* «noctû», adv. (an old abl.), *by night* (nocturnal) «statim», adv., *immediately, at once* «subitô», adv., *suddenly* «tardus, -a, -um», *slow* (tardy) «cupiô, cupere, cupîvî, cupîtus», *desire, wish* (cupidity)

«307.» The following six adjectives in «-lis» form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding «-limus» to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE facilis, -e, *easy* faciliior, -ius facillimus, -a, -um difficilis, -e, *hard* difficilior, -ius difficillimus, -a, -um similis, -e, *like* similior, -ius simillimus, -a, -um dissimilis, -e, *unlike* dissimilior, -ius dissimillimus, -a, -um gracilis, -e, *slender* gracilior, -ius gracillimus, -a, -um humilis, -e, *low* humilior, -ius humillimus, -a, -um

«308.» From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

«Nihil est clârius quam sôl»

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

«Nihil est clârius sôle»

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter*. This relation is expressed by the separative ablative «sôle». Hence the rule

«309.» RULE. «Ablative with Comparatives.» _The comparative degree, if «quam» is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative._

«310.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Nêmô mîlitês alacriôrês Rômânîs vîdit. 2. Statim imperâtor iussit nûntiôs quam celerrimôs litterâs Rômam portâre. 3. Multa flûmina sunt lêniôra Rhênô. 4. Apud Rômanôs quis erat clârior Caesare? 5. Nihil pulchrius urbe Rômâ vîdî. 6. Subitô multîtûdo audacissima magnô clamôre proelium âcrius commisit. 7. Num est equus tuus tardus? Nôn vêrô tardus, sed celerior aquilâ. 8. Ubi Romae fuî, nêmô erat mihi amicior Sextô. 9. Quaedam mulierês cibum mîlitibus dare cupîvêrunt. 10. Rêx vetuit cîvis ex urbe noctû discêdere. 11. Ille puer est gracilior hâc muliere. 12. Explôrâtor duâs (*two*) viâs, alteram facilem, alteram difficiliôrem, dêmônstrâvit.

II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king's mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.

[Illustration: ARMA ROMANA]

LESSON LV

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

«aedificium, aedifi'cî», n., *building, dwelling* (edifice) «imperium, impe'ri», n., *command, chief power; empire* «mors, mortis (-ium)», f., *death* (mortal) «reliquus, -a, -um», *remaining, rest of*. As a noun, m. and n. plur., *the rest* (relic) «scelus, sceleris», n., *crime* «servitûs, -ûtis», f., *slavery* (servitude) «vallês, vallis (-ium)», f., *valley*

«abdô, abdere, abdidî, abditus», *hide* «contendô, contendere, contendî, contentus», *_strain, struggle; hasten_* (contend) «occîdô, occîdere, occîdî, occîsus», *cut down, kill*. Cf. «necô», «interficiô» «perterreô, perterrêre, perterruî, perterritus», *terrify, frighten* «recipiô, recipere, recêpî, receptus», *receive, recover*; «sê recipere», *betake one's self, withdraw, retreat* «trâdô, trâdere, trâdidî, trâditus», *give over, surrender, deliver* (traitor)

«311.» Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as *_good, better, best; many, more, most._* So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE «bonus, -a, -um», *good* «melior, melius» «optimus, -a, -um» «magnus, -a, -um», *great* «maior, maius» «maximus, -a, -um» «malus, -a, -um», *bad* «peior, peius» «pessimus, -a, -um» «multus, -a, -um», *much* «----, plûs» «plûrimus, -a, -um» «multî, -ae, -a», *many* «plûrês, plûra» «plûrimî, -ae, -a» «parvus, -a, -um», *small* «minor, minus» «minimus, -a, -um»

«312.» The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

«exterus, -a, -um», («exterior, -ius», { «extrêmus, -a, -um» } *outward outer*) { («extimus, -a, -um» } *outermost, last* «înferus, -a, -um», «înferior, -ius», { «înfirmus, -a, -um» } *low lower* { «îmus, -a, -um» } *lowest* «posterus, -a, -um», («posterior, -ius», { «postrêmus, -a, -um» } *next later*) { («postumus, -a, -um») }

last «superus, -a, -um», «superior, -ius» { «suprêmus, -a, -um» } *above higher* { «summus, -a, -um» } *highest*

«313.» «Plûs», *more* (plural *more, many, several*), is declined as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* ---- plûs plûrês plûra
Gen. ---- plûris plûrium plûrium *Dat.* ---- ---- plûribus plûribus *Acc.* ---- plûs plûrîs, -ês plûra *Abl.* ---- plûre
 plûribus plûribus

a. In the singular «plûs» is used only as a neuter substantive.

«314.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Reliquî hostês, quî â dextrô cornû proelium commiserant, dê superiôre locô fûgêrunt et sêsê in silvam maximam recêpêrunt. 2. In extrêmâ parte silvae castra hostium posita erant. 3. Plûrimî captîvî ab equitibus ad Caesarem ductî sunt. 4. Caesar vêrô iussit eôs in servitûtem trâdî. 5. Posterô diê magna multitudô mulierum ab Rômânîs in valle îmâ reperta est. 6. Hae mulierês maximê perterritae adventû Caesaris sêsê occîdere studêbant. 7. Eae quoque plûrîs fâbulâs dê exercitûs Rômânî sceleribus audîverant. 8. Fâma illôrum mîlitum optima nôn erat. 9. In barbarôrum aedificiîs maior côpia frûmentî reperta est. 10. Nêmô crêbrîs proeliîs contendere sine aliquô perîculô potest.

II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

LESSON LVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Concluded*) ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

[Special Vocabulary]

«aditus, -ûs», m., *approach, access; entrance* «cîvitâs, cîvitâtis», f., *citizenship; body of citizens, state* (city)
 «inter», prep, with acc., *between, among* (interstate commerce) «nam», conj., *for* «obses, obsidis», m. and f.,
hostage «paulô», adv. (abl. n. of «paulus»), *by a little, somewhat*

«incolô, incolere, incoluî, ----», transitive, *inhabit*; intransitive, *dwell*. Cf. «habitô», «vîvô» «relinquô, relinquere, relîquî, relictus», *leave, abandon* (relinquish) «statuô, statuere, statuî, statûtus», *fix, decide* (statute), usually with infin.

«315.» The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE «citerior», *hither* («citimus», *hithermost*) «interior», *inner* («intimus», *inmost*) «prior», *former* «prîmus», *first* «propior», *nearer* «proximus», *next, nearest* «ulterior», *further*
 «ultimus», *furthest*

«316.» In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the «measure of difference» in height between Galba and Sextus. The Latin form of expression would be *_Galba is taller than Sextus «by a head»_*. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the «ablative of the

measure of difference».

EXAMPLES

«Galba est altior capite quam Sextus» *Galba is a head taller (taller by a head) than Sextus.* «Illud iter ad Italiam est multô brevius» *That route to Italy is much shorter (shorter by much)*

«317.» RULE. «Ablative of the Measure of Difference.» _With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference._

a. Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

«eô», *by this, by that* «nihilô», [1] *by nothing* «hôc», *by this* «paulô», *by a little* «multô», *by much*

[Footnote 1: «nihil» was originally «nihilum» and declined like «pîlum». There is no plural.]

«318.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Barbarî proelium committere statuêrunt eô magis quod Rômânî infirmî esse vidêbantur. 2. Meum cõnsilium est multô melius quam tuum quia multô facilius est. 3. Haec via est multô lâtiôr quam illa. 4. Barbarî erant nihilô tardiôrês quam Rômânî. 5. Tuus equus est paulô celerior quam meus. 6. Î quî paulô fortiôrês erant prohibuêrunt reliquôs aditum relinquere. 7. Inter illâs civitatês Germânia militês habet optimôs. 8. Propior via quae per hanc vallem dûcit est inter portum et lacum. 9. Servi, quî agrôs citeriôrês incolêbant, priôrês dominôs relinquere nôn cupîvêrunt, quod eôs amâbant. 10. Ultimae Germâniae partês numquam in fidem Rômânôrum vênêrunt. 11. Nam trâns Rhênum aditus erat multô difficilior exercituî Rômânô.

II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Cæsar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Cæsar's recent victories.

LESSON LVII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

[Special Vocabulary]

«aequus, -a, -um», *even, level; equal* «cohors, cohortis (-ium)», f., *cohort*, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men «currô, currere, cucurrî, cursus», *run (course)* «difficultâs, -âtis», f., *difficulty* «fossa, -ae», f., *ditch (fosse)* «gêns, gentis (-ium)», f., *race, tribe, nation (Gentile)* «negôtium, negôtî», n., *business, affair, matter (negotiate)* «regiô, -ônîs», f., *region, district* «rûmor, rûmôris», m., *rumor, report*. Cf. fâma «simul atque», conj., *as soon as*

«suscipiô, suscipere, suscepî, susceptus», *undertake* «trahô, trahere, trâxî, trâctus», *drag, draw (ex-tract)* «valeô, valêre, valûi, valitûrus», *be strong; plûrimum valêre, to be most powerful, have great influence (value)*. Cf. validus

«319.» Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

«320.» Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE *Adj.* cārus, *dear* cārior cārissimus *Adv.* cārê, *dearly* cārius cārissimê

Adj. pulcher, *beautiful* pulchrior pulcherrimus *Adv.* pulchrê, *beautifully* pulchrius pulcherrimê

Adj. liber, *free* liberior liberrimus *Adv.* liberê, *freely* liberius liberrimê

a. The positive of the adverb is formed by adding «-ê» to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

b. The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

«321.» Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding «-iter» to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and «-ter» to the base of those of one ending;[1] as,

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE *Adj.* fortis, *brave* fortior fortissimus *Adv.* fortiter, *bravely* fortius fortissimê

Adj. audâx, *bold* audâcior audâcissimus *Adv.* audâcter, *boldly* audâcius audâcissimê

[Footnote 1: This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.]

«322.» «Case Forms as Adverbs.» As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

Adj. facilis, *easy* prîmus, *first* *Adv.* facile (acc.), *easily* prîmum (acc.), *first* prîmô (abl.), *at first* *Adj.* multus, *many* plûrimus, *most* *Adv.* multum (acc.), *much* plûrimum (acc.), *most* multô (abl.), *by much*

«323.» Learn the following irregular comparisons:

bene, *well* melius, *better* optimê, *best* diû, *long* (time) diûtius, *longer* diûtissimê, *longest* magnopere, *greatly* magis, *more* maximê, *most* parum, *little* minus, *less* minimê, *least* prope, *nearly*, *near* propius, *nearer* proximê, *nearest* saepe, *often* saepius, *oftener* saepissimê, *oftenest*

«324.» Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them: «laetus», «superbus», «molestus», «amîcus», «âcer», «brevis», «gravis», «recêns.»

«325.» RULE. «Adverbs.» _Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs._

«326.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Nûlla rês melius gesta est quam proelium illud[2] ubi Marius multô minôre exercitû multô maiôrês cõpiâs Germânôrum in fugam dedit. 2. Audâcter in Rômânôrum cohortîs hostês impetûs fêcêrunt 3. Marius autem omnês hôs fortissimê sustinuit. 4. Barbarî nihilô fortiôrês erant quam Rômânî. 5. Prîmô barbarî esse superiôrês vidêbantur, tum Rômânî âcrius contendêrunt. 6. Dênique, ubi iam diûtissimê paene aequô proeliô

pugnatum est, barbari fugam petierunt. 7. Quaedam Germanorum gentes, simul atque rûmorem illius calamitatis audiverunt, sese in ultimis regionibus finium suorum abdidērunt. 8. Rômânî saepius quam hostes vicerunt, quod meliora arma habebant. 9. Inter omnes gentis Rômânî plurimum valēbant. 10. Hae cohortes simul atque in aequiorem regionem se recēperunt, castra sine ulla difficultate posuerunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier's death were not true.

[Footnote 2: «ille» standing after its noun means _that well-known, that famous_.]

LESSON LVIII

NUMERALS · THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

[Special Vocabulary]

«commeatus, -ûs», m., *provisions* «lâtitudô, -inis», f., *width* (latitude) «longitudô, -inis», f., *length* (longitude) «magnitudô, -inis», f., *size, magnitude* «mercator, mercatoris», m., *trader, merchant* «mûnitiô, -ônis», f., *fortification* (munition) «spatium, spatî», n., *room, space, distance; time*

«cognoscô, cognoscere, cognôvî, cognitus», *learn*; in the perfect tenses, *know* (re-cognize) «cogô, cogere, coêgî, coactus», *collect; compel* (cogent) «dêfendô, dêfendere, dêfendî, dêfensus», *defend* «incendô, incendere, incendî, incensus», *set fire to, burn* (incendiary). Cf. «cremô» «obtinêô, obtinêre, obtinuî, obtentus», *possess, occupy, hold* (obtain) «pervenîô, pervenîre, pervênî, perventus», *come through, arrive*

«327.» The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:

1. «Cardinal Numerals», answering the question *how many?* as, «ûnus», *one*; «duo», *two*; etc.
2. «Ordinal Numerals», derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question *in what order?* as, «prîmus», *first*; «secundus», *second*; etc.
3. «Distributive Numerals», answering the question *_how many at a time? as, «singulî», one at a time_.*

«328.» «The Cardinal Numerals.» The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, «ûnus» 6, «sex» 11, «ûndecim» 16, «sêdecim» 2, «duo» 7, «septem» 12, «duodecim» 17, «septendecim» 3, «três» 8, «octô» 13, «tredecim» 18, «duodêvîgintî» 4, «quattuor» 9, «novem» 14, «quattuordecim» 19, «ûndêvîgintî» 5, «quîque» 10, «decem» 15, «quîndecim» 20, «vîgintî»

a. Learn also «centum» = 100, «ducentî» = 200, «mîlle» = 1000.

«329.» «Declension of the Cardinals.» Of the cardinals only «ûnus», «duo», «três», the hundreds above one hundred, and «mîlle» used as a noun, are declinable.

a. «ûnus» is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like «nûllus» (cf. §§109, 470). The plural of «ûnus» is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, «ûna castra», *one camp*; and with other nouns in the sense of *only*, as, «Gallî ûnî», *only the Gauls*.

b. Learn the declension of «duo», *two*; «três», *three*; and «mille», *a thousand*. (§479.)

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of «bonus»; as, ducenti, -ae, -a ducentorum, -arum, -orum etc. etc. etc.

«330.» We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

«Omnium avium aquila est vèlôcissima» *Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest* «Hoc ôrâculum erat omnium clârissimum» *This oracle was the most famous of all*

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a «partitive genitive».

«331.» RULE. «Partitive Genitive.» _Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the «partitive genitive»._

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting «mille» regularly take the ablative with «ex» or «dê» instead of the partitive genitive.

b. «Mille», *a thousand*, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, «mille militês», *a thousand soldiers*), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, «decem milia militum», *ten thousand soldiers*).

EXAMPLES:

«Fortissimî hôrûm sunt Germânî» *The bravest of these are the Germans* «Decem milia hostium interfecta sunt» *Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain* «Ūna ex captîvîs erat soror rêgis» *One of the captives was the king's sister*

«332.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Caesar maximam partem aedificiôrûm incendit. 2. Magna pars mûnitiônis aquâ flûminis dêlêta est. 3. Gallî huius regiônis quîque milia hominum coêgerant. 4. Duo ex meîs frâtribus eundem rûmôrem audîvêrunt. 5. Quis Rômânôrûm erat clarior Caesare? 6. Quîque cohortês ex illâ legiône castra quam fortissimê dêfendêbant. 7. Hic locus aberat aequô spatiô[1] ab castrîs Caesaris et castrîs Germânôrûm. 8. Caesar simul atque pervênit, plûs commeâtûs ab sociîs postulâvit. 9. Nônne mercâtôrês magnitudinem însulae cognôverant? Longitudinem sed nôn lâtitûdinem cognôverant. 10. Paucî hostium obtinêbant collem quem explôrâtôrês nostrî vîdêrunt.

II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Cæsar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer[2] defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant.[3] 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.[4]

[Footnote 1: Ablative of the measure of difference.]

[Footnote 2: Not «longius». Why?]

[Footnote 3: Latin, *was distant by a small space.*]

[Footnote 4: Not the accusative.]

LESSON LIX

NUMERALS (*Continued*) · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

[Special Vocabulary]

«agmen, agminis», n., *line of march, column*; «primum agmen», *the van*; «novissimum agmen», *the rear*
 «atque», «ac», conj., *and*; «atque» is used before vowels and consonants, «ac» before consonants only. Cf.
 «et» and «-que» «concilium, conciliū», n., *council, assembly* «Helvêtiî, -ôrum», m., *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe
 «passus, passûs», m., *a pace, five Roman feet*; «mille passuum», *a thousand (of) paces*, a Roman mile «quâ
 dê causâ», *for this reason, for what reason* «vâllum, -î», n., *earth-works, rampart*

«cadô, cadere, cecidî, cêsûrus», *fall (decadence)* «dêdô, dêdere, dêdidî, dêditus», *surrender, give up*; with a
 reflexive pronoun, *surrender one's self, submit*, with the dative of the indirect object «premô, premere, pressî,
 pressus», *press hard, harass* «vexô, vexâre, vexâvî, vexâtus», *annoy, ravage (vex)*

«333.» Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (§478). The ordinals are all declined like «bonus».

«334.» The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of «bonus». The first three are

«singulî, -ae, -a», *one each, one by one* «bînî, -ae, -a», *two each, two by two* «ternî, -ae, -a», *three each, three
 by three*

«335.» We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not
 covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as «per plûrimôs annôs», *for a great many years*; «per
 têtum diem», *for a whole day*. Here the space relation is one of *extent of time*. We could also say «per decem
 pedês», *for ten feet*, where the space relation is one of *extent of space*. While this is correct Latin, the usual
 form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,

«Vir têtum diem cucurrit», *the man ran for a whole day* «Caesar mûrum decem pedês môvit», *Cæsar moved
 the wall ten feet*

«336.» RULE. «Accusative of Extent.» _Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the
 accusative._

a. This accusative answers the questions *how long? how far?*

b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time *how long* and the ablative of time *when, or within
 which*.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o'clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How
 far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river,
 and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In
 the first year after the king's death.

«337.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. *Cæsar in Gaul.* Cæsar bellum in Gallia septem annôs gessit. Prîmô annô Helvétîôs vîcit, et eodem annô multae Germanôrûm gentês eî sêsê dèdidêrunt. Multôs iam annôs Germânî Gallôs vexabant[1] et ducês Germânî còpiâs suâs trâns Rhênum saepe trâducêbant.[1] Nôn singulî veniêbant, sed multa milia hominum in Galliam contendêbant. Quâ dê causâ prîncipês Galliae concilium convocâvêrunt atque statuêrunt legates ad Caesarem mittere. Cæsar, simul atque hunc rûmôrem audîvit, còpiâs suâs sine morâ coêgit. Primâ lûce fortiter cum Germanîs proelium commîsit. Tôtum diem âcriter pugnâtum est. Cæsar ipse â dextrô cornû acicm dûxit. Magna pars exercitûs Germânî cecidit. Post magnam caedem paucî multa milia passuum ad flûmen fûgêrunt.

II. 1. Cæsar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon («in» *with acc.*) the rear. 6. For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7. In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.

[Footnote 1: Translate as if pluperfect.]

LESSON LX

DEPONENT VERBS

[Special Vocabulary]

«aut», conj., *or*; «aut ... aut», *either ... or* «causâ», abl. of «causa», *for the sake of, because of*. Always stands *after* the gen. which modifies it «ferê», adv., *nearly, almost* «opîniô, -ônîs», f., *opinion, supposition, expectation* «rês frûmentâria, reî frûmentâriae», f. (lit. *the grain affair*), *grain supply* «timor, -ôris», m., *fear*. Cf. «timeô» «undique», adv., *from all sides*

«cônor, cônârî, cônâtus sum», *attempt, try* «êgredior, êgredî, êgressus sum», *move out, disembark*; «prôgredior», *move forward, advance* (egress, progress) «moror, morârî, morâtus sum», *delay* «orior, orîrî, ortus sum», *arise, spring; begin; be born (from)* (origin) «proficîscor, proficîscî, profectus sum», *set out* «revertor, revertî, reversus sum», *return* (revert). The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., «revertî» «sequor, sequî, secûtus sum», *follow* (sequence). Note the following compounds of «sequor» and the force of the different prefixes: «cônsequor» (*follow with*), *overtake*; «însequor» (*follow against*), *pursue*; «subsequor» (*follow under*), *follow close after*

«338.» A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, «hortor», *I encourage*; «vereor», *I fear*. Such verbs are called «deponent» because they have laid aside («dê-pônere», *to lay aside*) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (Sec§§375, 403.b.)

«339.» The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

Conj. I «hortor, hortârî, hortâtus sum», *encourage* Conj. II «vereor, verêrî, veritus sum», *fear* Conj. III (a) «sequor, sequî, secûtus sum», *follow* (b) «patior, patî, passus sum», *suffer, allow* Conj. IV «partior, partîrî, partîtus sum», *share, divide*

Learn the synopsis of these verbs. (See §493.) «Patior» is conjugated like the passive of «capiô» (§492).

«340.» PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

«ante», *before* «apud», *among* «circum», *around* «contrâ», *against, contrary to* «extrâ», *outside of* «in», *into, in, against, upon* «inter», *between, among* «intrâ», *within* «ob», *on account of* («quam ob rem», *wherefore, therefore*) «per», *through, by means of* «post», *after, behind* «propter», *on account of, because of* «trâns», *across, over*

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, §209.

«341.» EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. 1. Trēs ex lēgâtīs, contrâ Caesaris opîniōnem, iter facere per hostium finīs verēbantur. 2. Quis eōs hortātus est? Imperātor eōs hortātus est et iīs persuādēre cōnātus est, sed nōn potuit. 3. Quid lēgātōs perterruit? Aut timor hostium, quī undique premēbant, aut longitūdō viae eōs perterruit. 4. Tamen omnēs ferē Caesarem multō magis quam hostīs veritī sunt. 5. Fortissimae gentēs Galliae ex Germânīs oriēbantur. 6. Quam ob rem tam fortēs erant? Quia nec vīnum nec alia quae virtūtem dêlent ad sē portârī patiēbantur. 7. Caesar ex mercâtōribus dê însulâ Britannîâ quaesīvit, sed nihil cognōscere potuit. 8. Itaque ipse statuit hanc terram petere, et mediâ ferē aestâte cum multīs nāvibus longīs profectus est. 9. Magnâ celeritâte iter confēcit et in opportūnissimō locō êgressus est. 10. Barbarī summīs vīribus eum ab însulâ prohibēre cōnâtī sunt. 11. Ille autem barbarōs multa mīlia passuum îsecūtus est; tamen sine equitâtū eōs cōsequī nōn potuit.

II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Cæsar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far.[1] 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning[2] to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Cæsar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

[Footnote 1: Comparative of «longê».]

[Footnote 2: Will this be a deponent or an active form?]

* * * * *

«Seventh Review, Lessons LIII-LX, §§524-526»

* * * * *

[Illustration]

PART III

CONSTRUCTIONS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of

constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, *they must be mastered*. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Cæsar's campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.

LESSON LXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

«342.» In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

PRESENT } IMPERFECT } ACTIVE AND PASSIVE PERFECT } PLUPERFECT }

«343.» The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, *each of them may refer to future time*. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

«344.» The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV ACTIVE VOICE SINGULAR 1. a'mem mo'neam re'gam ca'piam
au'diam 2. a'mês mo'neâs re'gâs ca'piâs au'diâs 3. a'met mo'neat re'gat ca'piat au'diat

PLURAL 1. amê'mus moneâ'mus regâ'mus capiâ'mus audiâ'mus 2. amê'tis moneâ'tis regâ'tis capiâ'tis
audiâ'tis 3. a'ment mo'neant re'gant ca'pian au'diant

PASSIVE VOICE SINGULAR 1. a'mer mo'near re'gar ca'piar au'diar 2. amê'ris moneâ'ris regâ'ris capiâ'ris
audiâ'ris (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) 3. amê'tur moneâ'tur regâ'tur capiâ'tur audiâ'tur

PLURAL 1. amê'mur moneâ'mur regâ'mur capiâ'mur audiâ'mur 2. amê'minî moneâ'minî regâ'minî
capiâ'minî audiâ'minî 3. amen'tur monean'tur regan'tur capian'tur audian'tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.

b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is «-ê-» in the first conjugation and «-â-» in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. §12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.

c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.

d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of «cûrô», «iubeô», «sûmô», «iaciô», «mûniô».

«345.» The present subjunctive of the irregular verb «sum» is inflected as follows:

{ 1. sim { 1. sîmus SING. { 2. sîs PLURAL { 2. sîtis { 3. sit { 3. sint

«346.» «The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared.»

1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.

2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a *desire* or *wish*, a *purpose*, a *possibility*, an *expectation*, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

INDICATIVE IDEAS SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

1. *He is brave* 1. *May he be brave* «Fortis est» «Fortis sit» (idea of wishing) 2. *We set out at once* 2. *Let us set out at once* «Statim proficiscimur» «Statim proficiscâmur» (idea of willing) 3. *You hear him every day* 3. *You can hear him every day* «Cotidiê eum audîs» «Cotidiê eum audiâs» (idea of possibility) 4. *He remained until the ship* 4. *He waited until the ship arrived should arrive* «Mânsit dum nâvis pervênit» «Exspectâvit dum nâvis pervenîret» [1] (idea of expectation) 5. *Cæsar sends men who find the* 5. *Cæsar sends men bridge who are to find (or to find) the bridge* «Caesar mittit hominês quî» «Caesar hominês mittit quî» «pontem reperiunt» «pontem reperiant» (idea of purpose)

[Footnote 1: «pervenîret», imperfect subjunctive.]

NOTE. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

«347.» EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy's fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor's mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

«348.» Observe the sentence

«Caesar hominês mittit quî pontem reperiunt», *Cæsar sends men to find the bridge*

The verb «reperiunt» in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Cæsar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

«349.» RULE. «Subjunctive of Purpose.» _The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause._

«350.» A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:

I. If something is wanted, by

«quî», the relative pronoun (as above) «ut», conj., *in order that, that* «quô» (abl. of «quî», *by which*), *in order that, that*, used when the purpose clause contains a comparative. The ablative «quô» expresses the measure of difference. (Cf. §317.)

II. If something is not wanted, by

«nê», conj., *in order that not, that not, lest*

«351.» EXAMPLES

1. «Caesar cōpiâs cōgit quibus hostîs înequâtur» *Cæsar collects troops with which to pursue the foe*
2. «Pâcem petunt ut domum revertantur» *They ask for peace in order that they may return home*
3. «Pontem faciunt quô facilius oppidum capiant» *They build a bridge that they may take the town more easily (lit. by which the more easily)*
4. «Fugiunt nê vulnerentur» *They flee that they may not (or lest they) be wounded*

«352.» «Expression of Purpose in English.» In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by *that* or *in order that*, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as *_We eat to live, She stoops to conquer_*. In Latin prose, on the other hand, «purpose is never expressed by the infinitive». Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.

«353.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Veniunt ut { dūcant, mittant, videant, audiant, { dūcantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur. 2. Fugimus nê { capiâmur, trādâmur, videâmus, { necêmur, rapiâmur, resistâmus. 3. Mittit nūntiôs quî { dicant, audiant, veniant, { nârrent, audiantur, in conciliô sedeant. 4. Castra mûniunt { sêsê dêfendant, impetum sustineant, quô facilius { hostîs vincant, salûtem petant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek[1] peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (*acc. with «in»*) that they may not be captured. 4. The Gauls wage many wars to free[1] their fatherland from slavery. 5. They will resist the Romans[2] bravely lest they be destroyed.

[Footnote 1: Not infinitive.]

[Footnote 2: Not accusative.]

LESSON LXIII

INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

«354.» The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV ACTIVE 1. amâ´rem monê´rem re´gerem ca´perem audí´rem 2. amâ´rês monê´rês re´gerês ca´perês audí´rês 3. amâ´ret monê´ret re´geret ca´peret audí´ret

1. amârê´mus monêrê´mus regerê´mus caperê´mus audîrê´mus 2. amârê´tis monêrê´tis regerê´tis caperê´tis audîrê´tis 3. amâ´rent monê´rent re´gerent ca´perent audî´rent

PASSIVE 1. amâ´rer monê´rer re´gerer ca´perer audî´rer 2. amârê´ris monêrê´ris regerê´ris caperê´ris audîrê´ris (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) 3. amârê´tur monêrê´tur regerê´tur caperê´tur audîrê´tur

1. amârê´mur monêrê´mur regerê´mur caperê´mur audîrê´mur 2. amârê´minî monêrê´minî regerê´minî caperê´minî audîrê´minî 3. amâren´tur monêren´tur regeren´tur caperen´tur audîren´tur

a. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of «cûrô», «iubeô», «sûmô», «iaciô», «mûniô».

«355.» The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb «sum» is inflected as follows:

{ 1. es´sem { 1. essê´mus SING. { 2. es´sês PLURAL { 2. essê´tis { 3. es´set { 3. es´sent

«356.» The three great distinctions of time are *present*, *past*, and *future*. All tenses referring to present or future time are called «primary tenses», and those referring to past time are called «secondary tenses». Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence _He «says» that he «is» coming, *the principal verb*, says_, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and *is coming*, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change *he says* to *he said*,--in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character,--I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, _He «said» that he «was» coming_. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called *tense sequence*, from *sequi*, "to follow."

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table:

«357.» TABLE FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

PRINCIPAL VERB		DEPENDENT VERBS	
IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE	IN THE	INDICATIVE	
<i>Incomplete or</i>	<i>Completed Action</i>	<i>Continuing Action</i>	<i>M</i>
Present	Future	Present	Perfect
Future perfect		Imperfect	Pluperfect
		Pluperfect	

«358.» RULE. «Sequence of Tenses.» _Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary._

«359.» EXAMPLES

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

«Mittit» } «Mittet» } «hominês ut agrôs vâstent» «Miserit» }

{ *sends* } { *that they may* } *He* { *will send* } *men* { *in order to* } { *will have sent* } { *to lay waste the fields* }

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

«Mittêbat» } «Mîsit» } «hominês ut agrôs vâstârent» «Mîserat» }

{ *was sending* } { *that they might* } *He* { *sent or has sent* } *men* { *in order to* } { *had sent* } { *to lay waste the fields* }

«360.» EXERCISES

- I. 1. Vênerant ut { dūcerent, mitterent, vidêrent, audîrent, { dūcerentur, mitterentur, vidêrentur, audirentur
2. Fugiêbat nê { caperêtur, trâderêtur, vidêrêtur, { necârêtur, raperêtur, resisteret.
3. Mîsit nūntiôs quî { dīcerent, audîrent, venîrent { nârrârent, audîrentur, in conciliô sedêrent.
4. Castra mûnîvêrunt { sêsê dēfenderent, impetum sustinêrent, quô facilius { hostîs vincerent, salûtem peterent.

II. 1. Cæsar encouraged the soldiers in order that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans. 4. Cæsar inflicted punishment on them in order that the others might be more terrified. 5. He sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.

LESSON LXIV

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

«361.» The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE SINGULAR 1. amâ´verim monu´erim rê´xerim cê´perim audî´verim 2. amâ´veris monu´eris rê´xeris cê´peris audî´veris 3. amâ´verit monu´erit rê´xerit cê´perit audî´verit

PLURAL 1. amâve´rimus monue´rimus rêxe´rimus cêpe´rimus audîve´rimus 2. amâve´ritis monue´ritis rêxe´ritis cêpe´ritis audîve´ritis 3. amâ´verint monu´erint rê´xerint cê´perint audî´verint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE SINGULAR 1. amâvis´sem monuis´sem rêxis´sem cêpis´sem audîvis´sem 2. amâvis´sês monuis´sês rêxis´sês cêpis´sês audîvis´sêm 3. amâvis´set monuis´set rêxis´set cêpis´set audîvis´set

PLURAL 1. amâvissê´mus monuissê´mus rêxissê´mus cêpissê´mus audîvissê´mus 2. amâvissê´tis monuissê´tis rêxissê´tis cêpissê´tis audîvissê´tis 3. amâvis´sent monuis´sent rêxis´sent cêpis´sent audîvis´sent

- a. Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.
- b. Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, excepting that the first person singular ends in «-m» and not in «-ô».
- c. Observe that the pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by adding «-issem, -issês», etc. to the perfect stem.
- d. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of «cûrô», «iubeô», «sûmô», «iaciô»,

«mûniô».

«362.» The passive of the perfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with «sim», the present subjunctive of «sum».

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE SINGULAR 1. amâ'tus sim mo'nitus sim rêc'tus sim cap'tus sim audî'tus sim 2. amâ'tus sîs mo'nitus sîs rêc'tus sîs cap'tus sîs audî'tus sîs 3. amâ'tus sit mo'nitus sit rêc'tus sit cap'tus sit audî'tus sit

PLURAL 1. amâ'tî sîmus mo'nitî s. rêc'tî s. cap'tî s. audî'tî s. 2. amâ'tî sîtis mo'nitî s. rêc'tî s. cap'tî s. audî'tî s. 3. amâ'tî sint mo'nitî sint rêc'tî sint cap'tî sint audî'tî sint

«363.» The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with «essem», the imperfect subjunctive of «sum».

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE SINGULAR 1. amâtus essem monitus essem rêctus essem captus e. audîtus e. 2. amâtus essês monitus essês rêctus essês captus e. audîtus e. 3. amâtus esset monitus esset rêctus esset captus e. audîtus e.

PLURAL 1. amâti essêmus monitî essêmus rêctî essêmus captî e. audîti e. 2. amâti essêtis monitî essêtis rêctî essêtis captî e. audîti e. 3. amâti essent monitî essent rêctî essent captî e. audîti e.

a. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive of «cûrô», «iubeô», «sûmô», «iaciô», «mûniô.»

«364.» The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb «sum» are inflected as follows:

PERFECT PLUPERFECT fu'erim fue'rimus fuis'sem fuissê'mus fu'eris fue'ritis fuis'sês fuissê'tis fu'erit fu'erint fuis'set fuis'sent

«365.» A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun, as,

That the men are afraid is clear enough (clause as subject) He ordered *them to call on him* (clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. §213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the *subjunctive* in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

«366.» RULE. «Substantive Clauses of Purpose.» _A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as the object of verbs of «commanding», «urging», «asking», «persuading», or «advising», where in English we should usually have the infinitive._

EXAMPLES

1. *The general ordered the soldiers to run* «Imperâtor mîlitibus imperâvit ut current» 2. *He urged them to resist bravely* «Hortâtus est ut fortiter resisterent» 3. *He asked them to give the children food* «Petîvit ut liberîs cibum darent» 4. *He will persuade us not to set out* «Nôbîs persuâdêbit nê proficîscâmur» 5. *He advises us to remain at home* «Monet ut domî maneâmus»

a. The object clauses following these verbs all express the purpose or will of the principal subject that something be done or not done. (Cf. §348.)

«367.» The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

«hortor», *urge* «imperô», *order* (with the *dative* of the *person* ordered and a *subjunctive clause* of the *thing* ordered done) «moneô», *advise* «petô», «quaerô», «rogô», *ask, seek* «persuadeô», *persuade* (with the same construction as imperô) «postulô», *demand, require* «suadeô», *advise* (cf. «persuadeô»)

N.B. Remember that «iubeô», *order*, takes the infinitive as in English. (Cf. §213.1.) Compare the sentences

«Iubeô eum venîre», *I order him to come* «Imperô eî ut veniat», *I give orders to him that he is to come*

We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like the first, but the difference in meaning between iubeô and imperô in the Latin requires the *infinitive* in the one case and the *subjunctive* in the other.

«368.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Petit atque hortâtur ut ipse dîcat. 2. Caesar Helvétiîs imperrâvit nê per prôvinciam iter facerent. 3. Caesar nôn iussit Helvétiôs per prôvinciam iter facere. 4. Ille cîvibus persuâsit ut dê fînibus suîs discêderent. 5. Caesar prîncipês monêbit nê proelium committant. 6. Postulâvit nê cum Helvétiîs aut cum eôrum sociîs bellum gererent. 7. Ab iîs quaesîvî nê proficîscerentur. 8. Iîs persuâdêre nôn potuî ut domî manêrent.

II. 1. Who ordered Cæsar to make the march? (_Write this sentence both with «imperô» and with_ «iubeô».)
2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything («omnia»).

NOTE. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review §352.

[Illustration: LEGIO ITER FACIT]

LESSON LXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *POSSUM* · VERBS OF FEARING

«369.» Learn the subjunctive of «possum» (§495), and note especially the position of the accent.

«370.» «Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.» We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose. In this class belong also *clauses after verbs of fearing*, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by «ut». If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, «nê» is used. Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate «ut» after a verb of fearing by *that not*, and «nê» by *that* or *lest*.

«371.» EXAMPLES

«timeô» } { «veniat» «timêbô» } «ut» { «timuerô» } { «vênerit»

I fear, shall fear, shall have feared, that he will not come, has not come

«timêbam» } { «venîret» «timuî» } «ut» { «timueram» } { «vênisset»

I was fearing, feared, had feared, that he would not come, _had not come_

The same examples with «nê» instead of «ut» would be translated *_I fear that or lest he will come, has come_, etc.*

«372.» RULE. «Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.» *_Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by «ut» («that not») or «nê» («that» or «lest»)._*

«373.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar verêbâtur ut supplicium captivôrum Gallis placêret. 2. Rômânî ipsî magnopere verêbantur nê Helvétîi iter per prôvinciam facerent. 3. Timêbant ut satis reî frûmentâriæ mittî posset. 4. Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinêre possim. 5. Timuit nê impedîmenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6. Caesar numquam timuit nê legiônês vincerentur. 7. Legiônês pugnâre nôn timuêrunt.[1]

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2. We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that they had come. 4. We feared that they had not come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could not be defended. 6. Almost all feared[1] to leave the camp.

[Footnote 1: Distinguish between what one is afraid *to do* (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid *_will take place or has taken place_* (substantive clause with the subjunctive).]

LESSON LXVI

THE PARTICIPLES

«374.» The Latin verb has the following Participles:[1]

[Transcriber's Note: For reasons of space, this table is given in two forms: first a reduced version without translation, and then the complete text, including translations, split into two elements.]

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV ACTIVE PRESENT amâns monêns regêns capiêns audiêns FUTURE amâtûrus monitûrus rêctûrus captûrus audîtûrus

PASSIVE PERFECT amâtus monitus rêctus captus audîtus FUTURE[2] amandus monendus regendus capiendus audiendus

CONJ. I CONJ. II ACTIVE PRESENT amâns monêns *loving advising* FUTURE amâtûrus monitûrus *about to love about to advise*

PASSIVE PERFECT amâtus monitus *loved, having advised, having been advised* *been loved* FUTURE[2] amandus monendus *to be loved to be advised*

CONJ. III CONJ. IV ACTIVE PRESENT regêns capiêns audiêns *ruling taking hearing* FUTURE rêctûrus captûrus audîtûrus *about to rule about to take about to hear*

PASSIVE PERFECT rêctus captus audîtus *ruled, having taken, having heard, havinh been ruled been taken been heard* FUTURE[2] regendus capiendus audiendus *to be ruled to be taken to be heard*

[Footnote 1: Review §203.]

[Footnote 2: The future passive participle is often called the *gerundive*.]

a. The present active and future passive participles are formed from the present stem, and the future active and

perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding «-ns» to the present stem. In «-iô» verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of «-ê-», as «capi-ê-ns», «audi-ê-ns». It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf. §256.)

«amâns», *loving* BASE «amant-» STEM «amanti-» SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* amâns amâns amantês amantia *Gen.* amantis amantis amantium amantium *Dat.* amantî amantî amantibus amantibus *Acc.* amantem amâns amantîs amantia *or -ês Abl.* amantî amantî amantibus amantibus *or -e or -e*

(1) When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in «-î»; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in «-e».

(2) In a similar way decline «monêns», «regêns», «capiêns», «audiêns».

c. The future active participle is formed by adding «-ûrus» to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with «esse» to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. §206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see §201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding «-ndus» to the present stem.

e. All participles in «-us» are declined like «bonus».

f. Participles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: «cûrô», «iubeô», «sûmô», «iaciô», «mûniô».

«375.» «Participles of Deponent Verbs.» Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,

Pres. Act. «hortâns», *urging Fut. Act.* «hortâtûrus», *about to urge Perf. Pass.* (in form) «hortâtus», *having urged Fut. Pass. (Gerundive)* «hortandus», *to be urged*

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but *active* in meaning. _No other verbs have a perfect active participle._ On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles of «cônor», «vereor», «sequor», «patior», «partior».

«376.» «Tenses of the Participle.» The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in *-ing*, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, «mîlitês însequentês cêpêrunt multôs», _the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many._ Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.

2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary *having been*; as, «audîtus», *heard* or *_having been heard_*.

3. The future active participle, translated *about to*, etc., denotes time after the action of the main verb.

«377.» Review §§203, 204, and, note the following model sentences:

1. «Militês currentês erant dêfessî», *the soldiers who were running (lit. running) were weary.*
2. «Caesar profectûrus Rômam nôn exspectâvit», *_Cæsar, when about to set out (lit. about to set out) for Rome, did not wait_.*
3. «Oppidum captum vîdimus», *we saw the town which had been captured (lit. captured town).*
4. «Imperâtor trîdium morâtus profectus est», *the general, since (when, or after) he had delayed (lit. _the general, having delayed) three days, set out_.*
5. «Militês vîctî terga nôn vertêrunt», *_the soldiers, though they were conquered (lit. the soldiers conquered), did not retreat_.*

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (_when, since, after, though_, etc.), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.

«378.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Puer timêns nê capiâtur fugit. 2. Aquila îrâ commôta avîs reliquâs interficere cônâta erat. 3. Militês ab hostibus pressî têla iacere nôn potuêrunt. 4. Caesar decimam legiônem laudâtûrus ad prîmum agmen prôgressus est. 5. Imperâtor hortâtus equitês ut fortiter pugnârent signum proeliô dedit. 6. Militês hostîs octô milia passuum îsecûtî multîs cum captîvîs ad castra revertêrunt. 7. Sôl oriêns multôs interfectôs vîdit. 8. Rômânî cônsilium audâx suspicâtî barbaris sêsê nôn commîsêrunt. 9. Nâvis ê portû êgressa nûllô in perîculô erat.

II.[3] 1. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy's country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

[Footnote 3: In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses.]

LESSON LXVII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLÔ*, *NÔLÔ*, *MÂLÔ* THE ABLATIVE WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

«379.» Learn the principal parts and conjugation of «volô», *wish*; «nôlô» («ne» + «volô»), *be unwilling*; «mâlô» («magis» + «volô»), *_be more willing, prefer_* (§497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. §354.)

a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, «volunt venîre», *_they wish to come*; «volunt amîcôs venîre», *they wish their friends to come_*. The English usage is the same.[1]

[Footnote 1: Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See §366.)]

[Conjugations given in §497:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: «volô, velle, voluî», ----, *be willing, will, wish* «nôlô, nôlle, nôluî», ----, *be unwilling, will not* «mâlô, mâlle, mâluî», ----, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE SINGULAR *Pres.* volô nôlô mâlô vîs nôn vis mâvîs vult nôn vult mâvult

PLURAL volumus nôlumus mâlumus vultis nôn vultis mâvul'tis volunt nôlunt mâlunt

Impf. volêbam nôlêbam mâlêbam *Fut.* volam, volês, etc. nôlam, nôlês, etc. mâlam, mâlês, etc. *Perf.* voluî nôluî mâluî *Plup.* volueram nôlueram mâlueram *F. P.* voluerô nôluerô mâluerô

SUBJUNCTIVE SINGULAR *Pres.* velim nôlim mâlim velîs nôlîs mâlîs velit nôlit mâlit

PLURAL velî'mus nôlî'mus mâlî'mus velî'tis nôlî'tis mâlî'tis velint nôlint mâlint

Impf. vellem nôllem mâllem *Perf.* voluerim nôluerim mâluerim *Plup.* voluissem nôluissem mâluissem

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* nôlî nôlîte *Fut.* nôlîtô, etc.

INFINITIVE *Pres.* velle nôlle mâlle *Perf.* voluisse nôluisse mâluisse

PARTICIPLE *Pres.* volêns, -entis nôlêns, -entis ----]

«380.» Observe the following sentences:

1. «Magistrô laudante omnês puerî dîligenter labôrant», *_with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently._*
2. «Caesare dûcente nêmo prôgredi timet», *with Cæsar leading, or when Cæsar leads, or if Cæsar leads, or _Cæsar leading, no one fears to advance._*
3. «His rêbus cognitîs militês fûgêrunt», *when this was known, or since this was known, or _these things having been learned, the soldiers fled._*
4. «Proeliô commissô multî vulnerâtî sunt», *_after the battle had begun, or when the battle had begun, or the battle having been joined, many were wounded._*

a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (cf. §50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses *attendant circumstance*. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a *with* relation, and the ablative is the case to use.

b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of *time* (when or after), or one of *cause* (since), or one of *concession* (though), or one of *condition* (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

«381.» RULE. «Ablative Absolute.» _The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance._

NOTE 1. The verb «sum» has no present participle. In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, «tê duce», *you (being) leader, with you as leader*; «patre infirmô», *my father (being) weak*.

NOTE 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

a. *The Gauls, having been conquered by Cæsar, returned home*

b. *_The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar, the army returned home_*

In *a* the subject is *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar*, and we translate,

«Gallî â Caesare victi domum revertêrunt»

In *b* the subject is *the army*. *_The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar_* is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

«Gallîs â Caesare victîs exercitus domum revertit»

NOTE 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. §375.a) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate *Cæsar having encouraged the legions* just as it stands, because «hortor» is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say *_Cæsar having conquered the Gauls_*, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because «vincô» is not deponent, and say, *_the Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar_* (see translation above).

«382.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Mâvîs, nôn vîs, vultis, nôlumus. 2. Ut nôlit, ut vellêmus, ut mâlit. 3. Nôlî, velle, nôluisse, mâlle. 4. Vult, mâvultis, ut nôllet, nôlîte. 5. Sôle oriente, avês cantâre incêpêrunt. 6. Clâmôribus audîtîs, barbarî prôgredî recûsâbant. 7. Caesare legiônês hortâtô, mîlitês paulô fortius pugnâvêrunt. 8. Hîs rêbus cognîtîs, Helvétîi finitimîs persuâsêrunt ut sêcum iter facerent. 9. Labôribus cônfectîs, mîlitês â Caesare quaerêbant ut sibi præmia daret. 10. Conciliô convocâtô, prîncipês ita respondêrunt. 11. Dux plûrîs diês in Helvétîôrum fînibus morâns multôs vîcôs incendit. 12. Magnitûdine Germânôrum cognîtâ, quîdam ex Rômânîs timêbant. 13. Mercâtôribus rogâtîs, Caesar nihilô plûs reperîre potuit.

II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Cæsar, when he heard the rumor (_the rumor having been heard_), commanded («imperâre») the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Cæsar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified[2] by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Cæsar had undertaken the business (*Cæsar, the business having been undertaken*), he was unwilling to delay longer.[3]

[Footnote 2: Would the ablative absolute be correct here?]

[Footnote 3: Not «longius». Why?]

THE IRREGULAR VERB *FĪŌ* · THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

«383.» The verb «*fĭō*», *be made, happen*, serves as the passive of «*faciō*», *make*, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from «*faciō*». Learn the principal parts and conjugation (§500). Observe that the «*i*» is long except before «*-er*» and in «*fit*».

a. The compounds of «*facio*» with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,

Active «*cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcĭ, cōfectus*» *Passive* «*cōficior, cōficĭ, cōfectus sum*»

[Conjugation given in §500:

PRINCIPAL PARTS «*fĭō, fierĭ, factus sum*»

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERATIVE *Pres.* *fĭō ---- fĭam* *2d Pers.* *fĭ fĭte fĭs ---- fit fĭunt* *Impf.* *fĭēbam fierem* *Fut.* *fĭam ----*

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE *Perf.* *factus, -a, -um sum factus, -a, -um sim* *Plup.* *factus, -a, -um eram factus, -a, -um essem* *F. P.* *factus, -a, -um erō*

INFINITIVE PARTICIPLES *Pres.* *fierĭ* *Perf.* *factus, -a, -um* *Perf.* *factus, -a, -um esse* *Ger.* *faciendus, -a, -um* *Fut.* [[*factum ĭrĭ*]]

«384.» Observe the following sentences:

1. «*Terror erat tantus ut omnēs fugerent*», *_the terror was so great that all fled._*
2. «*Terror erat tantus ut nōn facile mĭlĭtēs sēsē reciperent*», *_the terror was so great that the soldiers did not easily recover themselves._*
3. «*Terror fēcĭt ut omnēs fugerent*», *terror caused all to flee (lit. made that all fled).*

a. Each of these sentences is complex, containing a principal clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause names a cause and the subordinate clause states the *consequence* or *result* of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative. The construction is called the *subjunctive of consequence or result*, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example the clause of result is the object of the verb «*fēcĭt*».

e. The conjunction introducing the consecutive or result clause is «*ut*» = *so that*; negative, «*ut nōn*» = *so that not*.

«385.» RULE. «*Subjunctive of Result.*» *_Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by «ut» or «ut nōn» and have the verb in the subjunctive._*

«386.» RULE. *_Object clauses of result with «ut» or «ut nōn» are found after verbs of «effecting» or «bringing about»._*

«387.» «Purpose and Result Clauses Compared.» There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by «ut»; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has «nê» and the result clause «ut nô». Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as «tam», «ita», «sic» (*so*), and these serve to point them out. Compare

a. «Tam graviter vulnerâtus est ut caperêtur» *He was so severely wounded that he was captured* b. «Graviter vulnerâtus est ut caperêtur» *He was severely wounded in order that he might be captured*

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

«388.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Fit, fiet, ut fiat, fiêbâmus. 2. Fiô, fiês, ut fierent, fierî, fiunt. 3. Fiêtis, ut fiâmus, fis, fîemus. 4. Mîlitês erant tam tardî ut ante noctem in castra nô. pervenîrent. 5. Sôl facit ut omnia sint pulchra. 6. Eius modî perîcula erant ut nê. proficîscî vellet. 7. Equitês hostium cum equitâtû nostrô in itinere contendêrunt, ita tamen[1] ut nostrî omnibus in partibus superiôrês essent. 8. Virtûs mîlitum nostrôrûm fêcit ut hostês nê. ûnum quidem[2] impetum sustinêrent. 9. Hominês erant tam audâcês ut nûllô modô continêrî possent. 10. Spatium erat tam parvum ut mîlitês têla iacere nô. facile possent. 11. Hôc proeliô factô barbarî ita perterritî sunt ut ab ultimîs gentibus lêgâtî ad Caesarem mitterentur. 12. Hoc proelium factum est nê. lêgâtî ad Caesarem mitterentur.

[Footnote 1: «ita tamen», *with such a result however.*]

[Footnote 2: «nê ... quidem», *not even.* The emphatic word is placed between.]

II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen. 2. It happens, he will be made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken,[3] the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves. 9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

[Footnote 3: Ablative absolute.]

LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

«389.» Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. «Quis est quî suam domum nô. amet?» *_who is there who does not love his own home?_*
2. «Erant quî hoc facere nô. llent», *_there were (some) who were unwilling to do this._*
3. «Tû nô. is es quî amîcôs trâdâs», *you are not such a one as to, or you are not the man to, betray your friends.*
4. «Nihil videô quod timeam», *I see nothing to fear (nothing of such as character as to fear it).*

a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

Caesar is the man who is leading us, «Caesar est is qui nōs dūcit» (mere statement of fact, no description, with the indicative) *Caesar is the man to lead us*, «Caesar est is qui nōs dūcat» (descriptive relative clause with the subjunctive)

b. Observe that in this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a relative, as is «qui», are translated _such a one as to, the man to_.

c. In which of the following sentences would you use the indicative and in which the subjunctive?

These are not the men who did this *These are not the men to do this*

«390.» RULE. «Subjunctive of Characteristic.» _A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the «subjunctive of characteristic or description»._

«391.» Observe the sentences

1. Rōmānī «Caesarem cōsulem» fēcērunt, *the Romans made «Caesar consul».*

2. «Caesar cōsul» ā Rōmānīs factus est, «*Caesar*» was made «*consul*» by the Romans.

a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb «fēcērunt», *made*, has two objects: (1) the direct object, «Caesarem»; (2) a second object, «cōsulem», referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate. The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.

b. Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the *direct object* becoming the *subject* and the *predicate accusative* the _predicate nominative_.

«392.» RULE. «Two Accusatives.» _Verbs of «making», «choosing», «calling», «showing», and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives._

«393.» The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

«creo, creāre, creāvī, creātus», *choose* «appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus» } «nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus» } *call* «vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus» } «faciō, facere, fēcī, factus», *make*

«394.» EXERCISES

I. 1. In Germāniae silvis sunt[1] multa genera ferārum quae reliquīs in locīs nōn vīsa sint. 2. Erant[1] itinera duo quibus Helvētī domō discēdere possent. 3. Erat[1] manus nūlla, nūllum oppidum, nūllum praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet. 4. Tōtō frūmentō raptō, domī nihil erat quō mortem prohibēre possent. 5. Rōmānī Galbam ducem creāvērunt et summā celeritāte profectī sunt. 6. Neque erat[1] tantae multitudinis quisquam quī morārī vellet. 7. Germānī nōn iī sunt quī adventum Caesaris vereantur. 8. Cōsulibus occīsīs erant quī[2] vellent cum rēgem creāre. 9. Pāce factā erat nēmō quī arma trādere nōllet. 10. Inter Helvētīōs quis erat quī nōbilior illō esset?

II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one [3]to call me

friend. 6. These are not the men to[4] betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

[Footnote 1: Remember that when the verb «sum» precedes its subject it is translated *there is, there are, there were, etc.*]

[Footnote 2: «erant quî», *there were (some) who*. A wholly indefinite antecedent of «quî» does not need to be expressed.]

[Footnote 3: A relative clause of characteristic or description.]

[Footnote 4: See §389.b.]

* * * * *

«Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, §§527-528»

* * * * *

LESSON LXX

THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM* THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

«395.» The conjunction «cum» has the following meanings and constructions:

«cum» TEMPORAL = *when*, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive «cum» CAUSAL = *since*, followed by the subjunctive «cum» CONCESSIVE = *although*, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after «cum» is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. «Caesarem vîdî tum cum in Galliâ eram», *I saw Cæsar at the time when I was in Gaul.*
2. «Caesar in eôs impetum fêcit cum pâcem peterent», *Cæsar made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.*
3. «Hoc erat difficile cum paucî sine vulneribus essent», *this was difficult, since only a few were without wounds.*
4. «Cum prîmî ôrdinês fûgissent, tamen reliquî fortiter cõsistêbant», *_though the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground_.*
 - a. The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. §389.a). When the «cum» clause states a fact and simply fixes the time at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, «cum in Galliâ eram» fixes the time when I saw Cæsar.
 - b. On the other hand, when the «cum» clause describes the circumstances under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Cæsar made an attack, and the «cum» clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate «cum» by *since*; sometimes it denotes *concession* and «cum» is translated *although*.

«396.» RULE. «Constructions with *Cum*». _The conjunction «cum» means «when», «since», or «although». It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means «when» and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place._

NOTE. «Cum» in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.

«397.» Note the following sentences:

1. «Oppidum erat parvum magnitūdine sed magnum multītūdine hominum», *the town was small in size but great in population.*

2. «Homō erat corpore infirmus sed validus animō», *the man was weak in body but strong in courage.*

a. Observe that «magnitūdine», «multītūdine», «corpore», and «animō» tell *in what respect* something is true. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*.

«398.» RULE. «Ablative of Specification.» _The ablative is used to denote «in what respect» something is true._

«399.» IDIOMS

«aliquem certiorē facere», *to inform some one* (lit. _to make some one more certain_) «certior fieri», *to be informed* (lit. *to be made more certain*) «iter dare», *to give a right of way, allow to pass* «obsidēs inter sē dare», *to give hostages to each other*

«400.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvétii cum patrum nostrorum tempore domo perfecti essent, consulis exercitum in fugam dederant. 2. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, Helvetii alios agris petebant. 3. Caesar cum in citeriore Gallia esset, tamen de Helvetiorum consiliis certior fiebat. 4. Cum Helvetii bello clarissimi essent, Caesar iter per provinciam dare recusavit. 5. Legatus cum haec audisset, Caesarem certior fecit. 6. Cum principes inter se obsides darent, Romani bellum paraverunt. 7. Caesar, cum id nuntiatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci. 8. Ne virtute quidem Galli erant parvi Germanis. 9. Caesar neque corpore neque animo infirmus erat. 10. Illud bellum tum incipit cum Caesar fuit consul.

Observe in each case what mood follows «cum», and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the «cum» clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when («tum cum») I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Caesar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

LESSON LXXI

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE · THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

«401.» Review the word lists in §§510, 511.

«402.» «The Gerund.» Suppose we had to translate the sentence

By overcoming the Gauls Cæsar won great glory

We can see that *overcoming* here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in *-ing*, and that the thought calls for the ablative of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the «gerund», declined as a neuter of the second declension in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.[1] Hence, to decline in Latin the verbal noun *overcoming*, we should use the infinitive for the nominative and the gerund for the other cases, as follows:

Nom. «superâre», *overcoming, to overcome* INFINITIVE *Gen.* «superandî», *of overcoming* } *Dat.* «superandô», *for overcoming* } *Acc.* «superandum», *overcoming* } GERUND *Abl.* «superandô», *by overcoming* }

Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. So the sentence given above becomes in Latin

«Superandô Gallôs Caesar magnam glôriam reportâvit»

[Footnote 1: Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.]

«403.» The gerund[2] is formed by adding «-ndî, -ndô, -ndum, -ndô», to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

PARADIGM OF THE GERUND

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV *Gen.* amandî monendî regendî capiendî audiendî *Dat.* amandô monendô regendô capiendô audiendô *Acc.* amandum monendum regendum capiendum audiendum *Abl.* amandô monendô regendô capiendô audiendô

a. Give the gerund of «cûrô», «dêleô», «sûmô», «iaciô», «veniô».

b. Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice (see §493). Give the gerund of «cônor», «vereor», «sequor», «patior», «partior».

[Footnote 2: The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. §374.d.)]

«404.» «The Gerundive.» The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (§374.d) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate *_the plan of waging war_*, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say «cônsilium gerendî bellum»; or we may use the gerundive and say «cônsilium bellî gerendî», which means, literally, *_the plan of the war to be waged_*, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

«405.» Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

GERUND GERUNDIVE *Gen.* «Spês faciendî pâcem» «Spês faciendae pâcis» *Dat.* «Locus idôneus pugnandô» «Locus idôneus castrîs pônendîs» *A place suitable for _A place suitable for fighting pitching camp* *Acc.* «Mîsit equitês ad însequendum» «Mîsit equitês ad însequendôs hostîs» *He sent horsemen to pursue _He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy_* *Abl.* «Nârrandô fâbulâs magister» «Nârrandîs fâbulîs magister puerîs placuit» *puerîs placuit» The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories boys by telling*

stories

a. We observe

(1) That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective. (2) That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object. (3) That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

«406.» RULE. «Gerund and Gerundive.»

1. _The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns._

2. _The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual._

«407.» RULE. «Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose.» _The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with «ad», or the genitive with «causâ»[3] (= for the sake of), is used to express purpose._

GERUND GERUNDIVE «Ad audiendum vênêrunt» or «Ad urbem videndam vênêrunt» or «Audiendî causâ vênêrunt» «Urbis videndae causâ vênêrunt» *They came to hear They came to see the city*

[Footnote 3: «causâ» always *follows* the genitive.]

NOTE. These sentences might, of course, be written with the subjunctive of purpose,--«vênêrunt ut audîrent»; «vênêrunt ut urbem vidêrent.» In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.

«408.» We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, «equus Galbae», *Galba's horse*. If, now, we wish to express the idea *the horse is Galba's*, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, «equus est Galbae». Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

«409.» RULE. «Predicate Genitive.» _The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of «sum», and is then called the predicate genitive._

«410.» IDIOMS

«alicui negôtium dare», *to employ someone* (lit. *to give business to some one*) «novîs rêbus studêre», *to be eager for a revolution* (lit. *to be eager for new things*) «reî militâris perîtissimus», *very skillful in the art of war* «sê suaque omnia», *themselves and all their possessions*

«411.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum in Galliâ bellum gereret, militibus decimae legiônis maximê fâvit quia reî militâris perîtissimî erant. 2. Sociîs negôtium dedit reî frumentâriae cûrandae. 3. Lêgâti nôn sôlum audiendî causâ sed etiam dicendî causâ vênêrunt. 4. Imperâtor iussit explôrâtôres locum idôneum mûnindô reperîre. 5. Nuper hae gentês novîs rêbus studêbant; mox iîs persuadêbô ut Caesarî sê suaque omnia dêdant. 6. Iubêre est regînae[4] et pârêre est multitudinis.[4] 7. Hôc proeliô factô quîdam ex hostibus ad pâcem petendam venêrunt. 8. Erant quî arma trâdere nôllent. 9. Hostês tam celeriter prôgressî sunt ut spatium pîla in hostîs iaciendî non darêtur. 10. Spatium neque arma capiendî[5] neque auxiliî petendî[5] datum est.

II. 1. These ornaments [6]belong to Cornelia. 2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent [7]to capture the

town. 3. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river. 4. Soon the cavalry will come [8]to seek supplies. 5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle [9]belongs to the general. 7. [10]Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

[Footnote 4: Predicate genitive.]

[Footnote 5: Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?]

[Footnote 6: *belong to = are of.*]

[Footnote 7: Use the gerundive with «ad».]

[Footnote 8: Use the genitive with «causâ». Where should «causâ» stand?]

[Footnote 9: Compare the first sentence.]

[Footnote 10: Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.]

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *EÔ* · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

«412.» Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of «*eô*», *go* (§499).

a. Notice that «*î-*», the root of «*eô*», is changed to «*e-*» before a vowel, excepting in «*iêns*», the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system «*-v-*» is regularly dropped.

[Conjugation given in §499:

PRINCIPAL PARTS «*eô*, *îre*, *îi* (*îvî*), *itum*» (n. perf. part.) PRES. STEM *î-* PERF. STEM *î-* or *îv-* PART. STEM *it-*

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERATIVE SING. PLUR. *Pres.* *eô îmus eam* 2*d Pers.* *î îte îs îtis it eunt* *Impf.* *îbam îrem* *Fut.* *îbô ---* 2*d Pers.* *îtô îtôte* 3*d Pers.* *îtô euntô* *Perf.* *îi* (*îvî*) *ierim* (*îverim*) *Plup.* *ieram* (*îveram*) *îssem* (*îvissem*) *F. P.* *ierô* (*îverô*)

INFINITIVE *Pres.* *îre* *Perf.* *îsse* (*îvisse*) *Fut.* *itûrus*, -a, -um *esse*

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* *iêns*, *gen.* *euntis* (§472) *Fut.* *itûrus*, -a, -um *Ger.* *eundum*

GERUND *Gen.* *eundî* *Dat.* *eundô* *Acc.* *eundum* *Abl.* *eundô*

SUPINE *Acc.* [[*itum*]] *Abl.* [[*itû*]]]

«413.» Learn the meaning and principal parts of the following compounds of «*eô*» with prepositions:

«*ad'êô*, *ad'îre*, *ad'îi*, *ad'itus*», *go to, visit*, with the accusative «*ex'êô*, *ex'îre*, *ex'îi*, *ex'itus*», *go forth*, with «*ex*» or «*dê*» and the ablative of the place from which «*in'êô*, *in'îre*, *in'îi*, *in'itus*», *begin, enter upon*, with the accusative «*red'êô*, *red'îre*, *red'îi*, *red'itus*», *return*, with «*ad*» or «*in*» and the accusative of the place to which «*trâns'êô*, *trâns'îre*, *trâns'îi*, *trâns'itus*», *cross*, with the accusative

«414.» «Indirect Statements in English.» Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes

himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

{ 1. The Gauls are brave Direct statements { 2. The Gauls were brave { 3. The Gauls will be brave

Indirect statements { 1. *He says* that the Gauls *are* brave after a verb in { 2. *He says* that the Gauls *were* brave the present tense { 3. *He says* that the Gauls *will be* brave

Indirect statements { 1. *He said* that the Gauls *were* brave after a verb in { 2. *He said* that the Gauls *had been* brave a past tense { 3. *He said* that the Gauls *would be* brave

We see that in English

a. The indirect statement forms a clause introduced by the conjunction *that*.

b. The verb is finite (cf. §173) and its subject is in the nominative.

c. The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, *He said*.

«415.» «Indirect Statements in Latin.» In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

DIRECT { 1. «Gallî sunt fortês» STATEMENTS { 2. «Gallî erant fortês» { 3. «Gallî erunt fortês»

{ 1. «Dicit» or «Dixit Gallôs esse fortîs» { (*He says* or *He said* { *the Gauls to be brave*)[1] INDIRECT { 2. «Dicit» or «Dixit Gallôs fuisse fortîs» STATEMENTS { (*He says* or *He said* { *the Gauls to have been brave*)[1] { 3. «Dicit» or «Dixit Gallôs futûrôs esse fortîs» { (*He says* or *He said* { *the Gauls to be about to be brave*)[1]

[Footnote 1: These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.]

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

a. There is no conjunction corresponding to *that*.

b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.

c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

«416.» RULE. «Indirect Statements.» _When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive._

«417.» «Tenses of the Infinitive.» When the sentences in §415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, «sunt» became «esse», «erant» became «fuisse», and «erunt» became «futûrôs esse».

«418.» RULE. «Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements.» _A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive._

NOTE. When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

«419.» RULE. «Verbs followed by Indirect Statements.» _The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of «saying», «telling», «knowing», «thinking», and «perceiving»._

«420.» Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are:

- a. Verbs of saying and telling: «dícô, dícere, dîxî, dictus», *say* «negô, negâre, negâvî, negâtus», *deny, say not* «nûntiô, nûntiâre, nûntiâvî, nûntiâtus», *announce* «respondeô, respondêre, respondî, respônsus», *reply*
- b. Verbs of knowing: «cognôscô, cognôscere, cognôvî, cognitus», *learn, (in the perf.) know* «sciô, scîre, scîvî, scîtus», *know*
- c. Verbs of thinking: «arbitror, arbitrârî, arbitrâtus sum», *think, consider* «exîstimô, exîstimâre, exîstimâvî, exîstimâtus», *think, believe* «iûdicô, iûdicâre, iûdicâvî, iûdicâtus», *judge, decide* «putô, putâre, putâvî, putâtus», *reckon, think* «spêrô, spêrâre, spêrâvî, spêrâtus», *hope*
- d. Verbs of perceiving: «audiô, audîre, audîvî, audîtus», *hear* «sentiô, sentîre, sênsî, sênsus», *feel, perceive* «videô, vidêre, vîdî, vîsus», *see* «intellegô, intellegere, intellêxî, intellêctus», *_understand, perceive_*

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.

«421.» IDIOMS «postrîdiê eius diê», *on the next day* (lit. *on the next day of that day*) «initâ aestâte», *at the beginning of summer* «memoriâ tenêre», *to remember* (lit. *to hold by memory*) «per explôrâtôrês cognôscere», *to learn through scouts*

«422.» EXERCISES

I. 1. It, îmus, îte, îre. 2. Euntî, iisse *or* îsse, îbunt, eunt. 3. Eundi, ut eant, îbitis, îs. 4. Nê îrent, î, îbant, ierat. 5. Caesar per explorâtores cognôvit Gallôs flûmen trânsîsse. 6. Rômânî audîvêrunt Helvétîôs initâ aestâte dê fînibus suîs exitûrôs esse. 7. Legâtî respondêrunt nêminem ante Caesarem illam însulam adîsse. 8. Prîncipês Gallôrûm dîcunt sê nûllum cônsilium contrâ Caesaris imperium initûrôs esse. 9. Arbitrâmur potentiam rêgînae esse maiôrem quam cîvium. 10. Rômânî negant se lîbertâtem Gallîs êreptûrôs esse. 11. Hîs rêbus cognitîs sênsimus lêgâtôs non vênisse ad pâcem petendam. 12. Helvétii sciunt Rômânôs priôrês victôriâs memoriâ tenêre. 13. Socî cum intellegerent multôs vulnerârî, statuêrunt in suôs fînîs redîre. 14. Aliquis nûntiâvit Mârcum cônsolem creâtum esse.

II. 1. The boy is slow. He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. We think that the army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The next day we learned through scouts that the enemy's town was ten miles off.[2] 5. The king replied that the ornaments belonged to[3] the queen.

[Footnote 2: *to be off, to be distant, «abesse».*]

[Footnote 3: Latin, *were of* (§409).]

[Illustration: TUBA]

LESSON LXXIII

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERÔ* THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

«423.» Review the word lists in §§513, 514.

«424.» Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb «ferô», *bear* (§498).

1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of *ferô*, *bear*:

«ad'ferô, adfer're, at'tulî, adlâtus», *bring to; report* «côn'ferô, cônfer're, con'tulî, conlâtus», *bring together, collect* «dê'ferô, dêfer're, dê'tulî, dêlâtus», *_bring to; report; grant, confer_* «în'ferô, îinfer're, in'tulî, inlâtus», *bring in, bring against* «re'ferô, refer're, ret'tulî, relâtus», *bear back, report*

[Conjugation given in §498:

PRINCIPAL PARTS «ferô, ferre, tulî, lâtus» PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM tul- PART. STEM lâ-

INDICATIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* ferô ferimus feror ferimur fers fertis ferris, -re ferimimî fert ferunt fertur feruntur *Impf.* ferêbam ferêbar *Fut.* feram, ferês, etc. ferar, ferêris, etc. *Perf.* tulî lâtus, -a, -um sum *Plup.* tuleram lâtus, -a, -um eram *F. P.* tulerô lâtus, -a, -um erô

SUBJUNCTIVE *Pres.* feram, ferâs, etc. ferar, ferâris, etc. *Impf.* ferrem ferrer *Perf.* tulerim lâtus, -a, -um sim *Plup.* tuissem lâtus, -a, -um essem

IMPERATIVE *Pres. 2d Pers.* fer ferte ferre feriminî *Fut. 2d Pers.* fertô fertôte fertor *3d Pers.* fertô ferunto fertor feruntor

INFINITIVE *Pres.* ferre ferrî *Perf.* tulisse lâtus, -a, -um esse *Fut.* lâtûrus, -a, -um esse ----

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* ferêns, -entis *Pres.* ---- *Fut.* lâtûrus, -a, -um *Ger.* ferendus, -a, -um *Perf.* ---- *Perf.* lâtus, -a, -um

GERUND *Gen.* ferendî *Dat.* ferendô *Acc.* ferendum *Abl.* ferendô

SUPINE (Active Voice) *Acc.* [[lâtum]] *Abl.* [[lâtû]]]

«425.» The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. §153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. _The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object._ A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. «Haec rês exercituî magnam calamitâtem attulit», _this circumstance brought great disaster to the army._
2. «Germânî Gallîs bellum îinferunt», _the Germans make war upon the Gauls._
3. «Hae cōpiae proeliô nôn intererant», _these troops did not take part in the battle._
4. «Equitês fugientibus hostibus occurrunt», _the horsemen meet the fleeing enemy._
5. «Galba cōpiîs filium praefêcit», _Galba put his son in command of the troops._

In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

«426.» RULE. «Dative with Compounds.» _Some verbs compounded with «ad», «ante», «con», «dê», «in»,

«inter», «ob», «post», «prae», «prô», «sub», «super», admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative._

NOTE 1. Among such verbs are[1]

«ad'ferô, adfer're, at'tulî, adlâtus», *bring to; report* «ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fuî, adfutû'rus», *assist; be present*
 «dê'ferô, dêfer're, dê'tulî, dêlâtus», *report; grant, confer* «dê'sum, dees'se, dê'fuî,----», *be wanting, be lacking*
 «în'ferô, îinfer're, in'tulî, inlâtus», *bring against, bring upon* «inter'sum, interes'se, inter'fuî, interfutû'rus», *take part in*
 «occur'rô, occur'rere, occur'rî, occur'sus», *run against, meet* «praefî'ciô, praefî'cere, praefê'cî, praefec'tus», *_appoint over, place in command of_* «prae'sum, praees'se, prae'fuî, ----», *be over, be in command*

[Footnote 1: But the accusative with «ad» or «in» is used with some of these, when the idea of *motion to or against* is strong.]

«427.» IDIOMS

«graviter» or «molestê ferre», *to be annoyed at, to be indignant at*, followed by the accusative and infinitive
 «sê cōferre ad» or «in», with the accusative, *to betake one's self to* «alicui bellum îferre», *to make war upon some one*
 «pedem referre», *to retreat* (lit. *to bear back the foot*)

«428.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Fer, ferent, ut ferant, ferunt. 2. Ferte, ut ferrent, tulisse, tulerant. 3. Tulimus, ferêns, lâtus esse, ferre. 4. Cum nâvigia insulae adpropinquârent, barbarî terrôre commôtî pedem referre cōnâtî sunt. 5. Gallî molestê ferêbant Rômânôs agrôs vastâre. 6. Caesar sociîs imperâvit nê fînitimis suîs bellum îferrent. 7. Explorâtôrês, qui Caesarî occurrêrunt, dîxêrunt exercitum hostium vulneribus dêfessum sêsê in alium locum contulisse. 8. Hostes sciêbant Rômânôs frûmentô egêre et hanc rem Caesarî summum perîculum adlâtûram esse. 9. Impedîmentîs in ûnum locum conlâtîs, aliquî mîlitum flûmen quod nôn longê aberat trânsiêrunt. 10. Hôs rêx hortâtus est ut ôrâculum adîrent et rês audîtâs ad sê referrent. 11. Quem imperâtor illî legiônî praefêcit? Pûblius illî legiônî pracerat. 12. Cum esset Caesar in citeriôre Galliâ, crêbrî ad eum[2] rûmôrês adferêbantur litterîsque quoque certior fîêbat Gallôs obsidês inter sê dare.

II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Cæsar's allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make war upon Cæsar's allies. 3. Publius did not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Cæsar did not place you in command of the cohort to bring[3] disaster upon the army.

[Footnote 2: Observe that when «adferô» denotes *motion to*, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182.]

[Footnote 3: Not the infinitive. (Cf. §352.)]

LESSON LXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

«429.» Review the word lists in §§517, 518.

«430.» When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. §414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

DIRECT QUESTION INDIRECT QUESTION *Who conquered the Gauls? He asked who conquered the Gauls*

a. An indirect question depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as «petô», «postulô», «quaerô», «rogô») or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. §420.)

«431.» Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

DIRECT INDIRECT

«Quis Gallôs vincit?» { a. «Rogat quis Gallôs vincat» *Who is conquering the* { *He asks who is conquering the Gauls?* { *Gauls* { b. «Rogavit quis Gallôs vinceret» { *He asked who was conquering* { *the Gauls*

{ a. «Rogat ubi sit Rôma» «Ubî est Rôma?» { *He asks where Rome is* *Where is Rome?* { b. «Rogâvit ubi esset Rôma» { *He asked where Rome was*

{ a. «Rogat num Caesar Gallôs vîcerit» { *He asks whether Cæsar conquered* «Caesarne Gallôs vîcit?» { *the Gauls* *Did Cæsar conquer the* { b. «Rogâvit num Caesar Gallôs Gauls?» { «vîcisset» { *He asked whether Cæsar had* { *conquered the Gauls*

a. The verb in a direct question is in the indicative mood, but the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.

b. The tense of the subjunctive follows the rules for tense sequence.

c. Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that *yes-or-no* direct questions (cf. §210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by «num», *whether*.

«432.» RULE. «Indirect Questions.» _In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence._

«433.» IDIOMS

«dê tertiâ vigiliâ», *about the third watch* «iniûriâs alicui îfferre», *to inflict injuries upon some one* «facere verba prô», *with the ablative, to speak in behalf of* «in reliquum tempus», *for the future*

«434.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Rêx rogâvit quid légâtî postulârent et cûr ad sê vênissent. 2. Quaesîvit quoque num nec recentîs iniûriâs nec dubiam Rômânôrum amîcitiâ memoriâ tenêrent. 3. Vidêtisne quae oppida hostês oppugnâverint? 4. Nônne scîtis cûr Gallî sub montem sêse contulerint? 5. Audîvimus quâs iniûriâs tibi Germânî intulissent. 6. Dê tertiâ vigiliâ imperâtor mîsit hominês quî cognôscerent quae esset nâtûra montis. 7. Prô hîs ôrâtor verba fêcit et rogâvit cûr cônsulês nâvîs ad plênem summî periculî locum mittere vellent. 8. Légâtîs convocâtîs dêmônstrâvit quid fierî vellet. 9. Nûntius referêbat quid in Gallôrum conciliô dê armîs trândendîs dictum esset. 10. Moneô nê in reliquum tempus peditês et equitês trâns flûmen dúcâs.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys returned home.

LESSON LXXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH

«435.» Review the word lists in §§521, 522.

«436.» Observe the following sentences:

1. «Explôrâtôrês locum castrís dêlêgêrunt», _the scouts chose a place for a camp._
2. «Hoc erat magnô impedîmentô Gallís», *this was* (for) _a great hindrance to the Gauls._
3. «Duâs legiônês praesidiô castrís relîquit», _he left two legions as (lit. for) a guard to the camp._

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the _purpose or end for which_ something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are «castrís», «impedîmentô», and «praesidiô». In the second and third sentences we find a second dative expressing the _person or thing affected_ («Gallís» and «castrís»). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of *for which* and *to which*. (Cf. §43.)

«437.» RULE. «Dative of Purpose or End.» _The dative is used to denote the «purpose or end for which», often with another dative denoting the «person or thing affected»._

«438.» IDIOMS

«cônsilium omittere», *to give up a plan* «locum castrís dêligere», *to choose a place for a camp* «alicui magnô ûsuî esse», *to be of great advantage to some one* (lit. *for great advantage to some one*)

«439.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Rogâvit cûr illae cõpiae relictæ essent. Respondêrunt illâs cõpiâs esse praesidiô castrís. 2. Caesar mîsit explôrâtôrês ad locum dêligendum castrís. 3. Quisque exîstimâvit ipsum nômen Caesaris magnô terrôri barbarís futûrum esse. 4. Prîmâ lûce îdem exercitus proelium âcre commîsit, sed gravia suõrum vulnera magnæ cûrae imperâtõri erant. 5. Rêx respondit amîcitiã populî Rômânî sibi òrnâmentô et praesidiô dêbêre esse. 6. Quis praeerat equitâtui quem auxiliô Caesarî sociî mîserant? 7. Aliquibus rês secundae sunt summae calamitâtî et rês adversae sunt mîrô ûsuî. 8. Gallís magnô ad pugnam erat impedîmentô quod equitâtus â dextrô cornû premêbat. 9. Memoria prîstinae virtûtis nõn minus quam metus hostium erat nostrís magnô ûsuî. 10. Tam dênsa erat silva ut prõgredi nõn possent.

II. 1. I advise you [1]to give up the plan [2]of making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know [3]where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Cæsar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great [4]that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Cæsar inflicted severe[5] punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

[Footnote 1: Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. §366.)]

[Footnote 2: Express by the genitive of the gerundive.]

[Footnote 3: Indirect question.]

[Footnote 4: A clause of result.]

[Footnote 5: «gravis, -e.»]

LESSON LXXVI

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION

«440.» Review the word lists in §§524, 525.

«441.» Observe the English sentences

(1) *A man «of» great courage*, or (2) *A man «with» great courage*

(3) *A forest «of» tall trees*, or (4) *A forest «with» tall trees*

Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions *of* and *with*.

In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar.

The prepositions *of* and *with* suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

(1) «Vir magnae virtûtis», or (2) «Vir magnâ virtûte» (3) «Silva altârûm arborûm», or (4) «Silva altîs arboribus»

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, *a man of courage*, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. _In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used_, as above.

a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that *numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive* and *descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative*. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

«442.» EXAMPLES

1. «Fossa duodecim pedum», *a ditch of twelve feet*.

2. «Homô magnîs pedibus et parvô capite», *a man with big feet and a small head*.

3. «Rêx erat vir summâ audâciâ» or «rêx erat vir summae audâciae», *the king was a man of the greatest boldness*.

«443.» RULE. «Genitive of Description.» _Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective._

«444.» RULE. «Ablative of Description.» _Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective._

«445.» RULE. «Genitive or Ablative of Description.» _Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective._

«446.» IDIOMS

«*Helvêtiîs in animô est*», *the Helvetii intend*, (lit. *it is in mind to the Helvetians*) «*in mâttrimônium dare*», *to give in marriage* «*nihil posse*», *to have no power* «*fossam perdûcere*», *to construct a ditch* (lit. *to lead a ditch through*)

«447.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Mîlitês fossam decem pedum per eôrum fînîs perdûxêrunt. 2. Prînceps Helvêtiôrum, vir summae audâciae, prîncipibus gentium fînitimârûm sorôrês in mâttrimônium dedit. 3. Eôrum amîcitiâ cônfirmâre voluit quô facilius Rômânîs bellum îfferret. 4. Germanî et Gallî nôn erant eiusdem gentis. 5. Omnês ferê Germânî erant magnîs corporum vîribus.[1] 6. Gallî qui oppidum fortiter dêfendêbant saxa ingentis magnitûdinis dê mûrô iaciêbant. 7. Cum Caesar ab explôrâtôribus quaereret quî illud oppidum incolerent, explôrâtôrês respondêrunt eôs esse homines summâ virtûte et magnô côniliô. 8. Moenia vîgintî pedum â sinistrâ parte, et â dextrâ parte flûmen magna altitûdinis oppidum dêfendêbant. 9. Cum Caesar in Galliam pervênisset, erat rûmor Helvêtiîs in animô esse iter per prôvinciam Rômânâ facere. 10. Caesar, ut eôs ab finibus Rômânîs prohibêret, mûnitiônem [2] multa mîlia passuum longam fêcit.

II. 1. Cæsar was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king's daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

[Footnote 1: From «*vîs*». (Cf. §468.)]

[Footnote 2: Genitives and ablatives of description are adjective phrases. When we use an *adverbial* phrase to tell *how long* or *how high* or *how deep* anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. §336.) For example, in the sentence above «*multa mîlia passuum*» is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying «*longam*». If we should omit «*longam*» and say *a fortification of many miles*, the genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying «*mûnitiônem*» would be used, as «*mûnitiônem multôrum mîlium passuum*».]

[Illustration: GLADII]

LESSON LXXVII

REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

«448.» There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (§§76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (§65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (§28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (§224).

«449.» The relation expressed by the «*genitive*» is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition *of*. It is used to express

{ *a*. As attributive (§38). 1. Possession { { *b*. In the predicate (§409).

2. The whole of which a part is taken (partitive genitive) (§331).

3. Quality or description (§§443, 445).

«450.» The relation expressed by the «dative» is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions *to* or *for* when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express

{ *a.* With intransitive verbs and with { transitive verbs in connection with a { direct object in the accusative (§45). 1. The indirect object { *b.* With special intransitive verbs (§154). { *c.* With verbs compounded with «ad», «ante», { «con», «dê», «in», «inter», «ob», «post», { «prae», «prô», «sub», «super» (§426).

2. The object to which the quality of an adjective is directed (§143).

3. The purpose, or end for which, often with a second dative denoting the person or thing affected (§437).

«451.» The «accusative» case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive verb (§37).

2. The predicate accusative together with the direct object after verbs of *making, choosing, falling, showing,* and the like (§392).

3. The subject of the infinitive (§214).

4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (§340).

5. The duration of time and the extent of space (§336).

6. The place to which (§§263, 266).

«452.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Mîlitês quôs vîdimus dîxêrunt imperium bellî esse Caesaris imperâtôris. 2. Helvétîi statuêrunt quam[1] maximum numerum equôrum et carrôrum cògere. 3. Tôtûs Galliae Helvétîi plûrimum valuêrunt. 4. Multâs hôrâs âcritèr pugnâtum est neque quisquam poterat vidêre hostem fugientem. 5. Virî summae virtûtis hostîs decem mîlia passuum îsecûtî sunt. 6. Caesar populô Rômânô persuâsit ut sê cònsulem creâret. 7. Victôria exercitûs erat semper imperâtôri grâtissima. 8. Trîduum iter fêcêrunt et Genâvam, in oppidum[2] hostium, pervênêrunt. 9. Caesar audîvit Germânôs bellum Gallîs intulisse. 10. Magnô ûsuî mîlitibus Caesaris erat quod priôribus proeliîs sêsê exercuerant.

II. 1. One[3] of the king's sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished[4] to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Cæsar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan [5]of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it [6]by a twelve-foot wall.

[Footnote 1: What is the force of «quam» with superlatives?]

[Footnote 2: «urbs» or «oppidum», appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition.]

[Footnote 3: What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive?]

[Footnote 4: What mood? (Cf. §390.)]

[Footnote 5: Use the gerund or gerundive.]

[Footnote 6: Latin, *by a wall of twelve feet.*]

LESSON LXXVIII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

«453.» The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions *with* (or *by*), *from* (or *by*), and *in* (or *at*). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*): 1. Cause (§102) 2. Means (§103) 3. Accompaniment (§104) 4. Manner (§105) 5. Measure of difference (§317) 6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (§381) 7. Description or quality (§§444, 445) 8. Specification (§398)

II. Ablative rendered *from* (or *by*): 1. Place from which (§§179, 264) 2. Ablative of separation (§180) 3. Personal agent with a passive verb (§181) 4. Comparison without «*quam*» (§309)

III. Ablative rendered *in* (or *at*): 1. Place at or in which (§§265, 266) 2. Time when or within which (§275)

«454.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallî locîs superiôribus occupâtîs itinere exercitum prohibêre cônantur. 2. Omnês oppidânî ex oppidô êgressî salûtem fugâ petere incêpêrunt. 3. Caesar docet sê mîlitum vîtam suâ salûte habêre multô câriôrem. 4. Cum celerius omnium opîniône pervênisset, hostês ad eum obsidês mîsêrunt. 5. Vîcus in valle positus montibus altissimîs undique continêtur. 6. Plûrimum inter Gallôs haec gêns et virtûte et hominum numerô valêbat. 7. Secundâ vigiliâ nûllô certô ôrdine neque imperiô ê castrîs êgressî sunt. 8. Duâbus legiônibus Genâvae relictîs, proximô diê cum reliquîs domum profectus est. 9. Erant itinera duo quibus itineribus Helvétîi domô exîre possent. 10. Rêx erat summâ audâciâ et magnâ apud populum potentiâ. 11. Gallî timôre servitûtis commôtî bellum parâbant. 12. Caesar monet lêgâtôs ut contineant militês, nê studiô pugnandî aut spê praedae longius[1] prôgrediantur. 13. Bellum âcerrimum â Caesare in Gallôs gestum est.

II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is [2]ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Cæsar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect[3] yourself from these enemies. 8. [4]After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.

[Footnote 1: «longius», *too far*. (Cf. §305.)]

[Footnote 2: Latin, *by ten thousands of paces.*]

[Footnote 3: «dêfendere».]

[Footnote 4: Ablative absolute.]

LESSON LXXIX

REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

«455.» The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (§§402, 406.1).

«456.» The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (§406.2).

«457.» The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

a. As subject or predicate nominative (§216).

b. To complete the predicate with verbs of incomplete predication (complementary infinitive) (§215).

c. As object with subject accusative after verbs of *_wishing, commanding, forbidding_*, and the like (§213).

II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of *saying* and *mental action*. The subject is in the accusative (§§416, 418, 419).

«458.» The subjunctive is used:

1. To denote purpose (§§349, 366, 372).

2. To denote consequence or result (§§385, 386).

3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (§390).

4. In «cum» clauses of time, cause, and concession (§396).

5. In indirect questions (§432).

«459.» EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar, cum pervênisset, militês hortâbâtur nê cõsilium oppidî capiendi omitterent. 2. Rêx, castrîs prope oppidum positîs, mîsit explôrâtôrês quî cognõscerent ubi exercitus Rõmanus esset. 3. Nêmo relinquêbâtur quî arma ferre posset. 4. Nûntiî vîdêrunt ingentem armõrum multitudinem dê mûrõ in fossani iactam esse. 5. Dux suõs trãnsîre flûmen iussit. Trãnsîre autem hoc flûmen erat difficillimum. 6. Rõmânî cum hanc calamitãtem molestê ferrant, tamen terga vertere recûsãvêrunt. 7. Hõc rûmõre audîtõ, tantus terror omnium animõs occupãvit ut nê fortissimî quidem proelium committere vellent. 8. Erant quî putãrent tempus annî idõneum nõn esse itinerî faciendõ. 9. Tam âcriter ab utraque parte pugnãbâtur ut multa mîlia hominum occîderentur. 10. Quid timês? Timeõ nê Rõmânîs in animõ sit tõtã Galliam superãre et nõbîs iniûriãs inferre.

II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Cæsar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Cæsar would pursue them. 6. Cæsar [1]asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not [2]to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts [3]to choose a place for a camp.

[Footnote 1: «quaerere ab».]

[Footnote 2: Not infinitive.]

[Footnote 3: Use the gerundive with «ad».]

READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

«How to Translate.» You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.
3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.
4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words *in the same order as the Latin words*. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.
5. Be careful to
 - a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.
 - b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.
 - c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.
 - d. *Make sense*. If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.
6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.

«The Parts of a Sentence.» You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *_wasting his time_* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, *the words who wastes his time_* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called *_subordinate conjunctions_*. They are not very numerous, and you

will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as _when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that_, etc. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.

[Illustration: HERCULES]

THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyæ. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

[Illustration: HERCULES ET SERPENTES]

LIII.[1] THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Dî[2] grave supplicium sūmmit de malîs, sed î quî lêgibus[3] deôrum pârent, etiam post mortem cûrantur. Illa vîta dîs[2] erat grâtissima quae hominibus miserîs ûtilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiôrum summum erat immortâlîtâs. Illud praemium Herculî datum est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, mâtêr Alcêmêna, et omnium hominum validissimus fuisse dîcitur. Sed Iûnô, rêgîna deôrum, eum, adhûc înfantem, interficere studêbat; nam eî[1] et[2] Herculês et Alcêmêna erant invîsî. Itaque mîsit duâs serpentîs, utramque saevissimam, quae mediâ nocte domum[3] Alcêmênae vênêrunt. Ibi Herculês, cum frâtre suô, nôn in lectulô sed in scûtô ingentî dormiêbat. Iam audâcês serpentês adpropinquâverant, iam scûtum movêbant. Tum frâter, terrôre commôtus, magnâ vôte mâtrem vocâvit, sed Herculês ipse, fortior quam frâter, statim ingentîs serpentîs manibus suîs rapuit et interfêcit.

[Footnote 1: This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read.]

[Footnote 2: «Dî» and «dîs» are from «deus». Cf. §468.]

[Footnote 3: «lêgibus», §501.14.]

[Footnote 1: «eî», *to her*, referring to Juno.]

[Footnote 2: «et ... et», *both ... and*.]

[Footnote 3: «domum», §501.20.]

LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ

Herculês â puerô[1] corpus suum gravissimîs et difficillimîs labôribus exercêbat et hóc modô vîrês[2] suâs cõfirmâvit. Iam adulêscêns Thêbîs[3] habitâbat. Ibi Creôn quîdam erat rêx. Minyae, gêns validissima, erant fñitimî Thêbânîs, et, quia ôlim Thêbânôs vîcerant, quotannîs lêgâtôs mittêbant et vectîgal postulâbant. Herculês autem cõstituit civîs suôs hóc vectîgâlî liberâre et dixit rêgî, "Dâ mihi exercitum tuum et ego hôs superbôs hostîs superâbô." Hanc condiçionem rêx nôn recûsâvit, et Herculês nûntiôs in omnîs partis dîmîsit et cõpiâs coêgit.[4] Tum tempore opportûnissimô proelium cum Minyîs commîsit. Diû pugnâtum est, sed dênique illî impetum Thêbânôrum sustinêre nôn potuêrunt et terga vertêrunt fugamque cêpêrunt.

[Footnote 1: «â puerô», *from boyhood.*]

[Footnote 2: «vîrês», *from «vîs».* Cf. §468.]

[Footnote 3: «Thêbîs», §501.36.1.]

[Footnote 4: «coêgit», *from «côgô».*]

HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelium Creôn rêx, tantâ victôriâ laetus, filiam suam Herculî in mâttrimônium dedit. Thêbîs Herculês cum uxôre suâ diû vîvêbat et ab omnibus magnopere amâbâtur; sed post multôs annôs subitô [1] in furôrem incidit et ipse suâ manû liberôs suôs interfêcit. Post breve tempus [2] ad sânitâtem reductus tantum scelus expiâre cupiêbat et cõstituit ad ôrâculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem ôrâculum erat omnium clârissimum. Ibi sedêbat fêmina quaedam quae Pythia appellâbâtur. Ea cõsiliu dabat iîs quî ad ôrâculum veniêbant.

[Footnote 1: «in furôrem incidit», *went mad.*]

[Footnote 2: «ad sânitâtem reductus», *lit. led back to sanity.* What in good English?]

[Illustration: HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT]

LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS[1] · HE STRANGLES THE NEME´AN LION

Itaque Herculês Pythiae tõtam rem dêmonstrâvit nec scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Herculês fñem fêcit, Pythia iussit eum ad urbem Tîryntha[2] discêdere et ibi rêgî Eurystheô sêsê committere. Quae[3] ubi audîvit, Herculês ad illam urbem statim contendit et Eurystheô sê in servitûtem trâdidit et dîxit, "Quid prîmum, Ô rêx, mê facere iubês?" Eurystheus, quî perterrêbâtur vî et corpore ingentî Herculîs et eum occidî[4] studêbat, ita respondit: "Audî, Herculês! Multa mira[5] nârantur dê leône saevissimô quî hóc tempore in valle Nemaêâ omnia vâstat. Iubeô tê, virôrum omnium fortissimum, illô mônstrô hominês liberâre." Haec verba Herculî maximê placuêrunt. "Properâbo," inquit, "et parêbô imperiô[6] tuô." Tum in silvâs in quibus leô habitâbat statim iter fêcit. Mox feram vîdit et plûrîs impetûs fêcit; frûstrâ tamen, quod neque sagittîs neque ûllô aliô têlô mônstrum vulnerâre potuit. Dênique Herculês saevum leônem suîs ingentibus bracchiîs rapuit et faucîs eius omnibus vîribus compressit. Hóc modô brevî tempore eum interfêcit. Tum corpus leônîs ad oppidum in umerîs reportâvit et pellem postea prô[7] veste gerêbat. Omnês autem quô eam regiõnem incolêbant, ubi fâmam dê morte leônîs ingentîs accêpêrunt, erant laetissimî et Herculem laudâbant verbîs amplissimîs.

[Footnote 1: «Eu-rys´theus» (pronounced *U-ris´thûs*) was king of *Tî´ryns*, a Grecian city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric times.]

[Footnote 2: «Tîryntha», the acc. case of «Tîryns», a Greek noun.]

[Footnote 3: «Quae», obj. of «audîvit». It is placed first to make a close connection with the preceding

sentence. This is called a connecting relative.]

[Footnote 4: «occîdî», pres. pass. infin.]

[Footnote 5: «mîra», *marvelous things*, the adj. being used as a noun. Cf. «omnia», in the next line.]

[Footnote 6: «imperîo», §501.14.]

[Footnote 7: «prô», *for, instead of.*]

LVI. SLAYING THE LERNE´AN HYDRA

Deinde Herculês ab Eurystheô iussus est Hydram occîdere. Itaque cum amîcô Iolâo[1] contendit ad palûdem Lernaeam ubi Hydra incolêbat. Hoc autem mônstrum erat serpêns ingêns quae novem capita habêbat. Mox is mônstrum repperit et summô[2] cum perîculô collum eius sinistrâ manû rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextrâ manû capita novem absçidere incêpit, sed frûstrâ labôrâbat, quod quotiêns hoc fêcerat totiêns alia nova capita vidêbat. Quod[3] ubi vîdit, statuit capita ignî cremâre. Hôc modô octô capita dêlêvit, sed extrênum caput vulnerârî nôn potuit, quod erat immortâle. Itaque illud sub ingentî saxô Herculês posuit et ita victôriam reportâvit.

[Footnote 1: «Iolâo», abl. of *I-o-lâ´us*, the hero's best friend.]

[Footnote 2: Note the emphatic position of this adjective.]

[Footnote 3: «Quod ubi», *when he saw this*, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3.]

LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheô mors Hydrae nuntiata est, summus terror animum eius occupavit. Itaque iussit Herculem capere et ad sê reportâre cervum quendam; nam minimê cupîvit tantum virum in rêgnô suô tenêre. Hie autem cervus dîcêbâtur aurea cornua et pedês multô[1] celeriôrês ventô[2] habêre. Prîmum Herculês vestîgia animâlis petîvit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vîdit, omnibus vîribus currere incêpit. Per plûrimôs diês contendit nec noctû cessâvit. Dênique postquam per tôtum annum cucurrerat--ita dîcitur--cervum iam dêfessum cêpit et ad Eurystheum portâvit.

Tum vêrô iussus est Herculês aprum quendam capere quî illô tempore agrôs Erymanthiôs vâstâbat et hominês illîus locî magnopere perterrêbat. Herculês laetê negôtium suscêpit et in Arcadiam celeriter sê recêpit. Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem; simul atque Herculem vîdit, statim quam[3] celerrimê fûgit et metû perterritus in fossam altam sêsê abdidit. Herculês tamen summâ cum difficultâte eum extrâxit, nec aper ûllô modô sêsê liberâre potuit, et vîvus ad Eurystheum portâtus est.

[Footnote 1: «multô», §501.27.]

[Footnote 2: «ventô», §501.34.]

[Footnote 3: «quam». What is the force of «quam» with a superlative?]

LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGÉ´AN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

Deinde Eurystheus Herculî hunc labôrem multô graviôrem imperâvit. Augêas[1] quîdam, quî illô tempore rêgnum Êlidis[2] obtinêbat, tria mîlia boum[3] habêbat. Hî[4] ingentî stabulô continêbantur. Hoc stabulum, quod per trîgintâ annôs nôn pûrgâtum erat, Herculês intrâ spatium ûnûs diêi pûrgâre iussus est. Ille negôtium

alacriter suscepit, et primum labore gravissimo maximam fossam fodit per quam fluminis aquam de montibus ad murum stabuli duxit. Tum partem parvam muri delavit et aquam in stabulum immisit. Hoc modo finis operis fecit uno die facillime.

Post paucos dies Hercules ad oppidum Stymphalum iter fecit; nam Eurystheus iusserat eum avis Stymphalides occidere. Hae aves rostra ferrea habebant et homines miseris devorabant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervenit, lacum vidit in quo aves incolabant. Nullum tamen modo Hercules avibus adpropinquare potuit; lacus enim non ex aqua sed est limo constitit.[5] Denique autem aves [6]de aliqua causa perterritae in auras volaverunt et magna pars earum sagittis Herculis occisa est.

[Footnote 1: «Augêas», pronounced in English *Aw-jê'as*.]

[Footnote 2: «Êlîdis», gen. case of «Êlis», a district of Greece.]

[Footnote 3: «boum», gen. plur. of «bôs». For construction see §501.11.]

[Footnote 4: «ingenti stabulo», abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say *in a huge stable*.]

[Footnote 5: «constitit», from «consto».]

[Footnote 6: «de aliqua causa perterritae», *_frightened for some reason_*.]

[Illustration: HERCULES ET TAURUS]

LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portare vivum ex insula Crêta taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur navem conscendit--nam ventus erat idoneus--atque statim solvit. Postquam triduum navigavit, incolumis insulae adpropinquavit. Deinde, postquam omnia parata sunt, contendit ad eam regionem quam taurus vexabat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ulla metu cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingenti labore monstrum ad navem traxit atque cum hac praeda ex insula discessit.

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOMEDES

Postquam ex insula Crêta domum pervenit, Hercules ab Eurystheo in Thraciam missus est. Ibi Diomedes quidam, vir saevissimus, regnum obtinebat et omnes a finibus suis prohibebat. Hercules iussus erat equos Diomedis rapere et ad Eurystheum ducere. Hi autem equi homines miserrimos devorabant de quibus rex supplicium sumere cupiebat. Hercules ubi pervenit, primum equos a rege postulavit, sed rex eos dedere recusavit. Deinde ille ira commotus regem occidit et corpus eius equis tradidit. Itaque is qui antea multos necaverat, ipse eodem supplicio necatus est. Et equi, nuper saevissima animalia, postquam dominum suum corpus devoraverunt, mansueti erant.

LX. THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS

Gens Amazonum[1] dicitur[2] omnino ex mulieribus fuisse. Hae cum viris proelium committere non verebantur. Hippolyte, Amazonum regina, balteum habuit pulcherrimum. Hunc balteum possidere filia Eurysthei vehementer cupiebat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum in Amazonas facere. Ille multum cum copiis navem conscendit et paucis diebus in Amazonum finis pervenit, ac balteum postulavit. Eum tradere ipsa Hippolyte quidem cupivit; reliquis tamen Amazonibus[3] persuadere non potuit. Postridie Hercules proelium commisit. Multas horas utrimque quam fortissime pugnatum est Denique tamen mulieres terga vertierunt et fuga salutem petierunt. Multae autem captae sunt, in quo numero erat ipsa Hippolyte. Hercules postquam balteum accepit, omnibus captivis libertatem dedit.

[Footnote 1: A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.]

[Footnote 2: «omnînô», etc., *to have consisted entirely of women.*]

[Footnote 3: «Amâzonibus», §501.14.]

[Illustration: HERCULES ET CERBERUS]

THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS

Iamque ûnus modo ê duodecim labôribus relinquêbâtur sed inter omnîs hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum[4] ex Orcô in lûcem trahere. Ex Orcô autem nêmo anteâ reverterat. Praetereâ Cerberus erat mônstrum maximê horribile et tria capita habêbat. Herculês postquam imperia Eurystheî accêpit, statim profectus est et in Orcum dêscendit. Ibi vêrô nôn sine summô periculô Cerberum manibus rapuit et ingentî cum labôre ex Orcô in lûcem et adurbem Eurystheî trâxit.

Sic duodecim laborês illî[5] intrâ duodecim annôs cônfectî sunt. Dênum post longam vîtam Herculês â deîs receptus est et Iuppiter filiô suô dedit immortalitatem.

[Footnote 4: The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead.]

[Footnote 5: «illî», *those famous.*]

[Illustration: PUERI ROMANI]

P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY[1]

LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPEII

P. Cornêlius Lentulus,[2] adulêscêns Rômânus, amplissimâ familiâ[3] nâtus est; nam pater eius, Mârcus, erat dux perîtissimus, cuius virtûte[4] et côniliô multae victôriæ reportatæ erant; atque mater eius, lûlia, â clârissimîs maiôribus orta est. Nôn vêrô in urbe sed rûrî[5] Pûblius nâtus est, et cum mâtre habitâbat in vîllâ quæ in maris lîtore et sub radîcibus magnî montis sita erat. Mônus autem erat Vesuvius et parva urbs Pompêiî octô mîlia[6] passuum[7] aberat. In Italiâ antîquâ erant plûrimæ quidem villæ et pulchrae, sed inter hâs omnîs nûlla erat pulchrior quam villa Mârcî Iûliaeque. Frônus vîllæ mûrô a maris fluctibus mûniêbâtur. Hinc mare et lîtora et însulae longê lâtêque cônspicî[8] ac saepe nâvês longae et onerâriæ poterant. Â tergô et ab utrôque latere agrî ferâcissimî patêbant. Undique erat magna variôrum flôrum côpia et multa ingentium arborum genera quæ aestâte[9] umbram dêfessîs agricolîs grâtissimam adferêbant. Praetereâ erant[10] in agrîs stabulîsque multa animâlium genera, nôn sôlum equî et bovês sed etiam rârae avês. Etiam erat[10] magna piscîna plêna piscium; nam Rômânî piscîs dîligenter colêbant.

[Footnote 1: This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar's career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth.]

[Footnote 2: A Roman had three names, as, «Pûblius» (given name), «Cornêlius» (name of the *gêns* or clan), «Lentulus» (family name).]

[Footnote 3: Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§501.32).]

[Footnote 4: «virtûte», §501.24.]

[Footnote 5: «rûrî», §501.36.1.]

[Footnote 6: «mília», §501.21.]

[Footnote 7: «passuum», §501.11.]

[Footnote 8: «cônspicî», infin. with poterant, §215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa.]

[Footnote 9: «aestâte», §501.35.]

[Footnote 10: How are the forms of «sum» translated when they precede the subject?]

[Illustration: CASA ROMANA]

LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius vîllae Dâvus, servus Mârcî, est vîlicus[1] et cum Lesbiâ uxôre omnia cûrat. Vîlicus et uxor in casâ humilî, mediîs in agrîs sitâ, habitant. Â primâ lûce ûsque ad vesperum sê[2] gravibus labôribus exercent ut omnî rês bene gerant.[3] Plûrima enim sunt officia Dâvî et Lesbiae. Vîlicus servôs regit nê tardî sint[3]; mittit aliôs quî agrôs arent,[3] aliôs quî hortôs inrigent,[3] et opera in[4] tôtum diem impônit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestîmenta parat, cibum coquit, pânem facit.

Nôn longê ab hôrum casâ et in summô colle situm surgêbat domicilium ipsîus dominî dominaeque amplissimum. Ibi plûrîs annôs[5] Pûblius cum mâtre vîtam fêlicem agêbat; nam pater eius, Mârcus, in terrîs longinquîs gravia reî públicae bella gerêbat nec domum[6] revertî poterat. Neque puerô quidem molestum est rurî[7] vîvere. Eum multae rês dêlectant. Magnopere amat silvâs, agrôs, equôs, bovês, gallînâs, avîs, reliquaue animâlia. Saepe plûrîs hôrâs[8] ad mare sedet quô[9] melius fluctûs et nâvîs spectet. Nec omnînô sine comitibus erat, quod Lydia, Dâvî fîlia, quae erat eiusdem aetâtis, cum eô adhûc infante lûdêbat, inter quôs cum annîs amîcitia crêscêbat. Lydia nûllum alium ducem dêligêbat et Pûblius ab puellae latere râro discêdêbat. Itaque sub clârô Italiae sôle Pûblius et Lydia, amîcî fidêlissimî, per campôs collisque cotîdiê vagâbantur. Modo in silvâ finitimâ lûdebant ubi Pûblius sagittîs[10] celeribus avis dêiciêbat et Lydia corônîs variôrûm flôrûm comâs suâs ôrnâbat; modo aquam et cibum portâbant ad Dâvum servôsque dêfessôs quî agrôs colêbant: modo in casâ parvâ aut hôrâs lactâs in lûdô cônsumêbant aut auxilium dabant Lesbiae, quae cibum virô et servîs parâbat vel aliâs rês domesticâs agêbat.

[Footnote 1: The «vîlicus» was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce.]

[Footnote 2: «se», reflexive pron., object of «exercent».]

[Footnote 3: For the construction, see §501.40.]

[Footnote 4: «in», *for*.]

[Footnote 5: «annôs», §501.21.]

[Footnote 6: «domum», §501.20.]

[Footnote 7: «rurî», §501.36.1.]

[Footnote 8: «hôrâs», cf. «annôs», line 17.]

[Footnote 9: «quô ... spectet», §§349, 350.]

[Footnote 10: «sagittis», §501.24.]

LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS, IS SHIPWRECKED · JULIA RECEIVES A LETTER FROM HIM

Iam Pûblius[1] decem annôs habêbat cum M. Cornêlius Lentulus, pater eius, quî quînque annôs[2] grave bellum in Asiâ gerêbat, non sine glôriâ domum[3] revertêbatur. Namque multa secunda proelia fêcerat, maximâs hostium cõpiâs dêlêverat, multâs urbîs populo[4] Rômânô inimicâs cêperat. Primum nûntius pervênit quî â Lentulô[5] missus erat[6] ut profectiõnem suam nûntiâret. Deinde plûrîs diês[7] reditum virî optimî mâter filiusque exspectâbant et animîs[8] sollicitis deôs immortalîs frûstrâ colêbant. Tum dêmum hâs litterâs summo cum gaudiô accêperunt:

[9]"Mârcus Iûliae suac salûtem dicit. Sî valês, bene est; ego valeô. Ex Graeciâ, quô[10] praeter spem et opîniõnem hodiê pervênî, hâs litterâs ad tẽ scribô. Namque nâvis nostra frâcta est; nôs autem--[11]dîs est gratia--incolumes sumus. Ex Asiae[12] portû nâvem lênî ventô solvimus. Postquam[13] altum mare tenuimus [14]nec iam ûllae terrae appâruêrunt, caelum undique et undique fluctûs, subitô magna tempestâs coorta est et nâvem vehementissimê adflîxit. Ventîs fluctibusque adflîctâtî[15] nec sôlem discernere nec cursum tenêre poterâmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentâbant. Trîs diês[16] et trîs noctîs[16] sine rêmîs vêlîsque agimur. Quârtô diê[17] prîmum terra vîsa est et violenter in saxa, quae nôn longê â lîtore aberant, dêiectî sumus. Tum vêrô maiôra perîcula timêbâmus; sed nauta quîdam, vir fortissimus, ex nâve in fluctûs îrâtôs dêsiluit [18]ut fûnem ad lîtus portâret; quam rem summô labôre vix effêcit. Ita omnês servâtî sumus. Grâtiâs igitur et honôrem Neptûnô dêbêmus, quî deus nôs ê perîculô êripuit. Nunc Athênîs[19] sum, quô cõnfûgî ut mihi paucâs hôrâs ad quiêtem darem.[20] Quam prîmum autem aliam nâvem condûcam ut iter ad Italiam reliquum cõficiam et domum[21] ad meôs cârôs revertar. Salûtâ nostrum Pûblium amîcissimê et valêtûdinem tuam cûrâ dîligenter. [22]Kalendîs Mârtiîs."

[Footnote 1: *was ten years old.*]

[Footnote 2: «annôs», §501.21.]

[Footnote 3: «domum», §501.20.]

[Footnote 4: «populô», dat. with inimicâs, cf. §501.16.]

[Footnote 5: «Lentulô», §501.33.]

[Footnote 6: «ut ... nûntiâret», §501.40.]

[Footnote 7: «diês», cf. annôs, 1. 9.]

[Footnote 8: «animîs», abl. of manner. Do you see one in line 15?]

[Footnote 9: This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression *Sî valês*, etc. The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter.]

[Footnote 10: «quô», *where.*]

[Footnote 11: «dîs est grâtia», *thank God*, in our idiom.]

[Footnote 12: Asia refers to the Roman province of that name in Asia Minor.]

[Footnote 13: «altum mare tenuimus», *we were well out to sea.*]

[Footnote 14: «nec iam», *and no longer.*]

[Footnote 15: «adflîctâtî», perf. passive part. *tossed about.*]

[Footnote 16: What construction?]

[Footnote 17: «diê», §501.35.]

[Footnote 18: «ut ... portâret», §501.40.]

[Footnote 19: «Athênîs», §501.36.1.]

[Footnote 20: «darem», cf. «portâret», l. 6.]

[Footnote 21: Why not «ad domum»?]

[Footnote 22: «Kalendîs Mârthîis», *the Calends or first of March*; abl. of time, giving the date of the letter.]

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME · PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucôs diês nâvis M. Cornêlî Lentulî portum Mîsênî[1] petiit, quî portus nôn longê â Pompêiîs situs est; quô in portû classis Rômânâ pônêbâtur et ad pugnâs nâvâlîs ôrnâbâtur. Ibi nâvês omnium generum cônspicî poterant. Iamque incêdibilî celeritâte nâvis longa quâ Lentulus vehêbâtur lîtorî adpropinquâvit; nam nôn sôlum ventô sed etiam rêmîs impellêbâtur. In altâ puppe stâbat gubernâtor et nôn procul aliquî mîlitês Rômânî cum armîs splendidîs, inter quôs clârissimus erat Lentulus. Deinde servî rêmîs contendere cessâvêrunt[2]; nautae vêlum contrâxêrunt et ancorâs iêcêrunt. Lentulus statim ê nâvî êgressus est et[3] ad villam suam properâvit. Eum Iûlia, Pûblius, tôtaque familia excêpêrunt. [4]Quî complexûs, quanta gaudia fuêrunt!

Postrîdiê eius diêi Lentulus fîliô suô dîxit, "Venî, mî Pûblî, mêcum. Pompêiôs iter hodiê faciam. Mâter tua suâdet[5] ut frûctûs et cibâria emam. Namque plûrîs amîcôs ad cênâ vocâvimus et multîs rêbus[6] egêmus. Ea hortâtur ut quam prîmum proficîscâmur." "Libenter, mî pater," inquit Pûblius. "Têcum esse mihi semper est grâtum; nec Pompêiôs umquam vîdî. Sine morâ proficîscî parâtus sum." Tum celeriter currum cônscendêrunt et ad urbis mûrôs vectî sunt. Stabiânâ portâ[7] urbem ingressî sunt. Pûblius strâtâs viâs mîrâtur et saxa altiôra quae in mediô disposita erant et altâs orbitâs quâs rotae inter haec saxa fêcerant. Etiam strepitem mîrâtur, multitudinem, carrôs, fontîs, domôs, tabernâs, forum[8] cum statuîs, templîs, reliquîsque aedificiîs pûblicîs.

[Footnote 1: Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy.]

[Footnote 2: Why is the infinitive used with «cessâvêrunt»?]

[Footnote 3: See Plate I, Frontispiece.]

[Footnote 4: Observe that these words are exclamatory.]

[Footnote 5: What construction follows «suâdeô»? §501.41.]

[Footnote 6: «rêbus», §501.32.]

[Footnote 7: This is the abl. of the *way by which* motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street («saxa quae in mediô disposita erant».)]

[Footnote 8: The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map.]

LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII

Apud forum ê currû dêscendêrunt et Lentulus dîxit, "Hîc sunt multa tabernârum genera, mî Pûblî. Ecce, trâns viam est popîna! [1]Hoc genus tabernârum cibâria vëndit. Frûctûs quoque ante iânuam stant. Ibi cibâria mea emam." "Optimê," respondit Pûblius. "At ubi, mî pater, crûstula emere possumus? Namque mâter nôbîs imperâvit [2]ut haec quoque parârêmus. Timeô ut[3] ista popîna vëndat crûstula." "Bene dîcis," inquit Lentulus. "At nônne vidês illum fontem â dextrâ ubi aqua per leônîs caput fluit? In illô ipsô locô est taberna pîstôris quî sine dubiô vëndit crûstula."

Brevî tempore[4] omnia erant parâta, iamque [5]quînta hõra erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad caupõnam properâvêrunt, quod famê[6] et sitî[7] urgêbantur. Ibi sub arboris umbrâ sêdêrunt et puerô imperâvêrunt ut sibi[8] cibum et vînum daret. Huic imperiô[9] puer celeriter pâruit. Tum laetî sê[10] ex labõre refêcêrunt.

Post prandium prefectî sunt ut alia urbis spectâcula vidêrent. Illô tempore fuêrunt Pompêiîs[11] multa templa, duo theâtra, thermae magnumque amphitheâtrum, quae omnia post paucõs annõs flammîs atque incendiîs Vesuvî et terrae môtû dêlêta sunt. Ante hanc calamitâtem autem hominês [12]nihil dê monte veritî sunt. In amphitheâtrô quidem Pûblius morârî cupîvit ut spectâcula gladiâtõria vidêret, quae in[13] illum ipsum diem prõscripta erant et iam [14]rê vêrâ incêperant. Sed Lentulus dîxit, "Morârî, Pûblî, [15]vereor ut possîmus. Iam decima hõra est et via est longa. Tempus suâdet ut quam prîmum domum revertâmur." Itaque servô imperâvit ut equõs iungeret, et sôlis occâsû[16] ad vîllam pervênêrunt.

[Footnote 1: We say, *this kind of shop*; Latin, *_this kind of shops_*.]

[Footnote 2: «ut ... parârêmus», §501.41.]

[Footnote 3: How is «ut» translated after a verb of fearing? How «nê»? Cf. §501.42.]

[Footnote 4: «tempore», §501.35.]

[Footnote 5: «quînta hõra». The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts.]

[Footnote 6: «famê» shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending «-e» is long.]

[Footnote 7: «sitîs», *thirst*, has «-im» in the acc. sing., «-î» in the abl. sing., and no plural.]

[Footnote 8: Observe that the reflexive pronoun «sibi» does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause. This so-called *indirect* use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose.]

[Footnote 9: What case? Cf. §501.14.]

[Footnote 10: «sê», cf. p. 205, l. 7, and note.]

[Footnote 11: «Pompêiîs», §501.36.1.]

[Footnote 12: «nihil ... veritî sunt», _had no fears of the mountain_.]

[Footnote 13: «in», *for*.]

[Footnote 14: «rê vêrâ», *in fact*.]

[Footnote 15: «vereor ut», §501.42.]

[Footnote 16: «occâsû», §501.35.]

LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

Â prîmîs annîs quidem Iûlia ipsa filium suum docuerat, et Pûblius nôn solum [1]pûrê et Latînê loquî poterat sed etiam commodê legêbat et scrîbêbat. Iam Ennium[2] aliôsque poêtâs lêgerat. Nunc vêrô Pûblius [3]duodecim annôs habêbat; itaque eî pater bonum magistrum, [4]virum omnî doctrînâ et virtûte ôrnâtissimum, parâvit, [5]quî Graeca, mûsicam, aliâsque artîs docêret. [6]Namque illîs temporibus omnês ferê gentês Graecê loquêbantur. Cum Pûbliô aliî puerî, Lentulî amîcôrûm filiî,[7] discêbant. Nam saepe apud Rômânôs môs erat [8]nôn in lûdum filiôs mittere sed domî per magistrum docêre. Cotîdiê discipulî cum magistrô in peristylô[9] Mârcî domûs sedêbant. Omnês puerî bullam auream, orîginis honestae signum, in collô gerêbant, et omnês togâ praetextâ amictî erant, [10]quod nôndum sêdecim annôs[11] nâtî sunt.

[Footnote 1: «pûrê ... poterat», freely, *could speak Latin well*. What is the literal translation?]

[Footnote 2: «Ennium», the father of Latin poetry.]

[Footnote 3: «duodecim ... habêbat», cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note.]

[Footnote 4: «virum», etc., *a very well-educated and worthy man*. Observe the Latin equivalent.]

[Footnote 5: «quî ... docêret», a relative clause of purpose. Cf. §§ 349, 350.]

[Footnote 6: In Cæsar's time Greek was spoken more widely in the Roman world than any other language.]

[Footnote 7: «filiî», in apposition with «puerî».]

[Footnote 8: «nôn ... mittere». This infinitive clause is the subject of «erat». Cf. §216. The same construction is repeated in the next clause, «domî ... docêre». The object of «docêre» is «filiôs» understood.]

[Footnote 9: The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade.]

[Footnote 10: At the age of sixteen a boy laid aside the *bullâ* and the *toga praetexta* and assumed *toga virîlis* or manly gown.]

[Footnote 11: «annôs», §501.21. The expression «nôndum sêdecim annôs nâtî sunt» means literally, _they were born not yet sixteen years_. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?]

[Illustration: TABULA ET STILUS]

SCENE IN SCHOOL · AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION

DISCIPULÎ. Salvê, magister. MAGISTER. Vôs quoque omnês, salvête. [1]Tabulâsne portâvistis et stilôs? D. Portâvimus. M. Iam fâbulam Aesôpî[2] discêmus. Ego legam, vôs in tabulîs scrîbite. Et tû, Pûblî, dâ mihi ê

capsâ[3] Aesôpî volûmen.[4] Iam audîte omnês: *Vulpês et Úva*. Vulpês ôlim famê coâcta úvam dêpendentem vîdit. Ad úvam saliêbat, sûmere cônâns. Frûstrâ diû cônâta, tandem írâta erat et salîre cessâns dîxit: "Illa úva est acerba; acerbam úvam [5]nihil moror." Omnia ´ne scrîpsistis, puerî? D. Omnia, magister.

[Footnote 1: Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections.]

[Footnote 2: «Aesôpî», the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world.]

[Footnote 3: A cylindrical box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox.]

[Footnote 4: Ancient books were written on rolls made of papy´rus.]

[Footnote 5: «nihil moror», *I care nothing for.*]

LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION

Iamque Pûblius, [1]quîndecim annôs nâtus, [2]prîmîs litterârûm elementîs cônfectîs, Rômam petere voluit ut scholâs grammaticôrum et philosophôrum frequentâret. Et facillimê patrî[3] suô, qui ipse philosophiae studiô tenêbâtur, persuâsit. Itaque [4]omnibus rêbus ad profectiônem comparâtîs, pater fîliusque equîs animôsîs vectî[5] ad magnam urbem profectî sunt. Eôs proficîscentîs Iúlia tôtaque familia vôtîs precibusque prôsecútæ sunt. Tum per loca[6] plâna et collis silvîs vestîtôs viam ingressî sunt ad Nôlam, quod oppidum eôs hospitîo modicô excêpit. Nôlae[7] duâs hôrâs morâtî sunt, quod sôl merîdiânus ârdêbat. Tum rêctâ viâ[8] circiter vîgintî mîlia[9] passuum[9] Capuam,[9] ad însignem Campâniæ urbem, contendêrunt. Eô[10] multâ nocte dêfessî pervênêrunt. [11]Postrîdiê eius diêi, somnô et cibô recreâtî, Capuâ discessêrunt et [13]viam Appiam ingressî, quæ Capuam tangit et úsque ad urbem Rômam dúcit, ante merîdiem Sinuessam pervênêrunt, quod oppidum tangit mare. Inde prîmâ lûce proficîscentês Formiâs[13] properâvêrunt, ubi Cicerô, ôrâtor clarissimus, quî forte apud vîllam suam erat, eôs benignê excêpit. Hinc [14]itinere vîgintî quînque mîlium passuum factô, Tarracînam, oppidum in saxîs altissimîs situm, vîdêrunt. Iamque nôn longê aberant palûdês magnæ, quæ multa mîlia passuum undique patent. Per eâs pedestris via est gravis et in nâve viâtôrês vehuntur. Itaque [15]equîs relictîs Lentulus et Pûblius nâvem cônscendêrunt, et, únâ nocte in trânsitû cônsumptâ, Forum Appî vênêrunt. Tum brevî tempore Arícia eôs excêpit. Hoc oppidum, in colle situm, ab urbe Româ sêdecim mîlia passuum abest. Inde dêclivis via úsque ad latum campum dúcit ubi Rôma stat. Quem ad locum ubi Pûblius vênit et Rômam adhûc remôtam, maximam tótûs orbis terrârûm urbem, cônspêxit, summâ admirâtiône et gaudiô adfectus est. Sine morâ dêscendêrunt, et, mediô intervâllô quam celerrimê superâtô, urbem portâ Capênâ ingressî sunt.

[Footnote 1: «quîndecim», etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note.]

[Footnote 2: «prîmîs ... cônfectîs», abl. abs. Cf. §501.28.]

[Footnote 3: «patrî», dat. with «persuâsit».]

[Footnote 4: «omnibus ... comparâtîs», cf. note 2.]

[Footnote 5: «vectî», perf. pass. part. of «vehô».]

[Footnote 6: What is there peculiar about the gender of this word?]

[Footnote 7: «Nôlae», locative case, §501.36.2.]

[Footnote 8: «viâ», cf. «portâ», p. 208, l. 7, and note.]

[Footnote 9: What construction?]

[Footnote 10: «Eô», adv. *there*.]

[Footnote 11: «Postrîdiê eius diê», *on the next day*.]

[Footnote 12: «viam Appiam», the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow.]

[Footnote 13: «Formiâs», *Formiæ*, one of the most beautiful spots on this coast, and a favorite site for the villas of rich Romans.]

[Footnote 14: «itinere ... factô», abl. abs. The gen. «mîlium» modifies «itinere».]

[Footnote 15: «equîs relictîs». What construction? Point out a similar one in the next line.]

[Illustration: BULLA]

LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS

Pûblius iam tôtum annum Rômae morâbâtur[1] multaque urbis spectâcula vîderat et multôs sibi[2] amîcôs parâverat. Eî[3] omnês favêbant; [4]dê eô omnês bene spêrâre poterant. Cotîdiê Pûblius scholas philosophôrum et grammaticôrum tantô studiô frequentâbat [5]ut aliîs clârum exemplum praebêret. Saepe erat cum patre in cûriâ[6]; quae rê s effêcit [7]ut summôs reî pûblicaе virôs et audîret et vidêret. Ubi [8]sêdecim annôs natus est, bullam[9] auream et togam praetextam môre Rômânô dêposuit atque virilem togam sumpsit. Virîlis autem toga erat omnîno alba, sed praetexta clâvum purpureum in margine habêbat. [10]Dêpônere togam praetextam et sũmere togam virilem erat rê s grâtissima puerô Rômânô, quod postea vir et civis Rômânus habêbâtur.

[11]Hîs rêbus gestîs Lentulus ad uxôrem suam hâs litterâs scrîpsit:

[12]"Mârcus Iûliae suae salutem dicit. Sî valês, bene est; ego valeô. Accêpî tuâs litterâs. Hâs nunc Rômâ per servum fidêlissimum mittô ut dê Pûbliô nostrô quam celerrimê sciâs. Nam hodiê eî togam virilem dedî. Ante lucem surrêxi[13] et prîmum bullam auream dê collô eius remôvî. Hâc Laribus[14] cônsecrâtâ et sacrîs factîs, eum togâ virîli vestîvî. Interim plûrês amîcî cum multitûdine optimôrum cívium et honestôrum clientium pervênerant [15]quî Pûblium domô in forum dêdûcerent. Ibi in cívitatem receptus est et nômen, Pûblius Cornêlius Lentulus, apud cívîs Rômânôs ascrîptum est. Omnês eî amîcissimî fuêrunt et magna[16] de eô praedîcunt. Sapientior enim aequâlibus[17] est et magnum ingenium habet. [18]Cûrâ ut valeâs."

[Footnote 1: «morâbâtur», translate as if pluperfect.]

[Footnote 2: «sibi», *for himself*.]

[Footnote 3: «Eî», why dat. ?]

[Footnote 4: «dê ... poterant», in English, *_all regarded him as a very promising youth;_ but what does the Latin say?]*

[Footnote 5: «ut ... praebêret», §501.43.]

[Footnote 6: «cûriâ», a famous building near the Roman Forum.]

[Footnote 7: «ut ... audîret et vidêret», §501.44.]

[Footnote 8: «sêdecim, etc.», cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note.]

[Footnote 9: «bullam», cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4.]

[Footnote 10: These infinitive clauses are the subject of «erat». Cf. §216.]

[Footnote 11: «Hîs rêbus gestîs», i.e. the assumption of the *_toga virilis_* and attendant ceremonies.]

[Footnote 12: Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206.]

[Footnote 13: «surrêxî», from «surgô».]

[Footnote 14: The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily.]

[Footnote 15: «quî ... dêdûcerent», §350.]

[Footnote 16: «magna», *great things*, a neuter adj. used as a noun.]

[Footnote 17: «aequâlibus», §501.34.]

[Footnote 18: «Cûrâ ut valeâs», *take good care of your health*. How does the Latin express this idea?]

LXIX. PUBLIUS JOINS CÆSAR'S ARMY IN GAUL

Pûblius iam adulêscêns postquam togam virîlem sûmpsît, aliîs rêbus studêre incêpit et praesertim ûsû[1] armôrûm sê[2] dîligenter exercuit. Magis magisque amâvit illâs artîs quae mîlitârem animum dêlectant. Iamque erant [3]quî eî cursum mîlitârem praedîcerent. Nec sine causâ, quod certê patris îsîgne exemplum [4]ita multum trahêbat. [5]Paucîs ante annîs C. Iûlius Caesar, ducum Rômânôrûm maximus, cõsul creâtus erat et hõc tempore in Galliâ bellum grave gerêbat. Atque in exercitû eius plûrês adulêscêntês mîlitâbant, apud quõs erat amîcus quîdam Pûblî. Ille Pûblium crêbrîs litterîs vehementer hortâbâtur [6]ut iter in Galliam faceret. Neque Pûblius recûsâvit, et, multîs amîcîs ad portam urbis prõsequentibus, ad Caesaris castra profectus est. Quârtõ diê postquam iter ingressus est, ad Alpîs, montîs altissimõs, pervênit. Hîs summâ difficultâte superâtîs, tandem Gallõrum in finibus erat. Prîmõ autem veritus est ut[7] castrîs Rômânîs adpropinquâre posset, quod Gallî, maximîs cõpiîs coactîs, Rômânõs obsidêbant et viâs omnîs iam clauserant. Hîs rêbus commõtus Pûblius vestem Gallicam induit nê â Gallîs caperêtur, et ita per hostium cõpiâs incolumis ad castra pervenîre potuit. Intrâ mûnîtîõnes acceptus, â Caesare benignê exceptus est. Imperâtor fortem adulêscêntem amplissimîs verbîs laudâvit et eum [8]tribûnum mîlitum creâvit.

[Footnote 1: Abl. of means.]

[Footnote 2: «sê», reflexive object of «exercuit».]

[Footnote 3: «quî ... praedîcerent», §501.45.]

[Footnote 4: «ita multum trahêbat», *_had a great influence in that direction_*.]

[Footnote 5: «Paucîs ante annîs», *a few years before*; in Latin, *before by a few years*, «ante» being an adverb

and «annîs» abl. of degree of difference.]

[Footnote 6: «ut ... faceret», §501.41.]

[Footnote 7: «ut», how translated here? See §501.42.]

[Footnote 8: The *military tribune* was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Cæsar did not allow them much responsibility.]

[Illustration: IMPEDIMENTA]

HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus quî in hostium finibus bellum genit multîs perîcuîs circumdatus est. [1]Quae perîcula ut vîtâret, Rômâni summam cûram adhîbere solêbant. Adpropinquanteês cõpiîs hostium agmen ita dispõnêbant [2]ut imperâtor ipse cum plâribus legiõnibus expeditîs[3] prîmum agmen duceret. Post eâs cõpiâs impedîmenta[4] tõtîus exercitûs conlocâbant. [5]Tum legiõnês quae proximê cõscrip̄tae erant tõtum agmen claudêbant. Equitês quoque in omnîs partîs dîmittêbantur quî loca explôrârent; et centuriõnês praemittêbantur ut locum castrîs idõneum dêligerent. Locus habêbatur idõneus castrîs [6]quî facile dêfendî posset et prope aquam esset. Quâ dê causâ castra[7] in colle ab utrâque parte arduô, â fronte lèniter dêclîvî saepe põnêbantur; vel locus palûdibus cîctus vel in flûminis rîpîs situs dêligêbâtur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervênit, aliî mîlitum [8]in armîs erant, aliî castra mûnîre incipiêbant. Nam [9]quô tûtiõrês ab hostibus mîlitês essent, nêve incautî et imparâti opprimerentur, castra fossâ lâta et vâllô altô mûniêbant. In castrîs portae quattuor erant ut êruptiõ mîlitum omnîs in partîs fierî posset. In angulîs castrõrum erant turrês dê quibus têla in hostîs coniciêbantur. [10]Tâlîbus in castrîs quâlia dêscripsimus Pûblius â Caesare exceptus est.

[Footnote 1: «Quae perîcula», object of «vîtârent». It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence.]

[Footnote 2: «ut ... duceret», §501.43.]

[Footnote 3: «expeditîs», i.e. without baggage and ready for action.]

[Footnote 4: «impedîmenta». Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless «expeditus») carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.]

[Footnote 5: The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable.]

[Footnote 6: «quî ... posset ... esset», §501.45.]

[Footnote 7: «castra», subject of «põnêbantur».]

[Footnote 8: «in armîs erant», *stood under arms*.]

[Footnote 9: «quô ... essent». When is «quô» used to introduce a purpose clause? See §350.I.]

[Footnote 10: «Tâlîbus in castrîs quâlia», *in such a camp as*. It is important to remember the correlatives «tâlîs ... quâlis», *such ... as*.]

[Illustration: CENTURIO]

LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

Illis in castris erant duo centuriones,[1] fortissimi viri, T. Pullus et L. Vorenus, quorum neuter alteri virtute[2] cedere volebat. Inter eos iam multos annos infensum certamen gereretur. Tum demum finis controversiae hoc modo[3] factus est. Die tertio postquam Publius pervenit, hostes, maioribus copiis coactis, acerrimum impetum in castra fecerunt. Tum Pullus, [4]cum Romanis tardioribus[5] viderentur, "Cur dubitas," inquit, "Vorene? Quam commodiorem occasionem expectas? Hic dies de virtute nostra iudicabit." Haec[6] cum dixisset, extra munitiones processit et in eam hostium partem quae confortissima [7]videbatur irrupit. Neque Vorenus quidem tum vallum[8] sese continet, sed Pullum subsequitur. Tum Pullus pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit. Hunc percussum et exanimatum hostes scutis protegunt et in Pullum omnem tela coniciunt. Eius scutum transfigitur et telum in balteo defigitur. Hic casus vaginam avertit et dextram manum eius gladium educere conantis[9] moratur. Eum ita impeditum hostes circumstant.

Tum vero [10]est laborantem Vorenus, cum sit inimicus, tamen auxilium dat. Ad hunc confestim [11]a Pullone omnis multitudo se convertit. Gladio cominus pugnat Vorenus, atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit. Sed instans cupidius[12] infelix, [13]pede se fallente, concidit.

Huc rursus circumventum auxilium dat Pullus, atque ambobus incolumem, pluribus interfectis, summam cum laude intra munitiones se recipiunt. Sic inimicorum alter alteri auxilium dedit nec de eorum virtute quisquam iudicare potuit.

[Footnote 1: A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real leaders of the men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority.]

[Footnote 2: «virtute», §501.30.]

[Footnote 3: Abl. of manner.]

[Footnote 4: «cum ... viderentur», §501.46.]

[Footnote 5: «tardiores», *too slow*, a not infrequent translation of the comparative degree.]

[Footnote 6: «Haec», obj. of «dixisset». It is placed before «cum» to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of «dixisset»?]

[Footnote 7: «videbatur, irrupit». Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. §190.]

[Footnote 8: «vallum», abl. of means, but in English we should say *within the rampart*. Cf. «ingenti stabulo», p. 201, l. 13, and note.]

[Footnote 9: «conantis», pres. part. agreeing with «eius».]

[Footnote 10: «est laborantem», indir. obj. of dat.]

[Footnote 11: «a Pullone», *from Pullo*, abl. of separation.]

[Footnote 12: «cupidius», *too eagerly*.]

[Footnote 13: «pede se fallente», lit. *the foot deceiving itself*; in our idiom, *his foot slipping*.]

Cum iam sex hōrās pugnatum esset[1] ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs dēficerent[1], atque hostēs ācrius instārent,[1] et vāllum scindere fossamque complēre incēpissent,[1] Caesar, vir reī mīlītāris perītissimus, suīs imperāvīt ut proelium paulisper intermitterent,[2] et, signō datō, ex castrīs êrumpent.[2] [3]Quod iussī sunt faciunt, et subitō ex omnibus portīs êrumpunt. Atque tam celeriter mīlītēs concurrērunt et tam propinquī erant hostēs[4] ut spatium pīla coniciendī[5] nōn darētur. Itaque reiectīs pīlīs [6]comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. Diū et audācter hostēs restitērunt et in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut ā dextrō cornū vehementer [7]multitūdine suōrum aciem Rōmanam premerent. [8]Id imperātor cum animadvertisset, Pūblium adulēscentem cum equitātū mīsīt quī labōrantibus[9] auxilium daret. Eius impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt hostēs[10] et omnēs terga vertērunt. Eōs in fugam datōs Pūblius subsecūtus est ūsque ad flūmen Rhēnum, quod ab eō locō quīnque mīlia passuum aberat. Ibi paucī salūtem sibi repperērunt. Omnibus reliquīs interfectīs, Pūblius et equitēs in castra sēsē recēpērunt. Dē hāc calamitāte fīnitimae gentēs cum certiōrēs factae essent, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt et sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt.

[Footnote 1: «pugnātum esset, dēficerent, instārent, incēpissent». These are all subjunctives with «cum». Cf. §501.46.]

[Footnote 2: «intermitterent, êrumpent». What use of the subjunctive?]

[Footnote 3: «Quod», etc., *they do as ordered*. The antecedent of «quod» is «id» understood, which would be the object of «faciunt».]

[Footnote 4: «ut ... darētur». Is this a clause of purpose or of result?]

[Footnote 5: «coniciendī», §402.]

[Footnote 6: «comminus gladiīs pugnātum est», *_a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords_*.]

[Footnote 7: «multitūdine suōrum», *by their numbers*. «suōrum» is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression?]

[Footnote 8: «Id imperātor. Id» is the obj. and «imperātor» the subj. of «animadvertisset».]

[Footnote 9: «labōrantibus». This participle agrees with «iīs» understood, the indir. obj. of «daret; qui ... daret» is a purpose clause, §501.40.]

[Footnote 10: «hostēs», subj. of «potuērunt».]

LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY · ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS

Initā aestāte Caesar litterīs certior fīēbat et per explōrātōrēs cognōscēbat plūris cīvitātēs Galliae novīs rēbus studēre,[1] et contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre[1] obsidēsque [2]inter sē dare,[1] atque cum hīs Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē coniūctūrōs esse.[1] Hīs litterīs nūntiīsque commōtus Caesar cōstituit quam celerrimē in Gallōs proficiscī,[3] ut eōs inopīnantīs opprimeret, et Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus peditum et duōbus mīlibus equitum in Germānōs mittere.[3] [4]Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque[5] rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finīs pervēnit ut spatium [6]cōpiās cōgendī nōn darētur[4]; et Labiēnus dē Germānīs tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex eā gente in reliquum tempus Gallīs auxilium dare audēret.[7]

Hoc iter in Germāniam Pūblius quoque fēcit et, [8]cum ibi morārētur, multa mīrābilia vīdit. Praesertim vērō ingentem silvam mīrābātur, quae tantae magnitudinis esse dīcēbātur [9]ut nēmō eam trānsire posset, nec quisquam scīret aut initium aut finem. Quā dē rē plūra cognōverat ā mīlite quōdam quī ōlim captus ā Germānīs multōs annōs ibi incoluit. Ille[10] dē silvā dīcēns, "Infīnitae magnitudinis est haec silva," inquit;

"nee quisquam est [11]huius Germâniae [12]quî initium eius sciat aut ad finem adierit. Nâscuntur illîc multa tâlia animâlium genera quâlia reliquîs in locîs nôn inveniuntur. Sunt bovês quî ûnum[13] cornû habent; sunt etiam animâlia quae appellantur alcês. Hae nûllôs crûrum[14] articulôs habent. Itaque, sî forte concidêrunt, sêsê êrigere nûllô modô possunt. Arborês habent prô[15] cubîlibus; ad eâs sê applicant atque ita reclînâtae quiêtem capiunt. Tertium est genus eôrum quî ûrî appellantur. Hî sunt paulô minôrês elephantîs.[16] Magna vis eôrum est et magna vêlôcitâs. Neque hominî neque ferae parcunt.[17]"

[Footnote 1: Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after «certior fîêbat», *he was informed*, and «cognôscêbat», *he learned*. Cf. §501.48, 49.]

[Footnote 2: «inter sê», *to each other*.]

[Footnote 3: «proficîscî, mittere». These infinitives depend upon «cônstituit».]

[Footnote 4: Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging.]

[Footnote 5: Abl. of personal agent, §501.33.]

[Footnote 6: «côpiâs cògendî», §501.37.1.]

[Footnote 7: «darêtur, audêret», §501.43. «audêret» is not from «audiô».]

[Footnote 8: «cum ... morârêtur», §501.46.]

[Footnote 9: «ut ... posset, ... scîret», §501.43.]

[Footnote 10: «Ille», subj. of «inquit».]

[Footnote 11: «huius Germâniae», *of this part of Germany*.]

[Footnote 12: «quî ... scîat ... adierit», §501.45.]

[Footnote 13: «ûnum», *only one*.]

[Footnote 14: «crûrum», from «crûs».]

[Footnote 15: «prô», *for, in place of*.]

[Footnote 16: «elephantîs», §501.34.]

[Footnote 17: «parcunt». What case is used with this verb?]

[Illustration: VINEA]

LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

Pûblius plûrîs diês in Germâniâ morâtus[1] in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesaris castra sê contulit. Ille quia molestê ferêbat Gallôs[2] eius regiônis obsidês dare recûsâvisse et exercituî frûmentum praebêre nôluisse, cônstituit eîs[3] bellum îfferre. Agrîs vâstâtîs, vîcîs incênsîs, pervênit ad oppidum validissimum quod et nâtûrâ et arte mûnîtum erat. Cingêbâtur mûrô vîgintî quînque pedês[4] altô. Â lateribus duôsîtum, praeruptô

fastigiô ad plânitiam vergêgat; â quârtô tantum[5] latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnâre, [6]cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen cōstituit Caesar. Et castris mûnîtis Pûbliô negôtium dedit ut rês [7]ad oppugnandum necessâriâs parâret.

Rômânôrum autem oppugnâtiô est haec.[8] Prîmum turrês aedificantur quibus mîlitês in summum mûrum êvâdere possint[9]; vîneae[10] fiunt quibus tectî mîlitês ad mûrum succêdant; pluteî[11] parantur post quôs mîlitês tormenta[12] administrent; sunt quoque arietês quî mûrum et portâs discutiant. Hîs omnibus rêbus comparâtis, deinde [13]agger ab eâ parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum vîneis ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere prômovêtur; arietibus quî sub vîneis conlocâtî erant mûrus et portae discutiuntur; ballistis, catapultis, reliquisque tormentis lapidês et têla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postrêmô cum iam turris et agger altitudînem mûri adaequant et arietês moenia perfrêgêrunt,[14] signô datô mîlitês inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

[Footnote 1: «morâtus». Is this part. active or passive in meaning?]

[Footnote 2: «Gallôs», subj. acc. of the infins. «recûsâvisse» and «nôluisse». The indirect statement depends upon «molestê ferêbat».]

[Footnote 3: «eîs», §501.15.]

[Footnote 4: «pedês», §501.21.]

[Footnote 5: «tantum», adv. *only*.]

[Footnote 6: «cum ... esset», a clause of concession, §501.46.]

[Footnote 7: «ad oppugnandum», a gerund expressing purpose.]

[Footnote 8: «haec», *as follows*.]

[Footnote 9: «possint», subjv. of purpose. Three similar constructions follow.]

[Footnote 10: «vîneae». These «vîneae» were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.]

[Footnote 11: «pluteî», large screens or shields with small wheels attached to them. These were used to protect besiegers while moving up to a city or while serving the engines of war.]

[Footnote 12: «tormenta». The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective.]

[Footnote 13: The «agger», or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the *agger* a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (*aries*) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)]

[Footnote 14: «perfrêgêrunt», from «perfringô».]

[Illustration: BALLISTA]

[Illustration: TURRES, ARIETES, VINEA]

LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN · THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED

Omnibus rēbus necessāriis ad oppugnandum â Pūbliô comparātis, dêlībērâtur in conciliô quod cōnsilium [1]oppidî expugnandî ineant.[2] Tum ūnus[3] ex centuriōnibus, vir reî mīlitāris perītissimus, "Ego suādēô," inquit, "ut ab eâ parte, ubi aditus sit[5] facillimus, aggerem exstruāmus[4] et turrim prōmoveāmus[6] atque ariete admôtô simul mūrūm discutere cōnemur.[5]" [6]Hoc cōnsilium cum omnibus placēret, Caesar concilium dīmīsit. Deinde mīlitēs hortātus ut priôrēs victōriās memoriâ[7] tenērent, iussit aggerem exstruî, turrim et arietem admovērî. Neque oppidānīs[8] cōnsilium dēfuit. Aliî ignem et omne genus tēlōrum dē mūrô in turrim coniēcērunt, aliî ingentia saxa in vineās et arietem dêvolvērunt. Diû utrimque âcerrimê pugnātum est. Nê vulnerātî quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem, [9]dê tertiâ vigiliâ, Pūblius, quem Caesar illî operî[10] praefēcerat, nūntiāvit partem[11] mūrî ictibus arietis labefactam concidisse. Quâ rē audītâ Caesar signum dat; mīlitēs inruunt et magnâ cum caede hostium oppidum capiunt.

Postrīdiē eius diēi, hōc oppidô expugnâtô, [12]captīvōrum quî nōbilissimî sunt ad imperâtōrem ante praetōrium[13] addūcuntur. Ipse, lôricâ aurâtâ et paludāmentô purpureô însignis, captīvôs per interpretem in hunc modum interrogat:[14] Vôs quî estis[15]?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperâtōr quî sītis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Fīlī rēgis sumus.

INTERPRES. Dīcunt sê filiôs esse rēgis.

IMPERĀTOR. Cūr mihi tantās iniūriās intulistis?

INTERPRES. Rogat cūr sibi tantās iniūriās intuleritis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Iniūriās eî nōn intulimus sed prō patriâ bellum gessimus. Semper volumus Rômānīs esse amīcī, sed Rômānī sine causâ nōs domô patriâque expellere cōnātī sunt.

INTERPRES. [16]Negant sê iniūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriâ bellum gessisse. [17]Semper sê voluisse amīcōs Rômānīs esse, sed Rômānōs sine causâ sê domô patriâque expellere cōnātōs esse.

IMPERĀTOR. [18]Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hâc rebellīōne condōnâtâ?

Tum vērô captīvī multīs cum lacrimīs iūrāvērunt sê in fidē māsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolumīs domum dīmīsit.

[Footnote 1: «oppidî expugnandî». Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. §501.37.]

[Footnote 2: «ineant». §501.50.]

[Footnote 3: «ūnus». subj. of «inquit».]

[Footnote 4: «sit». This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with «ubi» stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with «ut», that its verb is attracted into the same mood.]

[Footnote 5: All these verbs are in the same construction.]

[Footnote 6: «Hoc cōsilium», subj. of «placêret». For the order cf. «Haec cum», etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; «Id imperâtor cum», p. 217, l. 8.]

[Footnote 7: «memoriâ», abl. of means.]

[Footnote 8: «oppidânîs», §501.15.]

[Footnote 9: Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided into four watches.]

[Footnote 10: «operî», §501.15.]

[Footnote 11: «partem», subj. acc. of «concidisse».]

[Footnote 12: «captîvôrum ... sunt», *the noblest of the captives*.]

[Footnote 13: The general's headquarters.]

[Footnote 14: Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect statements.]

[Footnote 15: See Plate III, p. 148.]

[Footnote 16: «Negant», etc., *they say that they have not*, etc. «Negant» is equivalent to «dîcunt nôn», and the negative modifies «intulisse», but not the remainder of the indirect statement.]

[Footnote 17: «Semper», etc., *that they have always*, etc.]

[Footnote 18: «Manêbitisne in fidê», *will you remain loyal?*]

LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CÆSAR AND POMPEY THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

Nê cōfectô[1] quidem bellô Gallicô, [2]bellum civîle inter Caesarem et Pompêium exortum est. Nam Pompêius, quî summum imperium petêbat, senâtuî persuâserat ut Caesarem reî pûblicae hostem[3] iûdicâret et exercitum eius dîmittî iubêret. Quibus cognitîs rêbus Caesar exercitum suum dîmittere recûsâvit, atque, hortâtus mîlitês ut ducem totiêns victôrem ab inimîcôrum iniûriîs dêfenderent, imperâvit ut sê Rômam sequerentur. Summâ cum alacritâte mîlitês pâruêrunt, et trânsitô Rubicône[4] inîtium bellî civîlis factum est.

Italiae urbês quidem omnês ferê [5]rêbus Caesaris favêbant et eum benignê excêpêrunt. Quâ rê commôtus Pompêius ante Caesaris adventum Rômâ excessit et Brundisium[6] pervênit, inde [7]paucîs post diêbus cum omnibus cōpiîs ad Êpîrum mare trânsiit. Eum Caesar cum septem legiônibus et quîngentîs equitibus secûtus est, et însignis inter Caesaris comitâtum erat Pûblius.

Plûribus leviôribus proeliîs factîs, tandem cōpiae adversae ad Pharsâlum[8] in Thessaliâ sitam castra posuêrunt. Cum Pompêi exercitus esset bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multî quî veterânâs legiônês quae Gallôs et Germânôs superâverant vehementer timêbant. Quôs[9] [10]ante proelium commissum Labiênus[11] lêgâtus, quî ab Caesare nûper dêfêcerat, ita adlocûtus est: "[12]Nôlîte existimâre hunc esse exercitum veterânôrum mîlitum. Omnibus interfuî proeliîs[13] neque temerê incognitam rem prônûntiô. Perexigua pars illîus exercitûs quî Gallôs superâvit adhûc superest. Magna pars occîsa est, multî domum discessêrunt, multî sunt relictî in Italiâ. Hae cōpiae quâs vidêtis in [14]citeriôre Galliâ nûper cōnscrip'tae sunt." Haec[15] cum dîxisset, iûrâvit sê nisi victôrem in castra nôn reversûrum esse. [16]Hoc idem Pompêius et omnês reliquî iûrâvêrunt, et magnâ spê et laetitiâ, sicut certam ad victôriam, cōpiae ê castrîs exiêrunt.

Item Caesar, animô[17] ad dîmicandum parâtus, exercitum suum êdûxit et septem cohortibus [18]praesidiô

castris relictis copiis triplici acie instruxit. Tum, militibus studio pugnae ardentibus, tuba signum dedit. Milites proucurrerunt et pilis missis gladios strinxerunt. Neque vero virtus hostibus defuit. Nam et tela missa sustinuerunt et impetum gladiatorum exciperunt et ordinem conseruauerunt. Utrumque diu et acriter pugnatum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum equites Pompei aciem Caesaris circumire conati sunt. Quod[19] ubi Caesar animadvertit, tertiam aciem,[20] quae ad id tempus quiescens fuerat, proucurrere iussit. Tum vero integrorum impetum[21] defessi hostes sustinere non potuerunt et omnes terga vertierunt. Sed Pompeius de fortunis suis desperans se in castra equo contulit, inde mox cum paucis equitibus effugit.

[Footnote 1: With «nê ... quidem» the emphatic word stands between the two.]

[Footnote 2: The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Caesar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Caesar to the lordship of the Roman world.]

[Footnote 3: «hostem», predicate accusative, §501.22.]

[Footnote 4: The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Caesar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Caesar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Caesar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C.]

[Footnote 5: «rebus Caesaris favēbant», *favoured Caesar's side*. In what case is «rebus»?]

[Footnote 6: «Brundisium», a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map.]

[Footnote 7: «paucis post diebus», *a few days later*; literally, *afterguards by a few days*. Cf. «paucis ante annis», p. 213, l. 12, and note.]

[Footnote 8: The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.]

[Footnote 9: «Quos», obj. of «adlocutus est».]

[Footnote 10: «ante proelium commissum», *_before the beginning of the battle_*.]

[Footnote 11: «Labiēnus», Caesar's most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Caesar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.]

[Footnote 12: «Nôlîte existimare», *don't think*.]

[Footnote 13: «proeliis», §501.15.]

[Footnote 14: «citeriore Galliâ». This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps.]

[Footnote 15: «Haec», obj. of «dixisset».]

[Footnote 16: «Hoc idem», obj. of «iuraverunt».]

[Footnote 17: «animô», §501.30.]

[Footnote 18: «praesidiô castris», §501.17.]

[Footnote 19: «Quod», obj. of «animadvertit».]

[Footnote 20: «aciem», subj. of «prôcurrere».]

[Footnote 21: «impetum», obj. of «sustinere».]

[Illustration: SIGNIFER]

LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR

Pompêiô amîcîsque eius superâtis atque omnibus hostibus ubique victis, Caesar imperâtor Rômam rediit et [1]extrâ moenia urbis in campô Mârtilô castra posuit. Tum vêrô amplissimis honôribus adfectus est. Dictâtor creâtus est, et eî triumphus â senâtû est dêcretus. [2]Quô diê de Gallis triumphum êgit, tanta multitûdô hominum in urbem undique cônflûxit [3]ut omnia loca essent cônferta. Tempa patêbant, ârae fûmâbant, columnae sertis ôrnâtae erant. [4]Cum vêrô pompa urbem intrâret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est! Prîmum per portam ingressi sunt senâtus et magistrâtus. Secûtî sunt tîbîcinês, signiferi, peditês laureâ corônâti canentês: "Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat, quî subêgit Galliam," et "Mille, mille, mille, mille Gallôs trucidâvimus." Multî praedam captârum urbium portâbant, arma, omnia bellî instrûmenta. Secûtî sunt equitês, animôsîs atque splendidissimê ôrnâtis equis vecti, inter quôs Pûblius adulêscens fortissimus habêbâtur. Adducêbantur tauri, arietês, [5]quî dis immortalibus immolântur. Ita longô agmine prôgrediens exercitus [6]sacrâ viâ per forum in Capitôlium perrêxit.

Imperâtor ipse cum urbem intrâret, undique laetô clâmôre multitûdinis salûtatus est. Stâbat in currû aureô quem quattuor albî equi vehêbant. Indûtus [7]togâ pictâ, alterâ manû habênas et lauream tenêbat, alterâ eburneum scêptrum. Post eum servus in currû stâns auream corônâ super caput eius tenêbat. Ante currum miserrimî captivî, rêgês prîncipêsque superâtârum gentium, catênis vincti, prôgrediêbantur; et vîginti quattuor lictôrês[8] laureatâs fascis ferentês et signiferi currum Caesaris comitâbantur. Conclûdit agmen multitûdô captivôrum, quî, in servitûtem redacti,[9] dêmissô vultû, vinctis[10] brachiis, sequuntur; quibuscum veniunt longissimô ôrdine militês, etiam hî praedam vel insignia militâria ferentês.

[Illustration: LICTORES CUM FASCIBUS]

Caesar cum Capitôlium ascendisset, in templô Iovî Capitôlinô sacra fêcit. Simul[11] captivôrum quî nôbilissimî erant, abducti in carcerem,[12] interfecti sunt. Sacris factis Caesar dê Capitôliô dêscendit et in forô mîitibus suis honôrês militârîs dedit êisque pecûniam ex bellî praedâ distribuit.

His omnibus rêbus cônfectis, Pûblius Caesarem valêre[13] iussit et quam celerrimê ad vîllam contendit ut patrem mâtremque salûtâret.

[14]Dê rêbus gestis P. Cornêli Lentulî hâctenus.

[Footnote 1: A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors.]

[Footnote 2: «Quô diê», *on the day that*, abl. of time.]

[Footnote 3: «ut ... essent», §501.43.]

[Footnote 4: «Cum ... intrâret», §501.46.]

[Footnote 5: «quî ... immolârentur», §501.40.]

[Footnote 6: The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions.]

[Footnote 7: The «toga picta» worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p. 213.]

[Footnote 8: The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the *fasces*, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law.]

[Footnote 9: «dêmissô vultû», *with downcast countenance.*]

[Footnote 10: «vîncîs», from «vinciô».]

[Footnote 11: «Simul», etc., *At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest.*]

[Footnote 12: The prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill.]

[Footnote 13: «valêre iussit», *bade farewell to.*]

[Footnote 14: This sentence marks the end of the story.]

APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

NOUNS

«460.» Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION--«Â-»stems, Gen. Sing. «-ae»

SECOND DECLENSION--«O-»stems, Gen. Sing. «-î»

THIRD DECLENSION--Consonant stems and «I-»stems, Gen. Sing. «-is»

FOURTH DECLENSION--«U-»stems, Gen. Sing. «-ûs»

FIFTH DECLENSION--«Ê-»stems, Gen. Sing. «-êî» or «-eî»

«461.» FIRST DECLENSION. Â-STEMS

«domina», *lady* STEM «dominâ-» BASE «domin-»

SINGULAR PLURAL TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS *Nom.* domina -a dominae -ae *Gen.* dominae -ae dominârum -ârum *Dat.* dominae -ae dominîs -îs *Acc.* dominam -am dominâs -âs *Abl.* dominâ -â dominîs -îs

a. «Dea» and «fîlia» have the termination «-âbus» in the dative and ablative plural.

«462.» SECOND DECLENSION. *O*-STEMS

a. MASCULINES IN -us

«dominus», *master* STEM «domino-» BASE «domin-»

SINGULAR PLURAL TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS *Nom.* dominus -us dominî -î *Gen.* dominî -î dominôrum -ôrum *Dat.* dominô -ô dominîs -îs *Acc.* dominum -um dominôs -ôs *Abl.* dominô -ô dominîs -îs

1. Nouns in «-us» of the second declension have the termination «-e» in the vocative singular, as «domine».
2. Proper names in «-ius», and «filius», end in «-î» in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as «Vergî 'lî, filî».

b. NEUTERS IN -um

«pîlum», *spear* STEM «pîlo-» BASE «pîl-»

SINGULAR PLURAL TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS *Nom.* pîlum -um pîla -a *Gen.* pîlî -î pîlôrum -ôrum *Dat.* pîlô -ô pîlîs -îs *Acc.* pîlum -um pîla -a *Abl.* pîlô -ô pîlîs -îs

1. Masculines in «-ius» and neuters in «-ium» end in «-î» in the genitive singular, *not* in «-îî», and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

«puer», *boy* «ager», *field* «vir», *man* STEMS «puero-» «agro-» «viro-» BASES «puer-» «agr-» «vir-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* puer ager vir -- *Gen.* puerî agrî virî -î *Dat.* puerô agrô virô -ô *Acc.* puerum agrum virum -um *Abl.* puerô agrô virô -ô

PLURAL *Nom.* puerî agrî virî -î *Gen.* puerôrum agrôrum virôrum -ôrum *Dat.* puerîs agrîs virîs -îs *Acc.* puerôs agrôs virôs -ôs *Abl.* puerîs agrîs virîs -îs

«463.» THIRD DECLENSION.

CLASSIFICATION

I. Consonant Stems

1. Stems that add «-s» to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.
2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: *a.* masculines and feminines; *b.* neuters.

II. *I*-Stems.

Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

«464.» I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. Nouns that add «-s» to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only

«princeps», «miles», m., «lapis», m., m., *chief soldier stone* BASES | OR | «princip-» «milit-» «lapid-» STEMS |

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* princeps miles lapis -s *Gen.* principis militis lapidis -is *Dat.* principi militi lapidi -i *Acc.* principem militem lapidem -em *Abl.* principe milite lapide -e

PLURAL *Nom.* principes milites lapides -es *Gen.* principum militum lapidum -um *Dat.* principibus militibus lapidibus -ibus *Acc.* principes milites lapides -es *Abl.* principibus militibus lapidibus -ibus

«rex», m., «iudex», m., «virtus», f., *king judge virtue* BASES | OR | «reg-» «iudic-» «virtut-» STEMS |

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* rex iudex virtus -s *Gen.* regis iudicis virtutis -is *Dat.* regi iudici virtuti -i *Acc.* regem iudicem virtutem -em *Abl.* rege iudice virtute -e

PLURAL *Nom.* reges iudices virtutes -es *Gen.* regum iudicum virtutum -um *Dat.* regibus iudicibus virtutibus -ibus *Acc.* reges iudices virtutes -es *Abl.* regibus iudicibus virtutibus -ibus

NOTE. For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. §233.3.

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

«consul», m., «legio», f., «ordo», «pater», m., *consul legion m., row father* BASES | OR | «consul-» «legion-» «ordin-» «patr-» STEMS |

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* consul legio ordo pater -- *Gen.* consulis legionis ordinis patris -is *Dat.* consuli legioni ordini patri -i *Acc.* consulem legionem ordinem patrem -em *Abl.* consule legione ordine patre -e

PLURAL *Nom.* consules legiones ordines patres -es *Gen.* consulum legionum ordinum patrum -um *Dat.* consulibus legionibus ordinibus patribus -ibus *Acc.* consules legiones ordines patres -es *Abl.* consulibus legionibus ordinibus patribus -ibus

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. §236.1-3.

b. NEUTERS «flumen», «tempus», «opus», «caput», n., *river n., time n., work n., head* BASES | OR | «flumin-» «tempor-» «oper-» «capit-» STEMS |

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* flumen tempus opus caput -- *Gen.* fluminis temporis operis capitis -is *Dat.* flumini temporis operi capiti -i *Acc.* flumen tempus opus caput -- *Abl.* flumine tempore opere capite -e

PLURAL *Nom.* flumina tempora opera capita -a *Gen.* fluminum temporum operum capitum -um *Dat.* fluminibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus *Acc.* flumina tempora opera capita -a *Abl.* fluminibus temporibus operibus capitibus -ibus

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. §238.2, 3.

«465.» II. I-STEMS

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

«caedês», f., «hostis», «urbs», f., «cliêns», m., *slaughter m., enemy city retainer* STEMS «caedi-» «hosti-» «urbi-» «clienti-» BASES «caed-» «host-» «urb-» «client-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* caedês hostis urbs cliêns -s, -is, or -ês *Gen.* caedis hostis urbis clientis -is *Dat.* caedî hostî urbî clientî -î *Acc.* caedem hostem urbem clientem -em (-im) *Abl.* caede hoste urbe cliente -e (-î)

PLURAL *Nom.* caedês hostês urbês clientês -ês *Gen.* caedium hostium urbium clientium -ium *Dat.* caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus *Acc.* caedîs, -ês hostîs, -ês urbîs, -ês clientîs, -ês -îs, -ês *Abl.* caedibus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus

1. «Avis», «cîvis», «fînis», «ignis», «nâvis», have the abl. sing. in «-î» or «-e».

2. «Turris» has accusative «turrim» and ablative «turrî» or «turre».

b. NEUTERS

«însigne», n., «animal», n., «calcar», *decoration animal n., spur*

STEMS «însigni-» «animâli-» «calcâri-» BASES «însign-» «animâl-» «calcâr-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* însigne animal calcar -e or -- *Gen.* însignis animâlis calcâris -is *Dat.* însignî animâlî calcârî -î *Acc.* însigne animal calcar -e or -- *Abl.* însignî animâlî calcârî -î

PLURAL *Nom.* însignia animâlia calcâria -ia *Gen.* însignium animâlium calcârium -ium *Dat.* însignibus animâlîbus calcârîbus -ibus *Acc.* însignia animâlia calcâria -ia *Abl.* însignibus animâlîbus calcârîbus -ibus

«466.» THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

«adventus», m., «cornû», n., *horn arrival* STEMS «adventu-» «cornu-» BASES «advent-» «corn-»

TERMINATIONS SINGULAR MASC. NEUT. *Nom.* adventus cornû -us -û *Gen.* adventûs cornûs -ûs -ûs *Dat.* adventuî (û) cornû -uî (û) -û *Acc.* adventum cornû -um -û *Abl.* adventû cornû -û -û

PLURAL *Nom.* adventûs cornua -ûs -ua *Gen.* adventuum cornuum -uum -uum *Dat.* adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus *Acc.* adventûs cornua -ûs -ua *Abl.* adventibus cornibus -ibus -ibus

«467.» THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Ê-STEMS

«diês», m., *day* «rês», f., *thing* STEMS «diê-» «rê-» BASES «di-» «r-»

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS *Nom.* diês rês -ês *Gen.* diêî reî -êî or -eî *Dat.* diêî reî -êî or -eî *Acc.* diem rem -em *Abl.* diê rê -ê

PLURAL *Nom.* diês rês -ês *Gen.* diêrum rêrum -êrum *Dat.* diêbus rêbus -êbus *Acc.* diês rês -ês *Abl.* diêbus rêbus -êbus

«468.» SPECIAL PARADIGMS

«deus», «domus», f., «vîs», f., «îter», m., *god house strength n., way* STEMS «deo-» «domu-» «vî-» and «îter-» and «vîri-» «itiner-» BASES «de-» «dom-» «v-» and «îter-» and «vîr-» «itiner-»

SINGULAR *Nom.* deus domus vîs iter *Gen.* deî domûs vîs (rare) itineris *Dat.* deô domuî, -ô vî (rare) itinerî
Acc. deum domum vim iter *Abl.* deô domô, -û vî itinere

PLURAL *Nom.* deî, dî domûs vîrês itinera *Gen.* deôrum, deum domuum, -ôrum vîrium itinerum *Dat.* deîs, dîs
domibus vîribus itineribus *Acc.* deôs domôs, -ûs vîrîs, -ês itinera *Abl.* deîs, dîs domibus vîribus itineribus

a. The vocative singular of «deus» is like the nominative.

b. The locative of «domus» is «domî».

ADJECTIVES

«469.» FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O- AND Â-STEMS

a. ADJECTIVES IN -us

«bonus», *good* STEMS «bono-» m. and n., «bona-» f. BASE «bon-»

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* bonus bona bonum *Gen.* bonî bonae bonî *Dat.* bonô bonae bonô
Acc. bonum bonam bonum *Abl.* bonô bonâ bonô

PLURAL *Nom.* bonî bonae bona *Gen.* bonôrum bonârum bonôrum *Dat.* bonîs bonîs bonîs *Acc.* bonôs bonâs
bona *Abl.* bonîs bonîs bonîs

b. ADJECTIVES IN «-er»

«lîber», *free* STEMS «lîbero-» m. and n., «lîberâ-» f. BASE «lîber-»

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* lîber lîbera lîberum *Gen.* lîberî lîberae lîberî *Dat.* lîberô lîberae
lîberô *Acc.* lîberum lîberam lîberum *Abl.* lîberô lîberâ lîberô

PLURAL *Nom.* lîberî lîberae lîbera *Gen.* lîberôrum lîberârum lîberôrum *Dat.* lîberîs lîberîs lîberîs *Acc.* lîberôs
lîberâs lîbera *Abl.* lîberîs lîberîs lîberîs

«pulcher», *pretty* STEMS «pulchro-» m. and n., «pulchrâ-» f. BASE «pulchr-»

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* pulcher pulchra pulchrum *Gen.* pulchrî pulchrae pulchrî *Dat.*
pulchrô pulchrae pulchrô *Acc.* pulchrum pulchram pulchrum *Abl.* pulchrô pulchrâ pulchrô

PLURAL *Nom.* pulchrî pulchrae pulchra *Gen.* pulchrôrum pulchrârum pulchrôrum *Dat.* pulchrîs pulchrîs
pulchrîs *Acc.* pulchrôs pulchrâs pulchra *Abl.* pulchrîs pulchrîs pulchrîs

«470.» THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

«alius», *another* STEMS «alio-» m. and n., «aliâ-» f. BASE «ali-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* alius alia aliud aliî aliae alia *Gen.*
aliûs aliûs aliûs aliôrum aliârum aliôrum *Dat.* aliî aliî aliî aliîs aliîs aliîs *Acc.* alium aliam aliud aliôs aliâs alia
Abl. aliô aliâ aliô aliîs aliîs aliîs

«ûnus», *one, only* STEMS «ûno-» m. and n., «ûnâ-» f. BASE «ûn-»

MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* ūnus ūna ūnum ūnī ūnae ūna *Gen.* ūnīus ūnīus ūnīus ūnōrum ūnārum ūnōrum *Dat.* ūnī ūnī ūnī ūnīs ūnīs ūnīs *Acc.* ūnum ūnam ūnum ūnōs ūnās ūna *Abl.* ūnō ūnā ūnō ūnīs ūnīs ūnīs

a. For the complete list see §108.

«471.» ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

«âcer, âcris, âcre», *keen, eager* STEM «âcri-» BASE «âcr-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* âcer âcris âcre âcrēs âcrēs âcria *Gen.* âcris âcris âcris âcrium âcrium âcrium *Dat.* âcrī âcrī âcrī âcribus âcribus âcribus *Acc.* âcrem âcrem âcre âcrīs, -ēs âcrīs, -ēs âcria *Abl.* âcrī âcrī âcrī âcribus âcribus âcribus

II. TWO ENDINGS

«omnis, omne», *every, all* STEM «omni-» BASE «omn-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* omnis omne omnēs omnia *Gen.* omnis omnis omnium omnium *Dat.* omnī omnī omnibus omnibus *Acc.* omnem omne omnīs, -ēs omnia *Abl.* omnī omnī omnibus omnibus

III. ONE ENDING

«pâr», *equal* STEM «pari-» BASE «par-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* pâr pâr parēs paria *Gen.* paris paris parium parium *Dat.* parī parī paribus paribus *Acc.* parem pâr parīs, -ēs paria *Abl.* parī parī paribus paribus

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have «-î» in the ablative singular.

[Transcriber's Note: This sentence appears to be a footnote, but there is no footnote tag on the page.]

«472.» PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

«amâns», *loving* STEM «amanti-» BASE «amant-»

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* amâns amâns amantēs amantia *Gen.* amantis amantis amantium amantium *Dat.* amantī amantī amantibus amantibus *Acc.* amantem amantem amantīs, -ēs amantia *Abl.* amante, -î amante, -î amantibus amantibus

«iêns», *going* STEM «ienti-, eunti-» BASE «ient-, eunt-»

Nom. iêns iêns euntēs euntia *Gen.* euntis euntis euntium euntium *Dat.* euntī euntī euntibus euntibus *Acc.* euntem euntem iêns euntīs, -ês euntia *Abl.* eunte, -î eunte, -î euntibus euntibus

«473.» REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE MASC. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.

altus (alto-) altior altius altissimus -a -um líber (líbero-) líberior líberius líberrimus -a -um pulcher (pulchro-) pulchrior pulchrius pulcherrimus -a -um audâx (audâci-) audâcior audâcius audâcissimus -a -um brevis (brevi-) brevior brevis brevis -a -um âcer (âcri-) âcior âcius âcerrimus -a -um

«474.» DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

«altior», *higher*

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* altior altius altiôrês altiôra *Gen.* altiôris altiôris altiôrum altiôrum *Dat.* altiôri altiôri altiôribus altiôribus *Acc.* altiôrem altius altiôrês altiôra *Abl.* altiôre altiôre altiôribus altiôribus

«plûs», *more*

Nom. ---- plûs plûrês plûra *Gen.* ---- plûris plûrium plûrium *Dat.* ---- ---- plûribus plûribus *Acc.* ---- plûs plûrês (-ês) plûra *Abl.* ---- plûre plûribus plûribus

«475.» IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE bonus, -a, -um, melior, melius, optimus, -a, -um, *good better best* malus, -a, -um, peior, peius, pessimus, -a, -um, *bad worse worst* magnus, -a, -um, maior, maius, maximus, -a, -um, *great greater greatest* multus, -a, -um, ----, plûs, *more* plûrimus, -a, -um, *much most* parvus, -a, -um, minor, minus, minimus, -a, -um, *small smaller _smallest* senex, senis, senior maximus nâtû *old* iuvenis, -e, iûnior minimus nâtû *young* vetus, veteris, vetustior, -ius veterrimus, -a, -um *old* facilis, -e, facilior, -ius facillimus, -a, -um *easy* difficilis, -e, difficilior, -ius difficillimus, -a, -um *difficult* similis, -e, similior, -ius simillimus, -a, -um *similar* dissimilis, -e, dissimilior, -ius dissimillimus, -a, -um *dissimilar* humilis, -e, *low* humilior, -ius humillimus, -a, -um gracilis, -e, gracilior, -ius gracillimus, -a, -um *slender* exterus, *outward* exterior, extrêmus, extimus, *outer, exterior outermost, last* îferus, *below* îferior, *lower* înfimus, îmus, *lowest* posterus, posterior, *later* postrêmus, postumus, *following last* superus, *above* superior, suprêmus, summus, *higher highest* [[cis, citrâ,]] ceterior, *hither* citimus, *hithermost* [[on this side]] [[in, intrâ,]] interior, *inner* intimus, *inmost* [[in, within]] [[prae, prô,]] prior, *former* prîmus, *first* [[before]] [[prope, near]] propior, *nearer* proximus, *next* [[ultrâ, beyond]] ulterior, *further* ultimus, *furthest*

«476.» REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE cârê (cârus), *dearly* cârius cârissimê miserê (miser), *wretchedly* miserius miserrimê âcriter (âcer), *sharply* âcius âcerrimê facile (facilis), *easily* facilius facillimê

«477.» IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE diû, *long, a long time* diûtius diûtissimê bene (bonus), *well* melius, *better* optimê, *best* male (malus), *ill* peius, *worse* pessimê, *worst* magnopere, *greatly* magis, *more* maximê, *most* multum (multus), *much* plûs, *more* plûrimum, *most* parum, *little* minus, *less* minimê, *least* saepe, *often* saepîus saepissimê

«478.» NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting «ûnus», «duo», «três», the hundreds above one hundred, and «mille» used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like «bonus, -a, -um».

CARDINALS ORDINALS (*How many*) (*In what order*) 1, ûnus, -a, -um, *one* prîmus, -a, -um *first* 2, duo, duae, duo *two* secundus (*or* alter) *second* 3, três, tria *three*, tertius *third*, 4, quattuor etc. quârtus etc. 5, quînce

quintus 6, sex sextus 7, septem septimus 8, octo octavus 9, novem nonus 10, decem decimus 11, undecim undecimus 12, duodecim duodecimus 13, tredecim (decem (et) tres) tertius decimus 14, quattuordecim quartus decimus 15, quindecim quintus decimus 16, sedecim sextus decimus 17, septendecim septimus decimus 18, duodèvigintí (octòdecim) duodèvicensimus 19, ùndèvigintí (novendecim) ùndèvicensimus 20, vîgintí vîcensimus 21, {vîgintí ùnus or {vîcensimus prîmus or {ùnus et vîgintí, etc. {ùnus et vîcensimus, etc. 30, trîgintâ trîcensimus 40, quadrâgintâ quadrâgênsimus 50, quînguâgintâ quînguâgênsimus 60, sexâgintâ sexâgênsimus 70, septuâgintâ septuâgênsimus 80, octôgintâ octôgênsimus 90, nônâgintâ nônâgênsimus 100, centum centênsimus 101, centum (et) ùnus, etc. centênsimus (et) prîmus, etc. 120, centum (et) vîgintí centênsimus vîcensimus 121, centum (et) vîgintí ùnus, centênsimus (et) vîcensimus prîmus, etc. etc. 200, ducentí, -ae, -a ducentênsimus 300, trecentí trecentênsimus 400, quadringentí quadringentênsimus 500, quîngentí quîngentênsimus 600, sescentí sescentênsimus 700, septingentí septingentênsimus 800, octingentí octingentênsimus 900, nongentí nongentênsimus 1000, mîlle millênsimus

«479.» Declension of «duo», *two*, «três», *three*, and «mîlle», *a thousand*.

MASC. FEM. NEUT. M. AND F. NEUT. SING. PLUR. *N.* duo duae duo três trîa mîlle mîlia *G.* duorum duarum duorum trium trium mîlle mîlium *D.* duobus duabus duobus tribus tribus mîlle mîlibus *A.* duos duas duo or três tria *A.* duobus duabus duobus tribus tribus mîlle mîlibus

NOTE. «Mîlle» is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of «ùnus» cf. §470.

PRONOUNS

«480.» PERSONAL

ego, I tû, you suî, of himself, etc. SING. PLUR. SING. PLUR. SING. PLUR. *Nom.* ego nôs tû vôs ---- ----
Gen. meî nostrum, -trî tuî vestrum, -trî suî suî *Dat.* mihi nôbîs tibi vobîs sibi sibi *Acc.* mê nôs tê vôs sê, sêsê
Abl. mê nôbîs tê vobîs sê, sêsê sê, sêsê

Note that «suî» is always reflexive.

«481.» DEMONSTRATIVE

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings «-îus» or «-ius» and «-î» in the gen. and dat. sing.

«ipse», *self*

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* ipse ipsa ipsum ipsî ipsae ipsa *Gen.* ipsî'us ipsî'us ipsî'us ipsôrum ipsârum ipsôrum *Dat.* ipsî ipsî ipsî ipsîs ipsîs ipsîs *Acc.* ipsum ipsam ipsum ipsôs ipsâs ipsa *Abl.* ipsô ipsâ ipsô ipsîs ipsîs ipsîs

«hic», *this (here), he*

Nom. hic haec hoc hî hae haec *Gen.* huius huius huius hôrum hârum hôrum *Dat.* huic huic huic hîs hîs hîs *Acc.* hunc hanc hoc hôs hâs haec *Abl.* hôc hâc hôc hîs hîs hîs

«iste», *this, that (of yours), he*

Nom. iste ista istud istî istae ista *Gen.* istî'us istî'us istî'us istôrum istârum istôrum *Dat.* istî istî istî istîs istîs *Acc.* istum istam istud istôs istâs ista *Abl.* istô istâ istô istîs istîs istîs

«ille», *that* (yonder), *he*

Nom. ille illa illud illi illae illa *Gen.* illi'us illi'us illi'us illorum illarum illorum *Dat.* illi illi illi illis illis illis
Acc. illum illam illud illis illas illa *Abl.* illò illà illò illis illis illis

«is», *this, that, he*

Nom. is ea id iî, eî eae ea *Gen.* eius eius eius eorum earum eorum *Dat.* eî eî eî iîs, eîs iîs, eîs iîs, eîs *Acc.* eum
eam id eôs eâs ea *Abl.* eô eâ eô iîs, eîs iîs, eîs iîs, eîs

«îdem», *the same*

Nom. îdem e'adem idem iî'dem eae'dem e'adem eî'dem *Gen.* eius'dem eius'dem eius'dem eorum'dem
earum'dem eorum'dem *Dat.* eî'dem eî'dem eî'dem iîs'dem iîs'dem iîs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem *Acc.*
eun'dem ean'dem idem eôs'dem eâs'dem e'adem *Abl.* eô'dem eâ'dem eô'dem iîs'dem iîs'dem iîs'dem
eîs'dem eîs'dem eîs'dem

NOTE. In the plural of «is» and «îdem» the forms with two i's are preferred, the two i's being pronounced as one.

«482.» RELATIVE

«quî», *who, which, that*

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* quî quae quod quî quae quae *Gen.*
cuius cuius cuius quorum quarum quorum *Dat.* cui cui cui quibus quibus quibus *Acc.* quem quam quod quôs
quâs quae *Abl.* quô quâ quô quibus quibus quibus

«483.» INTERROGATIVE

«quis», substantive, *who, what*

SINGULAR PLURAL MASC. & FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* quis quid qui quae quae *Gen.*
cuius cuius quorum quarum quorum *Dat.* cui cui quibus quibus quibus *Acc.* quem quid quôs quâs quae *Abl.*
quô quô quibus quibus quibus

The interrogative adjective «quî, quae, quod», is declined like the relative.

«484.» INDEFINITES

«quis» and «quî», as declined above,[1] are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of «quis» and «quî».

«quisque», *each*

SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE MASC. & FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* quisque quidque quisque
quaeque quodque *Gen.* cuius'que cuius'que cuius'que cuius'que cuius'que *Dat.* cuique cuique cuique cuique
cuique *Acc.* quemque quidque quemque quamque quodque *Abl.* quôque quôque quôque quâque quôque

[Footnote 1: «qua» is generally used instead of «quae» in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.]

«485.» «quîdam», *a certain one, a certain*

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has «quoddam» and the substantive «quiddam».

SINGULAR MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* quîdam quaedam quoddam, quiddam (*subst.*) *Gen.* cuius'dam cuius'dam cuius'dam *Dat.* cuidam cuidam cuidam *Acc.* quendam quandam quoddam, quiddam (*subst.*) *Abl.* quôdam quâdam quôdam

PLURAL *Nom.* quîdam quaedam quaedam *Gen.* quôrun'dam quârûn'dam quôrun'dam *Dat.* quibus'dam quibus'dam quibus'dam *Acc.* quôsdam quâsdam quaedam *Abl.* quibus'dam quibus'dam quibus'dam

«486.» «quisquam», substantive, *any one (at all)*

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* quisquam quicquam (quidquam) *Gen.* cuius'quam cuius'quam *Dat.* cuiquam cuiquam *Acc.* quemquam quicquam (quidquam) *Abl.* quôquam quôquam

«487.» «aliquis», substantive, *some one.* «aliquî», adjective, *some*

SINGULAR SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* aliquis aliquid aliquî aliqua aliquod *Gen.* alicu'ius alicu'ius alicu'ius alicu'ius alicu'ius *Dat.* alicui alicui alicui alicui alicui *Acc.* aliquem aliquid aliquem aliquam aliquod *Abl.* aliquô aliquô aliquô aliqua aliquô

PLURAL FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE MASC. FEM. NEUT. *Nom.* aliquî aliquae aliqua *Gen.* aliquô'rum aliquâ'rum aliquô'rum *Dat.* ali'quibus ali'quibus ali'quibus *Acc.* aliquôs aliquâs aliqua *Abl.* ali'quibus ali'quibus ali'quibus

a. «quis (quî)», *any one, any*, is the least definite (§297.b). «aliquis (aliquî)», *some one, some*, is more definite than «quis». «quisquam», *any one (at all)*, and its adjective «ûllus», *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

REGULAR VERBS

«488.» FIRST CONJUGATION. Â-VERBS. AMÔ

PRINCIPAL PARTS «amô, amâre, amâvî, amâtus» PRES. STEM amâ- PERF. STEM amâv- PART. STEM amât-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I love, am loving, I am loved, etc. do love, etc.* amô amâmus amor amâmur amâs amâtis amâris, -re amâminî amat amant amâtur amantur

IMPERFECT *I loved, was loving, I was loved, etc. did love, etc.* amâbam amâbâmus amâbar amâbâmur amâbâs amâbâtis amâbâris, -re amâbâminî amâbat amâbant amâbâtur amâbantur

FUTURE *I shall love, etc. I shall be loved, etc.* amâbô amâbimus amâbor amâbimur amâbis amâbitis amâberis, -re amâbiminî amâbit amâbunt amâbitur amâbuntur

PERFECT *I have loved, loved, I have been (was) loved, etc. did love, etc.* amâvi amâvimus amâtus, {sum amâtî, {sumus amâvistî amâvistis -a, -um {es -ae, -a {estis amâvit amâvêrunt, -re {est {sunt

PLUPERFECT *I had loved, etc. I had been loved, etc.* amâveram amâverâmus amâtus, {eram amâtî, {erâmus amâverâs amâverâtis -a, -um {erâs -ae, -a {erâtis amâverat amâverant {erat {erant

FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have loved, etc. I shall have been loved, etc.* amâverô amâverimus amâtus, {erô amâtî, {erimus amâveris amâveritis -a, -um {eris -ae, -a {eritis amâverit amâverint {erit {erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT amem amêmus amer amêmur amês amêtis amêris, -re amêminî amet ament amêtur amentur

IMPERFECT amârem amâremus amârer amârêmur amârês amârêtis amârêris, -re amârêminî amâret amârent amârêtur amârentur

PERFECT amâverim amâverimus amâtus, {sim amâtî, {sîmus amâveris amâveritis -a, -um {sîs -ae, -a {sîtis amâverit amâverint {sit {sint

PLUPERFECT amâvissem amâvissemus amâtus, {essem amâtî, {essêmus amâvissemus amâvissetis -a, -um {essês -ae, -a {essêtis amâvisset amâvissetis {esset {essent

IMPERATIVE PRESENT amâ, *love thou* amâre, *be thou loved* amâte, *love ye* amâminî, *be ye loved*

FUTURE amâtô, *thou shalt love* amâtôr, *thou shalt be loved* amâtô, *he shall love* amâtôr, *he shall be loved* amâtôte, *you shall love* ---- amantô, *they shall love* amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE Pres. amâre, *to love* amârî, *to be loved* Perf. amâvisse, amâtus, -a, -um esse, *to have loved to have been loved* Fut. amâtûrus, -a, -um [[amâtum îrî]], *to be about to be loved* esse, *to be about to love*

PARTICIPLES Pres. amâns, -antis, Pres. ---- *loving* Fut. amâtûrus, -a, -um, Gerundive[1] amandus, -a, -um, _to be about to love loved_ Perf. ---- Perf. amâtus, -a, -um, *having been loved, loved*

GERUND Nom. ---- Gen. amandî, *of loving* Dat. amandô, *for loving* Acc. amandum, *loving* Abl. amandô, *by loving*

SUPINE (Active Voice) Acc. [[amâtum]], *to love* Abl. [[amâtû]], *to love, in the loving*

[Footnote 1: Sometimes called the future passive participle.]

«489.» SECOND CONJUGATION. Ê-VERBS. MONEÔ

PRINCIPAL PARTS «moneô, monêre, monuî, monitus» PRES. STEM monê- PERF. STEM monu- PART. STEM monit-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I advise, etc., I am advised, etc.* moneô monêmus moneor monêmur monês monêtis monêris, -re monêminî monet monent monêtur monentur

IMPERFECT *I was advising, etc., I was advised, etc.* monêbam monêbâmus monêbar monêbâmur monêbâs monêbâtis monêbâris, -re monêbâminî monêbat monêbant monêbâtur monêbântur

FUTURE *I shall advise, etc., I shall be advised, etc.* monêbô monêbimus monêbor monêbimur monêbis monêbitis monêberis, -re monêbiminî monêbit monêbunt monêbitur monêbuntur

PERFECT *I have advised, I have been (was) advised, etc. I advised, etc.* monuî monuimus {sum {sumus monuistî monuistis monitus, {es monitî, {estis monuit monuêrunt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {sunt

PLUPERFECT *I had advised, etc., I had been advised, etc.*

monueram monuerâmus {eram {erâmus monuerâs monuerâtis monitus, {eras monitî, {eratis monuerat monuerant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erant

FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have advised, I shall have been advised, etc. etc.* monuerô monuerimus {erô {erimus monueris monueritis monitus, {eris monitî, {eritis monuerit monuerint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT moneam moneâmus monear moneâmur moneâs moneâtis moneâris, -re moneâminî moneat moneant moneâtur moneantur

IMPERFECT monêrem monêrêmus monêrer monêrêmur monêrês monêrêtis monêrêris, -re monêrêminî monêret monêrent monêrêtur monêrentur

PERFECT monuerim monuerimus {sim {sîmus monueris monueritis monitus, {sîs monitî, {sîtis monuerit monuerint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sint

PLUPERFECT monuissem monuissêmus {essem {essêmus monuissês monuissêtis monitus, {essês monitî, {essêtis monuisset monuissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essent

IMPERATIVE PRESENT monê, *advise thou* monêre, *be thou advised* monête, *advise ye* monêminî, *be ye advised*

FUTURE monêtô, *thou shall* monêtôr, *thou shalt be advised* advise monêtô, *he shall advise* monêtôr, *he shall be advised* monêtôte, *you shall advise* ---- monentô, *they shall* monentôr, *they shall be advised* advise

INFINITIVE *Pres.* monêre, *to advise* monêrî, *to be advised* *Perf.* monuisse, *to have* monitus, -a, -um esse, *advised to have been advised* *Fut.* monitûrus, -a, -um [[monitum îrî]], esse, *to be to be about to be advised about to advise*

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* monêns, -entis, *Pres.* ---- *advising* *Fut.* monitûrus, -a, -um, *Ger.* monendus, -a, -um, *about to advise to be advised* *Perf.* ---- *Perf.* monitus, -a, -um, *having been advised, advised*

GERUND *Nom.* ---- *Gen.* monendî, *of advising* *Dat.* monendô, *for advising* *Acc.* monendum, *advising* *Abl.* monendô, *by advising*

SUPINE (Active Voice) *Acc.* [[monitum]], *to advise* *Abl.* [[monitû]], *to advise, in the advising*

«490.» THIRD CONJUGATION. E-VERBS. REGÔ

PRINCIPAL PARTS «regô, regere, rexî, rêctus» PRES. STEM rege- PERF. STEM rêx- PART. STEM rêct-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I rule, etc. I am ruled, etc.* regô regimus re'gor re'gimur regis regitis re'geris, -re regi' minî regit regunt re'gitur regun'tur

IMPERFECT *I was ruling, etc. I was ruled, etc.* regêbam regêbâmus regê'bar regêbâ'mur regêbâs regêbâtis regêbâ'ris, -re regêbâ' minî regêbat regêbant regêbâ'tur regêban'tur

FUTURE *I shall rule, etc. I shall be ruled, etc.* regam regêmus re'gar regê'mur regês regêtis regê'ris, -re regê' minî reget regent regê'tur regen'tur

PERFECT *I have ruled, etc. I have been ruled, etc.* rêxî rêximus {sum {sumus rêxistî rêxistis rêctus, {es rêctî, {estis rêxit rêxêrunt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {sunt

PLUPERFECT *I had ruled, etc. I had been ruled, etc.* rēxeram rēxerāmus {eram {erāmus rēxerās rēxerātis rēctus, {eras rēctī, {erātis rēxerat rēxerant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erant

FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have ruled, etc. I shall have been ruled, etc.* rēxerō rēxerimus {erō {erimus rēxeris rēxeritis rēctus, {eris rēctī, {eritis rēxerit rēxerint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT regam regāmus regar regāmur regās regātis regāris, -re regāminī regat regant regātur regantur

IMPERFECT regerem regerēmus regerer regerēmur regerēs regerētis regerēris, -re regerēminī regeret regerent regerētur regerentur

PERFECT rēxerim rēxerimus {sim {sīmus rēxeris rēxeritis rēctus, {sīs rēctī, {sītis rēxerit rēxerint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sint

PLUPERFECT rēxissem rēxissēmus {essem {essēmus rēxissēs rēxissētis rēctus, {essēs rēctī, {essētis rēxisset rēxissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essent

IMPERATIVE PRESENT rege, *rule thou* regere, *be thou ruled* regite, *rule ye* regiminī, *be ye ruled*

FUTURE regitō, *thou shalt rule* regitor, *thou shalt be ruled* regitō *he shall rule* regitor, *he shall be ruled* regitōte, *ye shall rule* ---- reguntō, *they shall rule* reguntor, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVE Pres. regere, *to rule* regī, *to be ruled* Perf. rēxisse, *to have* rēctus, -a, -um esse, *ruled to have been ruled* Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um [[rēctum īrī]], esse, *to be to be about to be ruled about to rule*

PARTICIPLES Pres. regēns, -entis, Pres. ---- *ruling* Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, Ger. regendus, -a, -um, *to be ruled about to rule* Perf. ---- Perf. rēctus, -a, -um, *having been ruled, ruled*

GERUND Nom. ---- Gen. regendī, *of ruling* Dat. regendō, *for ruling* Acc. regendum, *ruling* Abl. regendō, *by ruling*

SUPINE (Active Voice) Acc. [[rēctum]], *to rule* Abl. [[rēctū]], *to rule, in the ruling*

«491.» FOURTH CONJUGATION. Î-VERBS. AUDIÔ

PRINCIPAL PARTS «audiô, audīre, audīvī, audītus» PRES. STEM audī- PERF. STEM audīv- PART. STEM audīt-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I hear, etc. I am heard, etc.* audiô audīmus au'dior audī'mur audīs audītis audī'ris, -re audī'minī audit audiunt audī'tur audiun'tur

IMPERFECT *I was hearing, etc. I was heard, etc.* audiēbam audiēbāmus audiē'bar audiēbā'mur audiēbās audiēbātis audiēbā'ris, -re audiēbā'minī audiēbat audiēbant audiēbā'tur audiēban'tur

FUTURE *I shall hear, etc. I shall be heard, etc.* audiam audiēmus au'diar audiē'mur audiēs audiētis audiē'ris, -re audiē'minī audiet audient audiē'tur audien'tur

PERFECT *I have heard, etc. I have been heard, etc.* audīvī audīvīmus {sum {sumus audīvīstī audīvīstis audītus, {es audītī, {estis audīvīt audīvērunt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {sunt

PLUPERFECT *I had heard, etc. I had been heard, etc.* audīveram audīverāmus {eram {erāmus audīverās

audīverātis audītus, {eras audītī, {erātis audīverat audīverant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erant

FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have heard, etc. I shall have been heard, etc.* audīverō audīverimus {erō {erimus
audīveris audīveritis audītus, {eris audītī, {eritis audīverit audīverint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT audiam audiāmus audiar audiāmur audiās audiātis audiāris, -re audiāminī audiat
audiant audiātur audiantur

IMPERFECT audīrem audīrēmus audīrer audīrēmur audīrēs audīrētis audīrēris, -re audīrēminī audīret audīrent
audīrētur audīrentur

PERFECT audīverim audīverimus {sim {sīmus audīveris audīveritis audītus, {sīs audītī, {sītis audīverit
audīverint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sint

PLUPERFECT audīvissem audīvissemus {essem {essēmus audīvisse audīvissetis audītus, {essēs audītī,
{essētis audīvisset audīvisset -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essent

IMPERATIVE PRESENT PRESENT audī, *hear thou* audīre, *be thou heard* audīte, *hear ye* audīminī, *be ye
heard*

FUTURE audītō, *thou shalt hear* audītor, *thou shalt be heard* audītō *he shall hear* audītor, *he shall be heard*
audītōte, *ye shall hear* ---- auduntō, *they shall hear* audiuntor, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE *Pres.* audīre, *to hear* audīrī, *to be heard* *Perf.* audīvisse, audītus, -a, -um esse, *to have heard to
have been heard* *Fut.* audītūrus, -a, -um [[audītum īrī]], esse, *to be to be about to be heard about to hear*

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* audiēns, -entis, *Pres.* ---- *hearing* *Fut.* audītūrus, -a, -um, *Ger.* audiendus, -a, -um, *to be
heard about to hear* *Perf.* ---- *Perf.* audītus, -a, -um, *having been heard, heard*

GERUND *Nom.* ---- *Gen.* audiendī, *of hearing* *Dat.* audiendō, *for hearing* *Acc.* audiendum, *hearing* *Abl.*
audiendō, *by hearing*

SUPINE (Active Voice) *Acc.* [[audītum]], *to hear* *Abl.* [[audītu]], *to hear, in the hearing*

«492.» THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS «capiō, capere, cēpī, captus» PRES. STEM cape- PERF. STEM cēp- PART. STEM
capt-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT capiō capimus ca'pior ca'pimur capis capitis ca'peris, -re
capi'minī capit capiunt ca'pitur capiun'tur

IMPERFECT capiēbam capiebamus capiē'bar capiēbā'mur capiēbas capiēbātis capiēba'ris, -re capiēbā'minī
capiēbat capiēbant capiēbā'tur capieban'tur

FUTURE capiam capiēmus ca'piar capiē'mur capiēs capiētis capiē'ris, -re capiē'minī capiet capient capiē'tur
capien'tur

PERFECT cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc. captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc. etc.

FUTURE PERFECT cêperô, cêperis, cêperit, captus, -a, -um erô, eris, erit, etc. etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT capiam, capiâs, capiat, capiar, -iâris, -re, -iâtur, etc. etc. IMPERFECT caperem, caperês, caperet, caperer, -erêris, -re, -erêtur, etc. etc. PERFECT cêperim, cêperis, cêperit, captus, -a, -um sim, sîs, sit, etc. etc. PLUPERFECT cêpisssem, cêpissês, captus, -a, -um essem, essês, esset, cêpisset, etc. etc.

IMPERATIVE PRESENT *2d Pers.* cape capite capere capiminî

FUTURE *2d Pers.* capitô capitôte capitor ---- *3rd Pers.* capitô capiuntô capitor capiuntor

INFINITIVE *Pres.* capere capî *Perf.* cêpisse captus, -a, -um esse *Fut.* captûrus, -a, -um [[captum îrî]] esse

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* capiêns, -ientis *Pres.* ---- *Fut.* captûrus, -a, -um *Ger.* capiendus, -a, -um *Perf.* ---- *Perf.* captus, -a, -um

GERUND *Gen.* capiendî etc.

SUPINE (Active Voice) *Acc.* [[captum]] *Abl.* [[captû]]

«493.» DEPONENT VERBS

[Transcriber's Note: Asterisks in this section are from the original text ("marked with a star").]

PRINCIPAL PARTS

I. «hortor, hortârî, hortâtus sum», *urge* II. «vereor, verêrî, veritus sum», *fear* III. «sequor, sequî, secûtus sum», *follow* IV. «partior, partîrî, partîtus sum», *share, divide*

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iô verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiô.

INDICATIVE *Pres.* hortor vereor sequor partior hortâris, -re verêris, -re sequeris, -re partîris, -re hortâtur verêtur sequitur partîtur hortâmur verêmur sequimur partîmur hortâminî verêminî sequiminî partîminî hortantur verentur sequuntur partiuntur *Impf.* hortâbar verêbar sequêbar partiêbar *Fut.* hortâbor verêbor sequar partiar *Perf.* hortâtus sum veritus sum secûtus sum partîtus sum *Plup.* hortâtus eram veritus eram secûtus eram partîtus eram *F. P.* hortâtus erô veritus erô secûtus erô partîtus erô

SUBJUNCTIVE *Pres.* hortor vereor sequor partior hortârer verêrer sequerer partîrer *Perf.* hortâtus sim veritus sim secûtus sim partîtus sim *Plup.* hortâtus essem veritus essem secûtus essem partîtus essem

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* hortâre verêre sequere partîre *Fut.* hortâtor verêtor sequitor partîtor

INFINITIVE *Pres.* hortârî verêrî sequî partîrî *Perf.* hortâtus esse veritus esse secûtus esse partîtus esse *Fut.* *hortâtûrus *veritûrus *secûtûrus *partîtûrus esse esse esse esse

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* *hortâns *verêns *sequêns *partiêns *Fut.* *hortâturus *veritûrus *secûtûrus *partîtûrus *Perf.* hortâtus veritus secûtus partîtus *Ger.* hortandus verendus sequendus partiendus

GERUND *hortandî, etc. *verendî, etc. *sequendî, etc. *partiendî, etc.

SUPINE *[[hortâtus, -tû]] *[[veritum, -tû]] *[[secûtum, -tû]] *[[partîtum, -tû]]

IRREGULAR VERBS

«494.» «sum», *am, be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS «sum, esse, fuî, futûrus» PRES. STEM es- PERF. STEM fu- PART. STEM fut-

INDICATIVE PRESENT SINGULAR PLURAL *sum, I am sumus, we are es, thou art estis, you are est, he (she, it) is sunt, they are*

IMPERFECT *eram, I was erâmus, we were erâs, thou wast erâtis, you were erat, he was erant, they were*

FUTURE *erô, I shall be erimus, we shall be eris, thou wilt be eritis, you will be erit, he will be erunt, they will be*

PERFECT *fuî, I have been, was fuimus, we have been, were fuistî, thou hast been, wast fuistis, you have been, were fuit, he has been, was fuêrunt, fuêre, they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT *fueram, I had been fuerâmus, we had been fuerâs, thou hadst been fuerâtis, you had been fuerat, he had been fuerant, they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT *fuerô, I shall have been fuerimus, we shall have been fueris, thou wilt have been fueritis, you will have been fuerit, he will have been fuerint, they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT IMPERFECT SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL *sim sîmus essem essêmus sîs sîtis essês essêtis sit sint esset essent*

PERFECT PLUPERFECT *fuerim fuerimus fuisset fuisset fuisset fueris fueritis fuisset fuisset fuerit fuerint fuisset fuisset*

IMPERATIVE PRESENT *2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou 2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye FUTURE 2d Pers. Sing. estô, thou shalt be 3d Pers. Sing. estô, he shall be 2d Pers. Plur. estôte, ye shall be 3d Pers. Plur. suntô, they shall be*

INFINITIVE *Pres. esse, to be Perf. fuisse, to have been Fut. futûrus, -a, -um esse or «fore», to be about to be*

PARTICIPIE *futûrus, -a, -um, about to be*

«495.» «possum», *be able, can*

PRINCIPAL PARTS «possum, posse, potuî, ----»

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL *Pres. possum possumus possim possimus potes potes'tis possis possit'is potest possunt possit possint Impf. poteram poterâmus possem possê'mus Fut. poterô poterimus ---- Perf. potuî potuimus potuerim potuerimus Plup. potueram potuerâmus potuisssem potuissêmus F. P. potuerô potuerimus ----*

INFINITIVE *Pres. posse Perf. potuisse*

PARTICIPIE *Pres. potens, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful*

«496.» «prôsum», *benefit*

PRINCIPAL PARTS «prôsum, prôdesse, prôfuî, prôfutûrus» PRES. STEM «prôdes-» PERF. STEM «prôfu-»
PART. STEM «prôfut-»

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL *Pres.* prôsum prô'sumus
prôsim prôsî'mus prôdes prôdes'tis prôsîs prôsî'tis prôdest prôsunt prôsît prôsint *Impf.* prôderam prôderâmus
prôdessem prodessê'mus *Fut.* prôderô prôderimus ---- ---- *Perf.* prôfuî prôfuimus prôfuerim prôfuerimus
Plup. prôfueram prôfuerâmus prôfuissem prôfuissemus *F. P.* prôfuerô prôfuerimus ---- ----

IMPERATIVE *Pres. 2d Pers.* prôdes, prôdeste *Fut. 2d Pers.* prôdestô, prôdestôte

INFINITIVE *Pres.* prôdesse *Perf.* prôfuisse *Fut.* prôfutûrus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE PARTICIPLE prôfutûrus, -a, -um

«497.» [«volô», «nôlô», «mâlô»]

PRINCIPAL PARTS: «volô, velle, voluî», ----, *be willing, will, wish* «nôlô, nôlle, nôluî», ----, *be unwilling, will not* «mâlô, mâlle, mâluî», ----, *be more willing, prefer*

«Nôlô» and «mâlô» are compounds of «volô». «Nôlô» is for «ne» (*not*) + «volô», and «mâlô» for «mâ» (from «magis», *more*) + «volô». The second person «vîs» is from a different root.

INDICATIVE SINGULAR *Pres.* volô nôlô mâlô vîs nôn vis mâvîs vult nôn vult mâvult

PLURAL volumus nôlumus mâlumus vultis nôn vultis mâvul'tis volunt nôlunt mâlunt

Impf. volêbam nôlêbam mâlêbam *Fut.* volam, volês, etc. nôlam, nôlês, etc. mâlam, mâlês, etc. *Perf.* voluî
nôluî mâluî *Plup.* volueram nôlueram mâlueram *F. P.* voluerô nôluerô mâluerô

SUBJUNCTIVE SINGULAR *Pres.* velim nôlim mâlim velîs nôlîs mâlîs velit nôlit mâlit

PLURAL velî'mus nôlî'mus mâlî'mus velî'tis nôlî'tis mâlî'tis velint nôlint mâlint

Impf. vellem nôllem mâllem *Perf.* voluerim nôluerim mâluerim *Plup.* voluissem nôluissem mâluissem

IMPERATIVE *Pres.* nôlî nôlîte *Fut.* nôlîtô, etc.

INFINITIVE *Pres.* velle nôlle mâlle *Perf.* voluisse nôluisse mâluisse

PARTICIPE *Pres.* volêns, -entis nôlêns, -entis ----

«498.» «ferô», *bear, carry, endure*

PRINCIPAL PARTS «ferô, ferre, tulî, lâtus» PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM tul- PART. STEM lâ-

INDICATIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE *Pres.* ferô ferimus feror ferimur fers fertîs ferris, -re ferimimî fert ferunt
fertur feruntur *Impf.* ferêbam ferêbar *Fut.* feram, ferês, etc. ferar, ferêris, etc. *Perf.* tulî lâtus, -a, -um sum *Plup.*
tuleram lâtus, -a, -um eram *F. P.* tulerô lâtus, -a, -um erô

SUBJUNCTIVE *Pres.* feram, ferâs, etc. ferar, ferâris, etc. *Impf.* ferrem ferrer *Perf.* tulerim lâtus, -a, -um sim
Plup. tuissem lâtus, -a, -um essem

IMPERATIVE *Pres. 2d Pers.* fer ferte ferre feriminî *Fut. 2d Pers.* fertô fertôte fertor *3d Pers.* fertô ferunto fertor feruntor

INFINITIVE *Pres.* ferre ferrî *Perf.* tulisse lâtus, -a, -um esse *Fut.* lâtûrus, -a, -um esse ----

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* ferêns, -entis *Pres.* ---- *Fut.* lâtûrus, -a, -um *Ger.* ferendus, -a, -um *Perf.* ---- *Perf.* lâtus, -a, -um

GERUND *Gen.* ferendî *Dat.* ferendô *Acc.* ferendum *Abl.* ferendô

SUPINE (Active Voice) *Acc.* [[lâtum]] *Abl.* [[lâtû]]

«499.» eô, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS «eô, îre, îî (îvî), itum» (n. perf. part.) *PRES.* STEM î- *PERF.* STEM î- or îv- *PART.* STEM it-

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERATIVE SING. PLUR. *Pres.* eô îmus eam *2d Pers.* î îte îs îtis it eunt *Impf.* îbam îrem *Fut.* îbô ---- *2d Pers.* îtô îtôte *3d Pers.* îtô euntô *Perf.* îî (îvî) ierim (îverim) *Plup.* ieram (îveram) îssem (îvissem) *F. P.* ierô (îverô)

INFINITIVE *Pres.* îre *Perf.* îsse (îvisse) *Fut.* itûrus, -a, -um esse

PARTICIPLES *Pres.* iêns, *gen.* euntis (§472) *Fut.* itûrus, -a, -um *Ger.* eundum

GERUND *Gen.* eundî *Dat.* eundô *Acc.* eundum *Abl.* eundô

SUPINE *Acc.* [[itum]] *Abl.* [[itû]]

a. The verb «eô» is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as «îtur», «itum est», *etc.*

b. In the perfect system the forms with «v» are very rare.

«500.» «fîô», passive of «faciô»; *be made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS «fîô, fierî, factus sum»

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERATIVE *Pres.* fîô ---- fîam *2d Pers.* fî fîte fîs ---- fit fîunt *Impf.* fîêbam fîerem *Fut.* fîam ----

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE *Perf.* factus, -a, -um sum factus, -a, -um sim *Plup.* factus, -a, -um eram factus, -a, -um essem *F. P.* factus, -a, -um erô

INFINITIVE PARTICIPLES *Pres.* fierî *Perf.* factus, -a, -um *Perf.* factus, -a, -um esse *Ger.* faciendus, -a, -um *Fut.* [[factum îrî]]

[Illustration: CASTRA MURO FOSSAQUE MUNIUNTUR]

APPENDIX II

«501.» RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

Nominative Case

«1.» The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? §36.

Agreement

«2.» A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. §28.

«3.» A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. §76.

«4.» An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. §81.

«5.» Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. §65.

«6.» A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. §215.a.

«7.» A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. §224.

Prepositions

«8.» A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. §52.

Genitive Case

«9.» The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? §38.

«10.» The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of «sum», and is then called the *_predicate genitive_*. §409.

«11.» Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as *the partitive genitive*. §331.

«12.» Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. §443.

Dative Case

«13.» The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. §45.

«14.» The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs «crêdô», «faveô», «noceô», «pâreô», «persuâdeô», «resistô», «studeô», and others of like meaning. §154.

«15.» Some verbs compounded with «ad», «ante», «con», «dê», «in», «inter», «ob», «post», «prae», «prô», «sub», «super», admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. §426.

«16.» The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such

are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites. §143.

«17.» The dative is used to denote the *purpose* or *end for which*; often with another dative denoting *the person or thing affected*. §437.

Accusative Case

«18.» The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? §37.

«19.» The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. §214.

«20.» The *place to which* is expressed by «ad» or «in» with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, «domus», and «rûs» the preposition is omitted. §§263, 266.

«21.» *Duration of time* and *extent of space* are expressed by the accusative. §336.

«22.» Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *showing*, and the like, may take a *predicate accusative* along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. §392.

Ablative Case

«23.» *Cause* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what? §102.

«24.» *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? or With what? §103.

«25.» *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with «cum». This answers the question With whom? §104.

«26.» The ablative with «cum» is used to denote the manner of an action. «Cum» may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? or In what manner? §105.

«27.» With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*. §317.

«28.» The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. §381.

«29.» 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. §444.

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. §445.

«30.» The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. §398.

«31.» The *place from which* is expressed by «â» or «ab», «dê», «ê» or «ex» with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? Before names of towns, small islands, «domus», and «rûs» the preposition is omitted. §§264, 266.

«32.» Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called

the *_ablative of separation_*. §180.

«33.» The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition «â» or «ab». This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. §181.

«34.» The comparative degree, if «quam» is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. §309.

«35.» The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. §275.

«36.» 1. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with «in». This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and «rûs» the preposition is omitted. §§265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word «domus» express the *place in which* by the locative. §268.

Gerund and Gerundive

«37.» 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. §406.1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. §406.2.

«38.» The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with «ad», or the genitive with «causâ», is used to express purpose. §407.

Moods and Tenses of Verbs

«39.» Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. §358.

«40.» The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the *purpose* of the action in the principal clause. §349.

«41.» A *substantive clause of purpose* with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of *commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. §366.

«42.» Verbs of *fearing* are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by «ut» (*that not*) or «nê» (*that or lest*). §372.

«43.» *Consecutive clauses of result* are introduced by «ut» or «ut nô», and have the verb in the subjunctive. §385.

«44.» *Object clauses of result* with «ut» or «ut nô» are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. §386.

«45.» A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the *_subjunctive of characteristic or description_*. §390.

«46.» The conjunction «cum» means *when, since, or although*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *when* and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. §396.

«47.» When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. §416.

«48.» The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of _saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving_. §419.

«49.» A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. §418.

«50.» In an *indirect question* the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. §432.

[Illustration: DOMINA]

APPENDIX III

REVIEWS[1]

[Footnote 1: It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.]

[Transcriber's Note: In this Review section, the lists of English words for translation may not be in the same order as in the original.]

I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

«502.» Give the English of the following words:[1]

NOUNS agricola «gallîna» ancilla iniûria «aqua» «însula» «casa» «lûna» «causa» «nauta» cêna «pecûnia» «corôna» puella «dea» «pugna» domina «sagitta» fâbula «silva» «fera» «terra» «filia» «tuba» «fortûna» «via» «fuga» «victôria»

ADJECTIVES «alta» «magna» «bona» «mala» «clâra» «nova» «grâta» «parva» «lâta» «pulchra» «longa» «sôla»

VERBS amat «necat» «dat» «nûntiat» «est» «parat» habitat «portat» «labôrat» «pugnat» «laudat» «sunt» nârrat «vocat»

PREPOSITIONS «â» or «ab» «ad» «cum» «dê» «ê» or «ex» «in»

PRONOUNS «mea» «tua» «quis» «cuius» «cui» «quem» «quid»

ADVERBS «cûr» «deinde» «nôn» «ubi»

CONJUNCTIONS «et» quia «quod»

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLE «-ne»

[Footnote 1: Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words used in Cassar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.]

«503.» Give the Latin of the following words:[1]

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

flight wide story tells new money lives (verb) calls away from with who your why then, in the next place forest daughter wreath to whom deep, high fortune dinner famous out from labors (verb) my kills where not trumpet in lady, mistress and whom sailor island farmer goddess what wild beast way praises (verb) bad alone loves pleasing pretty prepares water are great to is because announces arrow injury, wrong cottage battle (noun) gives small girl fights (verb) good maid carries down from chicken long victory cause land whose

[Footnote 1: The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.]

«504.» «Review Questions.» How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

«505.» Fill out the following summary of the first declension:

THE FIRST OR Â-DECLENSION 1. Ending in the nominative singular 2. Rule for gender 3. Case terminations a. Singular b. Plural 4. Irregular nouns

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII

«506.» Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION «agrî cultûra» «galea» «côstantia» «inopia» «côpia» «lacrima» «dîligentia» «lôrfica» «fâma» «patria» fêmina «praeda»

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION «ager» «lîberî» «amîcus» magister «arma» (plural) «mûrus» «auxilium» «numerus» «bellum» «oppidânus» «carrus» «oppidum» «castrum» «pîlum» «cibus» «populus» «cônsilium» «praemium» «domicilium» «proelium» dominus «puer» «equus» «scûtum» «ffilius» «servus» fluvius «studium» «frûmentum» «têlum» «gladius» «vîcus» «lêgâtus» «vir»

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS «aeger, aegra, aegrum» «alius, alia, aliud» «alter, altera, alterum» «armâtus, -a, -um» «crêber, crêbra, crêbrum» «dûrus, -a, -um» «ffinitimus, -a, -um» «înfirmus, -a, -um» «legiônârius, -a, -um» «lîber, lîbera, lîberum» «mâtûrus, -a, -um» «meus, -a, -um» «miser, misera, miserum» «multus, -a, -um» «neuter, neutra, neutrum» «noster, nostra, nostrum» «nûllus, -a, -um» «pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum» «sôlus, -a, -um» «suus, -a, -um» «tôtus, -a, -um» «tuus, -a, -um» «ûllus, -a, -um» «ûnus, -a, -um» «uter, utra, utrum» validus, -a, -um «vester, vestra, vestrum»

VERBS arat «cûrat» «dêsîderat» «mâtûrat» «properat»

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN «is, ea, id»

CONJUNCTIONS «an» «-que» «sed»

ADVERBS «iam» quô «saepe»

PREPOSITION «apud»

«507.» Give the Latin of the following words:

sword shield (noun) corselet whole man it your (plural) aid (noun) hasten legionary but weak among arms tear (noun) master (of school) village friend strong neighboring long for sick and (enclitic) lieutenant often field want (noun) report, rumor which (of two) abode care for boy or (in a question) his own whither alone wagon prize (noun) townsman master (owner) wretched carefulness ripe plenty war troops number plan (noun) my people free (adj.) beautiful children no (adj.) wall our grain battle weapon spear one food plow (verb) steadiness this or that fatherland already town helmet fort river camp zeal neither (of two) any much he agriculture son other slave the other (of two) your (singular) hard she booty woman frequent horse armed

«508.» «Review Questions.» How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in «-er» is declined like «puer» or like «ager»? Decline «bonus», «lîber», «pulcher». How can we tell whether an adjective in «-er» is declined like «lîber» or like «pulcher»? Why must we say «nauta bonus» and not «nauta bona»? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we use «tuus» and when «vester»? Why is «suus» called a *reflexive* possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by *with*? Give an illustration in Latin of the *ablative of manner*; *of the ablative of cause*; *of the ablative of means*; *of the ablative of accompaniment*. What ablative regularly has «cum»? What ablative sometimes has «cum»? What uses of the ablative never have «cum»? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline «alius», «nûllus». Decline «is». What does «is» mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

«509.» Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION 1. Endings in the nominative 2. Rule for gender 3. Case terminations of nouns in «-us» a. Singular b. Plural a. The vocative singular of nouns in «-us» 4. Case terminations of nouns in «-um» a. Singular b. Plural 5. Peculiarities of nouns in «-er» and «-ir» 6. Peculiarities of nouns in «-ius» and «-ium»

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

«510.» Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION «disciplîna» rêgîna «fôrma» superbia «poena» «trîstitia» «potentia»

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION lûdus «ôrnamêntum» sacrum «socius» «verbum»

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS «amîcus» îrâtus «antîquus» «laetus» «fînitimus» «molestus» «grâtus» «perpetuus» «idôneus» «proximus» «inimîcus» «septem» «interfectus» «superbus»

ADVERBS hodiê «ibi» «maximê» mox «nunc» «nûper»

CONJUNCTIONS «etiam» «nôn sôlum ... sed etiam»

PERSONAL PRONOUN «ego»

VERBS CONJ. I volô, -âre

CONJ. II «dêleô, -êre» «noceô, -êre» «doceô, -êre» «pâreô, -êre» «faveô, -êre» «persuadeô, -êre» «habeô, -êre» «sedeô, -êre» «iubeô, -êre» «studeô, -êre» «moneô, -êre» «videô, -êre» «moveô, -êre»

CONJ. III «agô, -ere» «fugiô, -ere» «capiô, -ere» «iaciô, -ere» «crêdô, -ere» «mittô, -ere» «dîcô, -ere» «rapiô, -ere» «dûcô, -ere» «regô, -ere» «faciô, -ere» «resistô, -ere»

CONJ. IV «audiô, -îre» «mûniô, -îre» «reperiô, -îre» «veniô, -îre»

IRREGULAR VERB «sum, esse»

«511.» «Give the Latin of the following words.» In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

ancient power come make, do resist injure see now be annoying fly lead I move proud soon word glad sadness punishment find believe rule (verb) advise be eager for especially, most of all not only ... but also angry seven beauty ally, companion say pride command (verb) fortify there send slain sit training also take school have hear to-day hurl unfriendly persuade drive only favor (verb) nearest suitable sacred rite pleasing queen teach flee neighboring obey destroy lately friendly constant seize ornament

«512.» «Review Questions.» What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense? What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect *sum* in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of *pugnô*? Inflect *arô*, *sedeô*, *mittô*, *faciô*, and *veniô*, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of *-iô* verbs of the third conjugation are like *audiô*? what like *regô*? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of *portô*, *dêleô*, *agô*, *faciô*, *mûniô*.

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI

«513.» Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION «âla» «cûra» «mora» «porta» «prôvincia» «vîta»

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION «animus» «nâvigium» aurum ôrâculum «bracchium» «perîculum» «deus» «ventus» «locus» «vînum» mônstrum

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS «adversus» «dubius» attentus «maximus» «cârus» perfidus «commôtus» «plênus» «dêfessus» saevus «dexter» «sinister»

ADVERBS «anteâ» «ita» «celeriter» «longê» «dênique» «semper» «diû» «subitô» «frûstrâ» «tamen» «graviter» «tum»

CONJUNCTIONS «autem» «sî» «ubi»

PREPOSITIONS «dê» «per» «prô» «sine»

VERBS CONJ. I «adpropinquô» «servô» «nâvigô» «stô» «occupô» «superô» «postulô» «temptô» «recûsô» «vâstô» «reportô» «vulnerô»

CONJ. II «contineô» «egeô» «prohibeô» «respondeô» «teneô»

CONJ. III «discêdô» «gerô» «interficiô»

IRREGULAR VERB «absum»

«514.» Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

be away heavily wind monster through approach if nevertheless savage place wound (verb) be without, lack wine moved delay gold faithless restrain, keep from right without seize hold quickly suddenly before, in behalf of dear battle always down from or concerning god moreover hold in, keep greatest afar oracle thus, so, as follows danger arm (noun) lay waste when gate in vain doubtful stand opposite, adverse bring back, win demand before, previously finally depart, go away attentive province then, at that time care, trouble weary kill overcome, conquer reply (verb) conquer wing boat, ship mind, heart sail (verb) left (adj.) life bear, carry on save try full for a long time refuse

«515.» Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

«sum» «faveô» «dô» «noceô» «teneô» «dîcô» «iubeô» «pâreô» «agô» «dûcô» «mittô» «faciô» «mûniô» «persuâdeô» «moveô» «sedeô» «crêdô» «studeô» «rapiô» «fugiô» «reperiô» «veniô» «dêleô» «iaciô» «resistô» «videô» «audiô» «absum» «moneô» «egeô» «capiô» «gerô» «doceô» «stô» «regô»

«516.» «Review Questions.» What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb «sum» in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition «in» mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce *yes-and-no* questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for *yes* and *no*? What are the different meanings and uses of *ubi*?

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

«517.» Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS FIRST DECLENSION SECOND DECLENSION «rîpa» «barbarî» «captîvus» «castellum»
«impedîmentum»

THIRD DECLENSION «animal» «homô» «ôrdô» «arbor» «hostîs» «pater» «avis» «ignîs» «pedes» «caedês»
«imperâtor» «pês» «calamîtâs» «însigne» pônâs calcar «iter» «prînceps» «caput» iûdex «rêx» «cîvis» «labor»
«salûs» «cliêns» «lapis» «sanguis» «collis» «legiô» «soror» «cônsul» «mare» tempus «dêns» «mâter»
«terror» «dux» «mênsis» «turrîs» «eques» «mîles» «urbs» «fînis» «mônâs» «victor» «flûmen» «nâvis»
«virtûs» fônâs «opus» «vîs» «frâter» «ôrâtor»

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS «barbarus» «dexter» «sinister» «summus»

PREPOSITIONS «in» with the abl. «in» with the acc. «trâns»

ADVERBS «cotîdiê» «numquam»

CONJUNCTIONS «nec, neque» «nec ... nec», or «neque ... neque»

VERBS CONJ. I CONJ. III «cessô» «accipiô» «oppugnô» «petô» «confirmô» «vincô» «vetô» «incipiô»
«ponô» «vivô»

«518.» Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

*forbid in rank, row judge brother defeat, disaster force fire across tree savages foot soldier horseman receive
never general mountain highest manliness, courage fountain leader orator put, place neither ... nor time and
not savage, barbarous left sister tooth seek soldier captive month hindrance, baggage city captive victor
hindrance, baggage daily man-of-war live (verb) conquer redoubt, fort consul sea mother tower retainer drill
(verb) citizen legion head terror safety into, to assail, storm right (adj.) begin stone march blood decoration
labor (noun) bridge king bird spur cease chief man slaughter river strengthen work (noun) foot and enemy
ship animal bank father*

«519.» «Review Questions.» Give the conjugation of «possum». What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence _The bad boy cannot be happy, *what is the case of happy*_? Give the rule. Decline «quî». Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline «quis». What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of «lapis» from the stem «lapid-», «mîles» from «mîlit-», «rêx» from «rêg-». What nouns have «i»-stems? What peculiarities of form do «i»-stems have,--masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have «-î» and «-e» in the abl. Decline «turrîs». Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline «mîles», «lapis», «rêx», «virtûs», «cônsul», «legiô», «homô», «pater», «flûmen», «opus», «tempus», «caput», «caedês», «urbs», «hostis», «mare», «animal», «vîs», «iter».

«520.» Fill out the following scheme:

{ { Masculine { GENDER { Feminine { ENDINGS { Neuter { THE THIRD { { I. CONSONANT { a. Masc.
and fem. DECLENSION { { STEMS { b. Neuters { CASE { { TERMINATIONS { { { { II. I-STEMS { a.
Masc. and fem. { { b. Neuters { { IRREGULAR NOUNS

VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII

«521.» Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS FIRST DECLENSION «amîcítia» «hôra» «littera»

SECOND DECLENSION «annus» «supplicium», «modus» «supplicium dare» «nûntius» «supplicium sũmere dê» «oculus» «tergum», «rêgnum» «tergum vertere» «signum» «vestîgium»

THIRD DECLENSION «aestâs» «nox» «corpus» «pars» «hiems» «pâx» «lîbertâs» rûs «lûx», «sôl» «prîma lûx» «vôx» «nômen» «vulnus»

FOURTH DECLENSION «adventus» «impetus» «cornû» «lacus» «domus» «manus» «equitâtus» «metus» «exercitus» «portus» «fluctus»

FIFTH DECLENSION «aciês» «rês», «diês» «rês gestae» «fidês», «rês adversae» «in fidem venîre» «rês secundae» «rês pũblica» «spês»

INDECLINABLE NOUN «nihil»

ADJECTIVES FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS «dênsus» «prîstinus» «invîsus» «pũblicus» «mîrus» «secundus» «paucî» «tantus» «prîmus» «vêrus»

THIRD DECLENSION «âcer, âcris, âcre» «gravis, grave» «brevis, breve» «incolumis, incolume» «difficilis, difficile» «omnis, omne» «facîlis, facile» «pâr, pâr» «fortis, forte» «vêlôx, vêlôx»

PRONOUNS PERSONAL «ego» «nôs» «suî» «tû» «vôs»

DEMONSTRATIVE «hic» «îdem» «ille» «iste»

INTENSIVE «ipse»

INDEFINITE «aliquis, aliquî» «quîdam» «quis, quî» «quisquam» «quisque»

ADVERBS «nê ... quidem» «quoque» ôlim «satis» «paene» «vêrô»

CONJUNCTIONS «itaque» «nisi»

PREPOSITIONS «ante» «post» «propter»

VERBS CONJ. I CONJ. II «conlocô» «dêbeô» «convocô» «exerceô» «cremô» «maneô» «dêmônstrô» «placeô» «mandô» «sustineô»

CONJ. III CONJ. IV «committô», «dêsiliô» «committere proelium» «dêcidô» «êripiô» «sũmô», «sũmere supplicium dê» «trâducô» «vertô»

«522.» Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

if not, unless adversity on account of former, old-time public all, every commonwealth any one (at all) leap down, dismount this (of mine) unharmed heavy, serious lead across hateful, detested remain true call together burn friendship snatch from footprint, trace letter each punishment fear (noun) inflict punishment on hope

behind, after therefore suffer punishment so great liberty equal sun in truth, indeed sustain that (yonder) take up, assume a certain hour fall down reign, realm owe, ought messenger measure, mode part, direction eye body name harbor wave, billow faith, protection thing, matter of himself exploits also, too republic sufficiently prosperity you (plur.) burn peace that (of yours) back before turn the back, retreat light night daybreak hand, force winter lake attack day line of battle commit, intrust army a few only drill, train sharp, eager join battle we house, home turn midday you (sing.) wonderful I brave signal almost summer the same cavalry some, any wound if any one horn, wing self, very country not even second, favorable easy formerly, once dense short point out, explain voice difficult arrival first come under the protection of arrange, station nothing please swift year

«523.» «Review Questions.» By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline «âcer, omnis, pâr». What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth or «u»-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline «adventus, lacus, cornû, domus». Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the *place to which*, the *place from which*, the *place in which*. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and «rûs»? What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate *Galba lives at home, Galba lives at Rome, Galba lives at Pompeii*. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or «ê»-declension? Decline «diês», «rês». When is the long «ê» shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline «tuba», «servus», «pîlum», «ager», «puer», «mîles», «cônsul», «flûmen», «caedês», «animal». How is the *time when* expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline «ego, tû, is». What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline it. Translate *I see myself, he sees himself, he sees him*. Decline «ipse». How is «ipse» used? Decline «îdem». Decline «hic», «iste», «ille». Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline «aliquis», «quisquam», «quîdam», «quisque».

VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX

«524.» Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS FIRST DECLENSION «aquila» «fossa»

SECOND DECLENSION «aedificium» «negôtium» «captîvus» «spatium» «concilium» «vâllum» «imperium»

THIRD DECLENSION «agmen» «mors» «celeritâs» «mulier» «cîvitâs» «multitûdô» «clâmor» «mûnîtîô» «cohors» «nêmô» «difficultâs» «obses» «explôrâtor» «opîniô» «gêns» «regiô» «lâtîtûdô» «rûmor» «longitûdô» «scelus» «magnitûdô» «servitûs» «mêns» «timor» «mercâtor» «vallês» «mîlle»

FOURTH DECLENSIONS «aditus» «passus» «commeâtus»

FIFTH DECLENSION «rês frûmentâria»

ADJECTIVES FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS «aequus» «pessimus» «bînî» «plûrimus» «ducentî» «posterus» «duo» «pîmus» «exterus» reliquus «înferus» «secundus» «maximus» «singulî» «medius» «superus» «minimus» «tardus» «opportûnus» «ternî» «optimus» «ûnus»

THIRD DECLENSION «alacer, alacris, alacre» «audâx, audâx» «celer, celeris, celere» «citerior, citerius» «difficilis, difficile» «dissimilis, dissimile» «facilis, facile» gracilis, gracile «humilis, humile» «ingêns, ingêns» «interior, interius» «lênis, lêne» «maior, maius» «melior, melius» «minor, minus» «nôbilis, nôbile» «peior, peius» ---, «plûs» «prior, prius» «recêns, recêns» «similis, simile» «três, tria» «ulterior, ulterior»

ADVERBS «âcritè» «optimè» «audâcter» «parum» «bene» «paulô» «facile» «plûrimum» «ferê» «prope» «fortiter» «propius» «magis» «proximè» «magnopere» «quam» «maximè» «statim» «melius» «tam» «minimè» «undique» «multum»

CONJUNCTIONS «atque, ac» «quâ dê causâ» «aut» «quam ob rem» «aut ... aut» «simul atque or» «et ... et» «simul ac «nam»»

PREPOSITIONS «circum» «contrâ» «inter» «ob» «trâns»

VERBS CONJ. I CONJ. II «cônor» «obtinêô» «hortor» «perterreô» «moror» «valeô» «vexô» «vereor»

CONJ. III «abdô» «patior» «cadô» premô «cognôscô» «proficîscor» «cônsequor» «prôgredior» «contendô» «quaerô» «cupiô» «recipiô» «currô» «relinquô» «dêdô» «revertor» «dêfendô» «sequor» êgredior statuô «incendô» subsequor «incolô» «suscipiô» «însequor» «trâdô» «occîdô» «trahô»

CONJ. IV «orior» perveniô»

«525.» Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

on account of width nearly scout keenly, sharply cohort thousand tribe, nation two business opportune by a little remaining somewhat above (adj.) crime next difficult grain supply equal pace move forward, advance shout (noun) further from all sides multitude against woman around desire (verb) three give over, surrender line of march kill manor overtake region hasten, strive fortification hide eagle one almost first boldly second, favorable bravely two hundred across former between, among inner hither (adj.) middle so low less outward more three by three most provisions worst speed difficulty ditch hostage wherefore or therefore death length command, power for this reason captive fear (noun) or return and inquire arrive set out attempt, try move out, disembark fear (verb) leave worse abandon greater, larger be strong two by two receive, recover least (adv.) terrify, frighten opinion, expectation dwell defend state, citizenship approach, entrance valley trader slavery magnitude, size greatly council, assembly best of all (adv.) space, room better (adv.) either ... or well (adv.) rise, arise very much suffer, allow much press hard unlike fall like (adj.) surrender slow set fire to very greatly, exceedingly possess, hold building delay (verb) mind (noun) nearest (adv.) easily nearer (adv.) easy better (adj.) recent well known, noble huge, great rampart bold mild, gentle immediately swift as soon as eager for low (adj.) than slender best (adj.) one by one greatest no one follow close least (adv.) encourage little (adv.) annoy, ravage learn, know hide drag follow undertake pursue run both ... and fix, decide

«526.» «Review Questions.» What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare «clârus, brevis, vêlôx», and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare «brevis» by adverbs. Decline the comparative of «vêlôx». How are adjectives in «-er» compared? Compare «âcer», «pulcher», «liber». What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in «-limus». Translate in two ways *Nothing is brighter than the sun*. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare «bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exterus, îferus, posterus, superus». Decline «plûs». Compare «citerior, interior, propior, ulterior». Translate *That route to Italy is much shorter*. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs «cârê», «liberê», «fortiter», «audâcter». What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from «facilis»? «multus? prîmus? plûrimus»? «bonus»? «magnus»? «parvus»? Compare «prope», «saepe», «magnopere». How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline «ûnus, duo, trê, mîlle». How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with «quîdam» and cardinal numbers excepting «mîlle»? Give the first twenty ordinals.

How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate «amô», «moneô», «regô», «capiô», «audiô», in the active and passive.

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX

«527.» Review the vocabularies of the first seventeen lessons. See §§502, 503, 506, 507.

«528.» «Review Questions.» Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of «cûrô», «dêlêô», «vincô», «rapiô», «mûniô». Inflect the subjunctive tenses of «sum»; of «possum». What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of «amô», «moneô», «regô», «capiô», «audiô». Decline «regêns». What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of «vereor». How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate «volô», «nolô», «mâlô», «fîô».

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should «quô» be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows «iubeô»? What construction follows verbs of *fearing*? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?

[Illustration: IMPERATOR MILITES HORTATUR]

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Cæsar's "Gallic War."

[Transcriber's Note:

Each chapter's Special Vocabulary was included with its chapter text in addition to its original location here. Details are given in the Transcriber's Note at the beginning of the text. In the printed book, the vocabularies for Lesson IV and Lesson V appeared on the same page; the Footnote about *conjunctions* was shared by the two lists.]

LESSON IV, §39

NOUNS «dea», *goddess* (deity) Diâ'na, *Diana* «fera», *a wild beast* (fierce) Lâtô'na, *Latona* «sagit'ta», *arrow*

VERBS «est», *he (she, it) is*; «sunt», *they are* «necat», *he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill*

CONJUNCTION[A] «et», *and*

PRONOUNS «quis», interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., *who?* «cuius» (pronounced *c[oo]i'y[oo]s*, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing., *whose?*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

LESSON V, §47

NOUNS «corô'na», *wreath, garland, crown* fâ'bula, *story* (fable) «pecû'nia», *money* (pecuniary) «pugna», *battle* (pugnacious) «victô'ria», *victory*

VERBS «dat», *he (she, it) gives* nârrat, *he (she, it) tells* (narrate)

CONJUNCTION[A] «quia» or «quod», *because*

«cui» (pronounced *c[oo]i*, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., *to whom? for whom?*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

LESSON VI, §56

ADJECTIVES «bona», *good* «grâta», *pleasing* «magna», *large, great* «mala», *bad, wicked* «parva», *small, little* «pulchra», *beautiful, pretty* «sôla», *alone*

NOUNS ancil'la, *maidservant* Iûlia, *Julia*

ADVERBS[A] «cûr», *why* «nôn», *not*

PRONOUNS «mea», *my*; «tua», *thy, your* (possesives) «quid», interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., *what?*

«-ne», the question sign, an enclitic (§16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as «amat», *he loves*, but «amat'ne?» *does he love?* «est», *he is*; «estne?» *is he?* Of course «-ne» is not used when the sentence contains «quis», «cûr», or some other interrogative word.

[Footnote A: An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.]

LESSON VII, §62

NOUNS «casa, -ae», f., *cottage* cêna, -ae, f., *dinner* «gallí'na, -ae», f., *hen, chicken* «în'sula, ae», f., *island* (pen-insula)

ADVERBS «de-in'de», *then, in the next place* «ubi», *where*

PREPOSITION «ad», *to*, with acc. to express motion toward

PRONOUN «quem», interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., *whom?*

VERBS ha'bitat, *he (she, it) lives, is living, does live* (inhabit) «laudat», *he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise* (laud) «parat», *he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare* «vocat», *he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite* (vocation)

LESSON VIII, §69

NOUNS «Italia, -ae», f., *Italy* Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily* «tuba, -ae», f., *trumpet* (tube) «via, -ae», f., *way, road, street* (viaduct)

ADJECTIVES «alta», *high, deep* (altitude) «clâra», *clear, bright; famous* «lâta», *wide* (latitude) «longa», *long* (longitude) «nova», *new* (novelty)

LESSON IX, §77

NOUNS «bellum, -î», n., *war* (re-bel) «côstantia, -ae», f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness* dominus, -î, m., *master, lord* (dominate) «equus, -î», m., *horse* (equine) «frûmentum, -î», n., *grain* «lêgâtus, -î», m., *lieutenant, ambassador* (legate) «Mârcus, -î», m., *Marcus, Mark* «mûrus, -î», m., *wall* (mural) «oppidânus, -î», m., *townsman* «oppidum, -î», n., *town* «pîlum, -î», n., *spear* (pile driver) «servus, -î», m., *slave, servant* Sextus, -î, m., *Sextus*

VERBS «cûrat», *he (she, it) cares for*, with acc. «properat», *he (she, it) hastens*

LESSON X, §82

NOUNS «amîcus, -î», m., *friend* (amicable) «Germânia, -ae», f., *Germany* «patria, -ae», f., *fatherland* «populus, -î», m., *people* «Rhênus, -î», m., *the Rhine* «vîcus, -î», m., *village*

LESSON XI, §86

NOUNS «arma, armôrum», n., plur., *arms*, especially defensive weapons «fâma, -ae», f., *rumor; reputation, fame* «galea, -ae», f., *helmet* «praeda, -ae», f., *booty, spoils* (predatory) «têlum, -î», n., *weapon of offense, spear*

ADJECTIVES «dûrus, -a, -um», *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome* (durable) «Rômânus, -a, -um», *Roman*. As a noun, «Rômânus, -î», m., *a Roman*

LESSON XII, §90

NOUNS «filius, filî», m., *son* (filial) fluuius, fluvî, m., *river* (fluent) «gladius, gladi», m., *sword* (gladiator) «praesidium, praesi'dî», n., *garrison, guard, protection* «proelium, proelî», n., *battle*

ADJECTIVES «fînitimus, -a, -um», *bordering upon, neighboring, near to*. As a noun, «fînitimî, -ôrum», m., plur., *neighbors* «Germânus, -a, -um», *German*. As a noun, «Germânus, -î», m., *a German* «multus, -a, -um», *much*; plur., *many*

ADVERB «saepe», *often*

LESSON XIII, §95

NOUNS «ager, agrî», m., *field* (acre) «côpia, -ae», f., *plenty, abundance* (copious); plur., *_troops, forces_* «Cornêlius, Cornê'li», m., *Cornelius* «lôrí'ca, -ae», f., *coat of mail, corselet* «praemium, praemî», n., *reward, prize* (premium) «puer, puerî», m., *boy* (puerile) «Rôma, -ae», f., *Rome* «scûtum, -î», n., *shield* (escutcheon) «vir, virî», m., *man, hero* (virile)

ADJECTIVES «legiônârius, -a, -um», [A] *legionary, belonging to the legion*. As a noun, «legiônârîi, -ôrum», m., plur., *legionary soldiers* «lîber, lîbera, lîberum», *free* (liberty) As a noun, «lîberî, -ôrum», m., plur., *children* (lit. *the freeborn*) «pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum», *pretty, beautiful*

PREPOSITION «apud», *among*, with acc.

CONJUNCTION «sed», *but*

[Footnote A: The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in «-ius» ends in «-î» and the vocative in «-ie»; not in «-î», as in nouns.]

LESSON XIV, §99

NOUNS «auxilium, auxili'î», n., *help, aid* (auxiliary) «castrum, -î», n., *fort* (castle); plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*) «cibus, -î», m., *food* «cônsilium, côn'si'î», n., *plan* (counsel) «dîligentia, -ae», f., *diligence, industry* magister, magistrî, m., *master, teacher*[A]

ADJECTIVES «aeger, aegra, aegrum», *sick* «crêber, crêbra, crêbrum», *frequent* «miser, misera, miserum», *wretched, unfortunate* (miser)

[Footnote A: Observe that «dominus», as distinguished from «magister», means *master* in the sense of *owner*.]

LESSON XV, §107

NOUNS «carrus, -î», m., *cart, wagon* «inopia, -ae», f., *want, lack*; the opposite of «côpia» «studium, studî», n., *zeal, eagerness* (study)

ADJECTIVES «armâtus, -a, -um», *armed* «înfîrmus, -a, -um», *weak, feeble* (infirm) vali'dus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*

VERB «mâtûrat», *he (she, it) hastens*. Cf. *properat*

ADVERB «iam», *already, now*

«-que», conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. §16) and always added to the *second* of two words to be connected, as «arma tâla'que», *arms and weapons*.

LESSON XVII, §117

NOUNS «agrî cultûra, -ae», f., *agriculture* «Gallia, -ae», f., *Gaul* «domicilîum, domîci'î», n., *dwelling place* (domicile), *abode* «Gallus, -i», m., *a Gaul* «lacrima, -ae», f., *tear* «fêmina, -ae», f., *woman* (female) «numerus, -î», m., *number* (numeral)

ADJECTIVE «mâtûrus, -a, -um», *ripe, mature*

ADVERB quô, *whither*

VERBS arat, *he (she, it) plows* (arable) «dêsîderat», *he (she, it) misses, longs for* (desire), with acc.

CONJUNCTION «an», *or*, introducing the second half of a double question, as *Is he a Roman or a Gaul*, «Estne Romanus an Gallus?»

LESSON XVIII, §124

NOUNS lûdus, -î, m., *school* «socius, socî», m., *companion, ally* (social)

ADJECTIVES «îrâtus, -a, -um», *angry, furious* (irate) «laetus, -a, -um», *happy, glad* (social)

ADVERBS hodiê, *to-day* «ibi», *there, in that place* mox, *presently, soon*, of the immediate future «nunc», *now, the present moment* «nûper», *lately, recently*, of the immediate past

LESSON XX, §136

NOUNS «fôrma, -ae», f., *form, beauty* «regîna, -ae», f., *queen* (regal) «poena, -ae», f., *punishment, penalty* superbia, -ae, f., *pride, haughtiness* «potentia, -ae», f., *power* (potent) «trîstîtîa, -ae», f., *sadness, sorrow*

ADJECTIVES «septem,» indeclinable, *seven* «superbus, -a, -um», *proud, haughty* (superb)

CONJUNCTIONS «nôn sôlum ... sed etiam», *not only ... but also*

LESSON XXI, §140

NOUNS sacrum, -î, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite* «verbum, -î», n., *word* (verb)

VERBS sedeô, -êre, *sit* (sediment) volô, -âre, *fly* (volatile)

ADJECTIVES «interfectus, -a, -um», *slain* «molestus, -a, -um», *troublesome, annoying* (molest) «perpetuus, -a, -um», *perpetual, continuous*

«ego», personal pronoun, *I* (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.

LESSON XXII, §146

NOUNS «disciplîna, -ae», f., *training, culture, discipline* «Gâius, Gâî», m., *Caius*, a Roman first name «ôrnâmentum, -î», n., *ornament, jewel* Tiberius, Tibé' rî, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman first name

VERB «doceô, -êre», *teach* (doctrine)

ADVERB «maximê», *most of all, especially*

ADJECTIVE «antîquus, -qua, -quum», *old, ancient* (antique)

LESSON XXVII, §168

NOUNS «âla, -ae», f., *wing* «deus, -î», m., *god* (deity)[A] «monstrum, -î», n., *omen, prodigy; monster* ôrâculum, -î, n., *oracle*

VERB «vâstô, -âre», *lay waste, devastate*

ADJECTIVES «commôtus, -a, -um», *moved, excited* «maximus, -a, -um», *greatest* (maximum) «saevus, -a, -um», *fierce, savage*

ADVERBS «ita», *thus, in this way, as follows* «tum», *then, at that time*

[Footnote A: For the declension of «deus», see §468]

LESSON XXVIII, §171

VERBS «respondeô, -êre», *respond, reply* «servô, -âre», *save, preserve*

ADJECTIVE «cârus, -a, -um», *dear* (cherish)

CONJUNCTION «autem», *but, moreover, now*. Usually stands second, never first

NOUN «vîta, -ae», f., *life* (vital)

LESSON XXIX, §176

VERB «superô, -âre», *conquer, overcome* (insuperable)

NOUNS «cûra, -ae», f., *care, trouble* «locus, -î», m., *place, spot* (location). «Locus» is neuter in the plural and is declined «loca, -ôrum», etc. «perîculum, -î», n., *danger, peril*

ADVERBS «semper», *always* «tamen», *yet, nevertheless*

PREPOSITIONS «dê», with abl., *down from, concerning* «per», with acc., *through*

CONJUNCTION «si», *if*

LESSON XXX, §182

VERBS «absum», *abesse, irreg., be away, be absent, be distant*, with separative abl. «adpropinquô, -âre», *draw near, approach* (propinquity), with dative[A] «contineô, -êre», *hold together, hem in, keep* (contain) «discêdô, -ere», *depart, go away, leave*, with separative abl. «egeô, -êre», *lack, need, be without*, with separative abl. «interficiô, -ere», *kill* «prohibeô, -êre», *restrain, keep from* (prohibit) «vulnerô, -âre», *wound* (vulnerable)

NOUNS «prôvincia, -ae», f., *province* «vînum, -î», n., *wine*

ADJECTIVE «dêfessus, -a, -um», *weary, worn out*

ADVERB «longê», *far, by far, far away*

[Footnote A: This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with «ad» and the accusative.]

LESSON XXXI, §188

NOUNS aurum, -î, n., *gold* (oriole) «mora, -ae», f., *delay* «nâvigium, nâvi'gî», n., *boat, ship* «ventus, -î», m., *wind* (ventilate)

VERB «nâvigô, -âre», *sail* (navigate)

ADJECTIVES attentus, -a, -um, *attentive, careful* «dubius, -a, -um», *doubtful* (dubious) perfidus, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous* (perfidy)

ADVERB «anteâ», *before, previously*

PREPOSITION «sine», with abl., *without*

LESSON XXXII, §193

NOUNS «animus, -î», m., *mind, heart; spirit, feeling* (animate) «bracchium, bracchî», n., *forearm, arm*
«porta, -ae», f., *gate* (portal)

ADJECTIVES «adversus, -a, -um», *opposite; adverse, contrary* «plênus, -a, -um», *full* (plenty)

PREPOSITION «prô», with abl., *before; in behalf of; instead of*

ADVERB «diû», *for a long time, long*

LESSON XXXIV, §200

ADVERBS «celeriter», *quickly* (celerity) «dênique», *finally* «graviter», *heavily, severely* (gravity) «subitô», *suddenly*

VERB «reportô, -âre, -âvî», *bring back, restore; win, gain* (report)

LESSON XXXVI, §211

«dexter, dextra, dextrum», *right* (dextrous) «sinister, sinistra, sinistrum», *left* «frûstrâ», adv., *in vain* (frustrate)

«gerô, gerere, gessî, gestus», *bear, carry on; wear*; «bellum gerere», *to wage war* «occupô, occupâre, occupâvî, occupâtus», *seize, take possession of* (occupy) «postulô, postulâre, postulâvî, postulâtus», *demand* (ex-postulate) «recûsô, recûsâre, recûsâvî, recûsâtus», *refuse* «stô, stâre, stefî, status», *stand* «temptô, temptâre, temptâvî, temptâtus», *try, tempt, test; attempt* «teneô, tenêre, tenuî, ----», *keep, hold* (tenacious)

The word «ubi», which we have used so much in the sense of *where* in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. «ubi» = *when*, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as, «Ubi mônstrum audîvêrunt, fûgêrunt», *_when they heard the monster, they fled_*
2. «ubi» = *where*, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as, «Videô oppidum ubi Galba habitat», *_I see the town where Galba lives_*

«ubi» is called a *relative conjunction* because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. *When* in the first sentence is equivalent to *at the time* «*at which*»; and in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place* «*in which*».

LESSON XXXVII, §217

«neque» or «nec», conj., *neither, nor, and ... not*; «neque ... neque», *neither ... nor* «castellum, -î», n., *redoubt, fort* (castle) «cotîdiê», adv., *daily*

cessô, cessâre, cessâvî, cessâtus, *cease*, with the infin. «incipiô, incipere, incêpî, inceptus», *begin* (incipient), with the infin. «oppugnô, oppugnâre, oppugnâvî, oppugnâtus», *storm, assail* «petô, petere, petivi» or «petîî, petîtus», *_aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek, ask_* (petition) «pônô, pônerê, posuî, positus», *place, put* (position); «castra pônerê», *to pitch camp* «possum, posse, potuî, ----», *be able, can* (potent), with the infin. «vetô, vetâre, vetuî, vetitus», *forbid* (veto), with the infin.; opposite of «iubeô», *command* «vincô, vincere, vîcî, victus», *conquer* (in-vincible) «vîvô, vîvere, vîxî, ----», *live, be alive* (re-vive)

LESSON XXXIX, §234

«barbarus, -a, -um», *strange, foreign, barbarous*. As a noun, «barbarî, -ôrum», m., plur., *savages, barbarians* «dux, ducis», m., *leader (duke)*. Cf. the verb «dûcô» «eques, equitis», m., *horseman, cavalryman* (equestrian) iûdex, iûdicis, m., *judge* «lapis, lapidis», m., *stone* (lapidary) «mîles, mîlitis», m., *soldier* (militia) «pedes, peditis», m., *foot soldier* (pedestrian) «pês, pedis», [A] m., *foot* (pedal) «prînceps, prîncipis», m., *chief* (principal) «rêx, rêgis», m., *king* (regal) «summus, -a, -um», *highest, greatest* (summit) «virtûs, virtûtis», f., *manliness, courage* (virtue)

[Footnote A: Observe that «e» is *long* in the nom. sing, and *short* in the other cases.]

LESSON XL, §237

«Caesar, -aris», m., *Cæsar* «captîvus, -î», m., *captive, prisoner* «cônsul, -is», m., *consul* «frâter, frâtris», m., *brother* (fraternity) «homô, hominis», m., *man, human being* «impedîmentum, -î», n., *hindrance* (impediment); plur. «impedîmenta, -ôrum», *baggage* «imperâtor, imperâtôris», m., *commander in chief, general* (emperor) «legiô, legiônis», f., *legion* «mâter, mâtis», f., *mother* (maternal) «ôrdô, ôrdinis», m., *row, rank* (order) «pater, patris», m., *father* (paternal) «salûs, salûtis», f., *safety* (salutary) «soror, sorôris», f., *sister* (sorority)

LESSON XLI, §239

«calamitâs, calamitâtis», f., *loss, disaster, defeat* (calamity) «caput, capitis», n., *head* (capital) «flûmen, flûminis», n., *river* (flume) «labor, labôris», m., *labor, toil* «opus, operis», n., *work, task* «ôrâtor, ôrâtôris», m., *orator* «rîpa, -ae», f., *bank* (of a stream) «tempus, temporis», n., *time* (temporal) «terror, terrôris», m., *terror, fear* «victor, victôris», m., *victor*

«accipiô, accipere, accêpî, acceptus», *receive, accept* «cônfirmô, cônfirmâre, cônfirmâvî, cônfirmâtus», *_strengthen, establish, encourage_* (confirm)

LESSON XLIII, §245

«animal, animâlis (-ium[A])», n., *animal* «avis, avis (-ium)», f., *bird* (aviation) «caedês, caedis (-ium)», f., *slaughter* calcar, calcâris (-ium), n., *spur* «cîvis, cîvis (-ium)», m. and f., *citizen* (civic) «cliêns, clientis (-ium)», m., *retainer, dependent* (client) «fînis, fînis (-ium)», m., *end, limit* (final); plur., *country, territory* «hostis, hostis (-ium)», m. and f., *enemy in war* (hostile). Distinguish from «inimîcus», which means a *personal enemy* «ignis, ignis (-ium)», m., *fire* (ignite) «însigne, însignis (-ium)», n. *decoration, badge* (ensign) «mare, maris (-ium[B])», n., *sea* (marine) «nâvis, nâvis (-ium)», f., *ship* (naval); «nâvis longa», *man-of-war* «turris, turris (-ium)», f., *tower* (turret) «urbs, urbis (-ium)», f., *city* (suburb). An «urbs» is larger than an «oppidum».

[Footnote A: The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark the i-stems.]

[Footnote B: The genitive plural of mare is not in use.]

LESSON XLIV, §249

«arbor, arboris», f., *tree* (arbor) «collis, collis (-ium)», m., *hill* «dêns, dentis (-ium)», m., *tooth* (dentist) fôns, fontis (-ium), m., *fountain, spring; source* «iter, itineris», n., *march, journey, route* (itinerary) «mênsis, mênsis (-ium)», m., *month* «moenia, -ium», n., plur., *walls, fortifications*. Cf. «mûrus» «mônus, montis (-ium)», m., *mountain*; «summus mônus», *top of the mountain* «numquam», adv., *never* «pônus, pontis», m., *bridge* (pontoon) «sanguis, sanguinis», m., *blood* (sanguinary) «summus, -a, -um», *highest, greatest* (summit) «trâns», prep, with acc., *across* (transatlantic) «vîs (vîs)», gen. plur. «virium», f. *strength, force, violence* (vim)

LESSON XLV, §258

«âcer, âcris, âcre», *sharp, keen, eager* (acid) «brevis, breve», *short, brief* «difficilis, difficile», *difficult* «facilis, facile», *facile, easy* «fortis, forte», *brave* (fortitude) «gravis, grave», *heavy, severe, serious* (grave) «omnis, omne», *every, all* (omnibus) «pâr», gen. «paris», *equal* (par) «paucî, -ae, -a», *few, only a few* (paucity) «secundus, -a, -um», *second; favorable*, opposite of adversus «signum, -î», n., *signal, sign, standard* «vêlôx», gen. «vêlôcis», *swift* (velocity)

«conlocô, conlocâre, conlocâvî, conlocâtus», *arrange, station, place* (collocation) «dêmônstrô, dêmônstrâre, dêmônstrâvî, dêmônstrâtus», *_point out, explain_* (demonstrate) «mandô, mandâre, mandâvî, mandâtus», *commit, intrust* (mandate)

LESSON XLVI, §261

«adventus, -ûs», m., *approach, arrival* (advent) «ante», prep. with acc., *before* (ante-date) «cornû, -ûs», n., *horn, wing* of an army (cornucopia); «â dextrô cornû», *on the right wing*; «â sinistrô cornû», *on the left wing* «equitâtus, -ûs», m., *cavalry* «exercitus, -ûs», m., *army* «impetus, -ûs», m., *attack* (impetus); «impetum facere in», with acc., *to make an attack on* «lacus, -ûs, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus», m., *lake* «manus, -ûs», f., *hand; band, force* (manual) «portus, -ûs», m., *harbor* (port) «post», prep. with acc., *behind, after* (post-mortem)

«cremô, cremâre, cremâvî, cremâtus», *burn* (cremate) «exerceô, exercêre, exercuî, exercitus», *practice, drill, train* (exercise)

LESSON XLVII, §270

Athênæ, -ârûm, f., plur., *Athens* Corinthus, -î, f., *Corinth* «domus, -ûs, locative «domî»», f., *house, home* (dome). Cf. «domicilium» «Genâva, -ae», f., *Geneva* Pompêii, -ôrum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in Campania. See map «propter», prep. with acc., *on account of, because of* rûs, rûris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. «rûra», n., *country* (rustic) «tergum, tergî», n., *back*; «â tergô», *behind, in the rear* «vulnus, vulneris», n., *wound* (vulnerable)

«committô, committere, commîsî, commissus», *intrust, commit*; «proelium committere», *join battle* «convocô, convocâre, convocâvî, convocâtus», *call together, summon* (convoke) «timeô, timêre, timuî, ----», *fear; be afraid* (timid) «vertô, vertere, vertî, versus», *turn, change* (convert); «terga vertere», *to turn the backs, hence to retreat*

LESSON XLVIII, §276

«aciês, -êi», f., *line of battle* «aestâs, aestâtis», f., *summer* «annus, -î», m., *year* (annual) «diês, diêi», m., *day* (diary) «fidês, fideî, no plur.», f., *_faith, trust; promise, word; protection;* «in fidem venîre», *to come under the protection* «fluctus, -ûs», m. *wave, billow* (fluctuate) «hiems, hiemis», f., *winter* «hôra, -ae», f., *hour* «lûx, lûcis», f., *light* (lucid); «prîma lux», *daybreak* «merîdiês», acc. «-em», abl. «-ê», no plur., m., *midday* (meridian) «nox, noctis (-ium)», f., *night* (nocturnal) «prîmus, -a, -um», *first* (prime) «rês, reî», f., *thing, matter* (real); «rês gestæ», *deeds, exploits* (lit. *things performed*); «rês adversæ», *adversity*; «rês secundæ», *prosperity* «spês, speî», f., *hope*

LESSON XLIX, §283

«amîcîtia, -ae», f., *friendship* (amicable) «itaque», conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly* «littera, -ae», f., *a letter* of the alphabet; plur., *a letter, an epistle* «metus, metûs», m., *fear* «nihil, indeclinable», n., *nothing* (nihilist) «nûntius, nûntî», m., *messenger*. Cf. «nûntiô» «pâx, pâcis», f., *peace* (pacify) «rêgnum, -î», n., *reign, sovereignty, kingdom* «supplicum, supplî'cî», n., *punishment*; «supplicum sûmere dê», with abl., *inflict*

punishment on; «supplicum dare», *suffer punishment*. Cf. «poena»

«placeô, placêre, placuî, placitus», *be pleasing to, please*, with dative. Cf. §154 «sûmô, sûmere, sûmpsi, sûmptus», *take up, assume* «sustineô, sustinêre, sustinuî, sustentus», *sustain*

LESSON L, §288

«corpus, corporis», n., *body* (corporal) «dênsus, -a, -um», *dense* «îdem, e'adem, idem», demonstrative pronoun, *the same* (identity) «ipse, ipsa, ipsum», intensive pronoun, *self; even, very* «mîrus, -a, -um», *wonderful, marvelous* (miracle) «ôlim», adv., *formerly, once upon a time* «pars, partis (-ium)», f., *part, region, direction* «quoque», adv., *also*. Stands *after* the word which it emphasizes «sôl, sôlis», m., *sun* (solar) «vêrus, -a, -um», *true, real* (verity)

«dêbeô, dêbêre, dêbuî, dêbitus», *owe, ought* (debt) «êripiô, êriperere, êripuî, êreptus», *snatch from*

LESSON LI, §294

«hic, haec, hoc», demonstrative pronoun, *this* (of mine); *he, she, it* «ille, illa, illud», demonstrative pronoun *that* (yonder); *he, she, it* «invîsus, -a, -um», *hateful, detested*, with dative Cf. §143 «iste, ista, istud», demonstrative pronoun, *that* (of yours); *he, she, it* «lîbertâs, -âtis», f., *liberty* «modus, -û», m., *measure; manner, way, mode* «nômen, nôminis», n., *name* (nominate) «oculus, -û», m., *eye* (oculist) «prîstinus, -a, -um», *former, old-time* (pristine) «pûblicus, -a, -um», *public, belonging to the state*; «rês pûblica, reî pûblica», f., *the commonwealth, the state, the republic* «vestigium, vestî'gî», n., *footprint, track; trace, vestige* «vôx, vôcis», f., *voice*

LESSON LII, §298

«incolumis, -e», *unharméd* «nê ... quidem», adv., *not even*. The emphatic word stands between «nê» and «quidem» «nisi», conj., *unless, if ... not* «paene», adv., *almost* (pen-insula) «satis», adv., *enough, sufficiently* (satisfaction) «tantus, -a, -um», *so great* «vêrô», adv., *truly, indeed, in fact*. As a conj. *but, however*, usually stands second, never first.

«dêcidô, dêcidere, dêcidî, ----», *fall down* (deciduous) «dêsiliô, dêsilîre, dêsiluî, dêsultus», *leap down, dismount* «maneô, manêre, mânsî, mânsûrus», *remain* «trâducô, trâducere, trâdûxî, trâductus», *lead across*

LESSON LIII, §306

«aquila, -ae», f., *eagle* (aquiline) «audâx», gen. «audâcis», adj., *bold, audacious* «celer, celeris, celere», *swift, quick* (celerity). Cf. «vêlôx» «explôratôr, -ôris», m., *scout, spy* (explorer) «ingêns», gen. «ingentis», adj., *huge, vast* «medius, -a, -um», *middle, middle part of* (medium) «mêns, mentis (-ium)», f., *mind* (mental). Cf. «animus» «opportûnus, -a, -um», *opportune* «quam», adv., *than*. With the superlative «quam» gives the force of *as possible*, as «quam» audâcissimî virî, *men as bold as possible* «recens», gen. «recentis», adj., *recent* «tam», adv., *so*. Always with an adjective or adverb, while «ita» is generally used with a verb

«quaerô, quaerere, quaesîvî, quaesîtus», *ask, inquire, seek* (question). Cf. «petô»

LESSON LIV, §310

«alacer, alacris, alacre», *eager, spirited, excited* (alacrity) «celeritâs, -âtis», f., *speed* (celerity) «clâmor, clâmôris», m., *shout, clamor* «lênis, lêne», *mild, gentle* (lenient) «mulier, muli'eris», f., *woman* «multitûdô, multitûdinis», f., *multitude* «nêmô», dat. «nêminî», acc. «nêminem» (gen. «nûllûs», abl. «nûllô», from «nûllus»), no plur., m. and f., *no one* «nôbilis, nôbile», *well known, noble* «noctû», adv. (an old abl.), *by night*

(nocturnal) «statim», adv., *immediately, at once* «subitô», adv., *suddenly* «tardus, -a, -um», *slow (tardy)* «cupiô, cupere, cupivî, cupîtus», *desire, wish (cupidity)*

LESSON LV, §314

«aedificium, aedifi'cî», n., *building, dwelling (edifice)* «imperium, impe'ri», n., *command, chief power; empire* «mors, mortis (-ium)», f., *death (mortal)* «reliquus, -a, -um», *remaining, rest of*. As a noun, m. and n. plur., *the rest (relic)* «scelus, sceleris», n., *crime* «servitûs, -ûtis», f., *slavery (servitude)* «vallês, vallis (-ium)», f., *valley*

«abdô, abdere, abdidî, abditus», *hide* «contendô, contendere, contendî, contentus», *_strain, struggle; hasten_ (contend)* «occîdô, occîdere, occîdî, occîsus», *cut down, kill*. Cf. «necô», «interficiô» «perterreô, perterrêre, perterruî, perterrîtus», *terrify, frighten* «recipiô, recipere, recêpî, receptus», *receive, recover; «sê recipere», betake one's self, withdraw, retreat* «trâdô, trâdere, trâdidî, trâditus», *give over, surrender, deliver (traitor)*

LESSON LVI, §318

«aditus, -ûs», m., *approach, access; entrance* «civitâs, civitâtis», f., *citizenship; body of citizens, state (city)* «inter», prep. with acc., *between, among (interstate commerce)* «nam», conj., *for* «obses, obsidis», m. and f., *hostage* «paulô», adv. (abl. n. of «paulus»), *by a little, somewhat*

«incolô, incolere, incoluî, ----», transitive, *inhabit*; intransitive, *dwell*. Cf. «habitô», «vîvô» «relinquô, relinquere, reliquî, relictus», *leave, abandon (relinquish)* «statuô, statuere, statuî, statûtus», *fix, decide (statute)*, usually with infin.

LESSON LVII, §326

«aequus, -a, -um», *even, level; equal* «cohors, cohortis (-ium)», f., *cohort, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men* «currô, currere, cucurrî, cursus», *run (course)* «difficultâs, -âtis», f., *difficulty* «fossa, -ae», f., *ditch (fosse)* «gêns, gentis (-ium)», f., *race, tribe, nation (Gentile)* «negôtiûm, negôtiû», n., *business, affair, matter (negotiate)* «regiô, -ônîs», f., *region, district* «rûmor, rûmôris», m., *rumor, report*. Cf. fâma «simul atque», conj., *as soon as*

«suscipiô, suscipere, suscêpî, susceptus», *undertake* «trahô, trahere, trâxî, trâctus», *drag, draw (ex-tract)* «valeô, valêre, valuî, valitûrus», *be strong; plûrimum valêre, to be most powerful, have great influence (value)*. Cf. validus

LESSON LVIII, §332

«commeâtus, -ûs», m., *provisions* «lâtitudô, -inîs», f., *width (latitude)* «longitudô, -inîs», f., *length (longitude)* «magnitudô, -inîs», f., *size, magnitude* «mercâtor, mercâtôris», m., *trader, merchant* «mûnitiô, -ônîs», f., *fortification (munition)* «spatium, spatî», n., *room, space, distance; time*

«cognôscô, cognôscere, cognôvî, cognitus», *learn; in the perfect tenses, know (re-cognize)* «côgô, côgere, coêgî, coactus», *collect; compel (cogent)* «dêfendô, dêfendere, dêfendî, dêfênsus», *defend* «incendô, incendere, incendî, incênsus», *set fire to, burn (incendiary)*. Cf. «cremô» «obtinêô, obtinêre, obtinuî, obtentus», *possess, occupy, hold (obtain)* «perveniô, pervenîre, pervênî, perventus», *come through, arrive*

LESSON LIX, §337

«agmen, agminis», n., *line of march, column*; «prîmum agmen», *the van*; «novissimum agmen», *the rear* «atque», «ac», conj., *and*; «atque» is used before vowels and consonants, «ac» before consonants only. Cf.

«et» and «-que» «concilium, conciliū», n., *council, assembly* «Helvétii, -ōrum», m., *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe «passus, passūs», m., *a pace, five Roman feet*; «mille passuum», *a thousand (of) paces*, a Roman mile «quā dē causā», *for this reason, for what reason* «vāllum, -ī», n., *earth-works, rampart*

«cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus», *fall (decadence)* «dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus», *surrender, give up*; with a reflexive pronoun, *surrender one's self, submit*, with the dative of the indirect object «premo, premere, pressī, pressus», *press hard, harass* «vexo, vexāre, vexāvī, vexātus», *annoy, ravage (vex)*

LESSON LX, §341

«aut», conj., *or*; «aut ... aut», *either ... or* «causā», abl. of «causa», *for the sake of, because of*. Always stands after the gen. which modifies it «ferē», adv., *nearly, almost* «opiniō, -ōnis», f., *opinion, supposition, expectation* «rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae», f. (lit. *the grain affair*), *grain supply* «timor, -ōris», m., *fear*. Cf. «timeō» «undique», adv., *from all sides*

«cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum», *attempt, try* «ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum», *move out, disembark*; «prōgredior», *move forward, advance* (egress, progress) «moror, morārī, morātus sum», *delay* «orior, orirī, ortus sum», *arise, spring; begin; be born (from)* (origin) «proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum», *set out* «revertor, revertī, reversus sum», *return (revert)*. The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., «revertī» «sequor, sequī, secūtus sum», *follow (sequence)*. Note the following compounds of «sequor» and the force of the different prefixes: «cōnsequor» (*follow with*), *overtake*; «īnsequor» (*follow against*), *pursue*; «subsequor» (*follow under*), *follow close after*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

[Transcriber's Note: The "parentheses" were originally printed as [square brackets]. They are rendered here as [[double brackets]].]

A

«ā» or «ab», prep. with abl. *from, by, off*. Translated *on* in «ā dextrō cornū», *on the right wing*; «ā fronte», *on the front or in front*; «ā dextrā», *on the right*; «ā latere», *on the side*; etc. «ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus», *hide, conceal* «ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus», *lead off, lead away* «abs-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus» [[«ab(s)», *off*, + «caedō», *cut*], *cut off* «ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus», *be away, be absent, be distant, be off*; with «ā» or «ab» and abl., §501.32 «ac», conj., see «atque» «ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus» [[«ad», *to*, + «capiō», *take*]], *receive, accept* «ācer, ācris, ācre», adj. *sharp*; figuratively, *keen, active, eager* (§471) «acerbus, -a, -um», adj. *bitter, sour* «aciēs, -ēī», f. [[«ācer», *sharp*]], *edge; line of battle* «ācritēr», adv. [[«ācer», *sharp*]], compared «ācrius, ācerrimē», *sharply, fiercely* «ad», prep. with acc. *to, towards, near*. With the gerund or gerundive, *to, for* «ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus», *make equal, make level with* «ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus», *lead to; move, induce* «ad-eō, -īre, -īī, -itus», *go to, approach, draw near, visit*, with acc. (§413) «ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tulī, ad-lātus», *bring, convey; report, announce; render, give* (§426) «ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus» [[«ad», *to*, + «faciō», *do*]], *affect, visit* «adflīctātus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «adflīctō», *shatter*]], *shattered* «ad-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus», *dash upon, strike upon; harass, distress* «ad-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus» [[«ad», *to*, + «habeō», *hold*]], *apply, employ, use* «ad-hūc», adv. *hitherto, as yet, thus far* «aditus, -ūs», m. [[«adeō», *approach*]], *approach, access; entrance*. Cf. «adventus» «ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus», *bind to, fasten* «ad-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum», dep. verb [[«ad», *to*, + «loquor», *speak*]], *speak to, address*, with acc. «ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus», *manage, direct* «admīrātiō, -ōnis», f. [[«admīror», *wonder at*]], *admiration, astonishment* «ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus», *move to; apply, employ* «ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus», *come near, approach*, with dat. «ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūres», *be present; assist*; with dat., §426 «adulēscēns, -entis», m.

and f. [[part. of «adolêscô», *grow*]], _a youth, young man, young person_ «adventus, -ûs», m. [[«ad», *to*, + «veniô», *come*]], _approach, arrival_ (§466) «adversus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «advertô», *turn to*]], _turned towards, facing; contrary, adverse_ «rês adversae», *adversity* «aedificium, aedifici'cî», n. [[«aedificô», *build*]], *building, edifice* «aedificô, -âre, -âvi, -âtus» [[«aedês», *house*, + «faciô», *make*]], *build* «aeger, aegra, aegrum», adj. *sick, feeble* «aequâlis, -e», adj. *equal, like*. As a noun, «aequâlis, -is», m. or f. *one of the same age* «aequus, -a, -um», adj. *even, level; equal* «Aesôpus, -î», m. *Æsop*, a writer of fables «aestâs, -âtis», f. *summer*, «initâ aestâte», *at the beginning of summer* «aetâs, -âtis», f. *age* «Aethiopia, -ae», f. *Ethiopia*, a country in Africa «Âfrica, -ae», f. *Africa* «Âfricânus, -a, -um», adj. *of Africa*. A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa «ager, agrî», m. *field, farm, land* (§462.c) «agger, -eris», m. *mound* «agmen, -inis», n. [[«agô», *drive*]], *an army on the march, column*. «prîmum agmen», *the van* «agô, -ere, êgî, âctus», *drive, lead; do, perform*. «vîtam agere», *pass life* «agricola, -ae», m. [[«ager», *field*, + «colô», *cultivate*]], *farmer* «agrî cultûra, -ae», f. *agriculture* «âla, -ae», f. *wing* «alacer, -cris, -cre», adj. *active, eager*. Cf. «âcer» «alacritâs, -âtis», f. [[«alacer», *active*]], *eagerness, alacrity* «alacriter», adv. [[«alacer», *active*]], comp «alacrius, alacerrimê», *actively, eagerly* «albus, -a, -um», adj., *white* «alcês, -is», f. *elk* «Alcmêna, -ae», f. *Alcmêna*, the mother of Hercules «aliquis (-quî), -qua, -quid (-quod)», indef. pron. *some one, some* (§487) «alius, -a, -ud» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), adj. *another, other*. «alius ... alius», *one ... another*. «aliî ... aliî», *some ... others* (§110) «Alpês, -ium», f. plur. *the Alps* «alter, -era, -erum» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), adj. *the one, the other* (of two). «alter ... alter», *the one ... the other* (§110) «altitûdô, -inis», f. [[«altus», *high*]], *height* «altus, -a, -um», adj. *high, tall, deep* «Amâzonês, -um», f. plur. *Amazons*, a fabled tribe of warlike women «ambô, -ae, -ô», adj. (decl. like «duo»), *both* «amîcê», adv. [[«amîcus», *friendly*]], superl. «amîcissimê», *in a friendly manner* «amiciô, -îre, ----, -ictus» [[«am-», *about*, + «iaciô», *throw*]], *throw around, wrap about, clothe* «amîcitia, -ae», f. [[«amîcus», *friend*]], *friendship* «amîcus, -a, -um», adj. [[«amô», *love*]], *friendly*. As a noun, «amîcus, -î», m. *friend* «â-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus», *send away; lose* «amô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *love, like, be fond of* (§488) «amphitheâtrum, -î», n. *amphitheater* «amplus, -a, -um», adj. *large, ample; honorable, noble* «an», conj. *or*, introducing the second part of a double question «ancilla, -ae», f. *maidservant* «ancora, -ae», f. *anchor* «Andromeda, -ae», f. *Andromêda*, daughter of Cepheus and wife of Perseus «angulus, -î», m. *angle, corner* «anim-advertô, -ere, -tî, -sus» [[«animus», *mind*, + «advertô», *turn to*]], *turn the mind to, notice* «animal, -âlis», n. [[«anima», *breath*]], *animal* (§465.b) «animôsus, -a, -um», adj. *spirited* «animus, -î», m. [[«anima», *breath*]], *mind, heart; spirit, courage, feeling; in this sense often plural* «annus, -i», m. *year* «ante», prep. with acc. *before* «anteâ», adv. [[«ante»]], *before, formerly* «antîquus, -a, -um», adj. [[«ante», *before*]], *former, ancient, old* «aper, aprî», m. *wild boar* «Apollô, -inis», m. *Apollo*, son of Jupiter and Latona, brother of Diana «ap-pâreô, -êre, -uî», ---- [[«ad + pâreô», *appear*]], *appear* «ap-pellô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *call by name, name*. Cf. «nôminô, vocô» «Appius, -a, -um», adj. *Appian* «ap-plicô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *apply, direct, turn* «apud», prep. with acc. *among; at, at the house of* «aqua, -ae», f. *water* «aquila, -ae», f. *eagle* «âra, -ae», f. *altar* «arbitror, -ârî, -âtus sum», *think, suppose* (§420.c). Cf. «exîstimô, putô» «arbor, -oris», f. *tree* (§247.1.a) «Arcadia, -ae», f. *Arcadia*, a district in southern Greece «ârdeô, -êre, ârsî, ârsûrus», *be on fire, blaze, burn* «arduus, -a, -um», adj. *steep* «Arícia, -ae», f. *Aricia*, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome «ariês, -etis», m. *battering-ram* (p. 221) «arma, -ôrum», n. plur. *arms, weapons*. Cf. «têlum» «armâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[«armô», *arm*]], *armed, equipped* «arô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *plow, till* «ars, artis», f. *art, skill* «articulus, -î», m. *joint* «ascrîbô, -ere, -scrîpsî, -scrîptus» [[«ad», *in addition*, + «scrîbô», *write*]], *enroll, enlist* «Âsia, -ae», f. *Asia*, i.e. Asia Minor «at», conj. *but*. Cf. «autem, sed» «Athênae, -ârum», f. plur. *Athens* «Atlâs, -antis», m. *Atlas*, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky «at-que, ac», conj. *and, and also, and what is more*. «atque» may be used before either vowels or consonants, «ac» before consonants only «attentus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «attendô», *direct (the mind) toward*]], *attentive, intent on, careful* «at-tonitus, -a, -um», adj. *thunderstruck, astounded* «audâcia, -ae», f. [[«audâx», *bold*]], *boldness, audacity* «audâcter», adv. [[«audâx», *bold*]], compared «audâcius, audâcissimê», *boldly* «audâx, -âcis», adj. *bold, daring* «audeô, -êre, ausus sum», *dare* «audiô, -îre, -îvî or -îî, -îtus», *hear, listen to* (§§420.d, 491) «Augêas, -ae», m. *Auge'as*, a king whose stables Hercules cleaned «aura, -ae», f. *air, breeze* «aurâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[«aurum», *gold*]], *adorned with gold* «aureus, -a, -um», adj. [[«aurum», *gold*]], *golden* «aurum, -î», n. *gold* «aut», conj. *or*. «aut ... aut», *either ... or* «autem», conj., usually second, never first, in the clause, *but, moreover, however, now*. Cf. «at, sed» «auxilium, auxili'î», n. *help, aid, assistance*; plur. *auxiliaries* «â-vertô, -ere, -tî, -sus», *turn away, turn aside* «avis, -is», f. *bird* (§243.1)

B

«ballista, -ae», f. *ballista*, an engine for hurling missiles (p. 220) «balteus, -î», m. *belt, sword belt* «barbarus, -î», m. *barbarian, savage* «bellum, -î», n. *war*. «bellum îferre», with dat. *make war upon* «bene», adv. [[for «bonê», from «bonus»]], compared «melius, optimê», *well* «benignê», adv. [[«benignus», *kind*]], compared «benignus, benignissimê», *kindly* «benignus, -a, -um», adj. *good-natured, kind*, often used with dat. «bînî, -ae, -a», distributive numeral adj. *two each, two at a time* (§334) «bis», adv. *twice* «bonus, -a, -um», adj. compared «melior, optimus», *good, kind* (§469.a) «bôs, bovis» (gen. plur. «boum» or «bovum», dat. and abl. plur. «bôbus» or «bûbus»), m. and f. *ox, cow* «bracchium, brachî», n. *arm* «brevis, -e», adj. *short* «Brundisium, -î», n. *Brundisium*, a seaport in southern Italy. See map «bulla, -ae», f. *bulla*, a locket made of small concave plates of gold fastened by a spring (p. 212)

C

«C.» abbreviation for «Gâius», Eng. *Caius* «cadô, -ere, ce'cidî, câsûrus», *fall* «caedês, -is», f. [[«caedô», *cut*]], (*a cutting down*), _slaughter, carnage_ (§465.a) «caelum, -î», n. *sky, heavens* «Caesar, -aris», m. *Caesar*, the famous general, statesman, and writer «calamitâs, -âtis», f. *loss, calamity, defeat, disaster* «calcar, -âris», n. *spur* (§465.b) «Campânia, -ae», f. *Campania*., a district of central Italy. See map «Campânus, -a, -um», adj. *of Campania* «campus, -î», m. *plain, field*, esp. the *Campus Martius*, along the Tiber just outside the walls of Rome «canis, -is», m. and f. *dog* «canô, -ere, ce'cinî», ----, *sing* «cantô, -âre, -âvi, -âtus» [[«canô», *sing*]], *sing* «Capênus, -a, -um», adj. *of Capena*, esp. the *Porta Cape'na*, the gate at Rome leading to the Appian Way «capiô, -ere, cêpî, captus», *take, seize, capture* (§492) «Capitôlinus, -a, -um», adj. *belonging to the Capitol, Capitoline* «Capitôlium, Capitô'li», n. [[«caput», *head*]], *the Capitol*, the hill at Rome on which stood the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the citadel «capsa, -ae», f. *box for books* «captîvus, -î», m. [[«capiô», *take*]], *captive* «Capua, -ae», f. *Capua*, a large city of Campania. See map «caput, -itis», n. *head* (§464.2.b) «carcer, -eris», m. *prison, jail* «carrus, -î», m. *cart, wagon* «cârus, -a, -um», adj. *dear; precious* «casa, -ae», f. *hut, cottage* «castellum, -î», n. [[dim. of «castrum», *fort*]], *redoubt, fort* «castrum, -î», n. *fort*. Usually in the plural «castra, -ôrum», a military *camp*. «castra pônere», *to pitch camp* «câsus, -us», m. [[«cadô», *fall*]], *chance; misfortune, loss* «catapulta, -ae», f. *catapult*, an engine for hurling stones «catêna, -ae», f. *chain* «caupôna, -ae», f. *inn* «causa, -ae», f. *cause, reason*, «quâ dê causâ», *for this reason* «cêdô, -ere, cessî, cessûrus», *give way, retire* «celer, -eris, -ere», adj. *swift, fleet* «celeritâs, -âtis», f. [[«celer», *swift*]], *swiftness, speed* «celeriter», adv. [[«celer», *swift*]], compared «celerius, celerrimê», *swiftly* «cêna, -ae», f. *dinner* «centum», indecl. numeral adj. *hundred* «centuriô, -ônis», m. *centurion, captain* «Cêpheus» (dissyl.), «-êi» (acc. «Cêphea»), m. *Cepheus*, a king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda «Cerberus, -î», m. *Cerberus*, the fabled three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to Hades «certâmen, -inis», n. [[«certô», *struggle*]], _struggle, contest, rivalry_ «certê», adv. [[«certus», *sure*]], compared «certius, certissimê», *surely, certainly* «certus, -a, -um», adj. *fixed, certain, sure*. «aliquem certiôrem facere» (*to make some one more certain*), *to inform some one* «cervus, -î», m. *stag, deer* «cessô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *delay, cease* «cibâria, -ôrum», n. plur. *food, provisions* «cibus, -î», m. *food, victuals* «Cimbrî, -ôrum», m. plur. *the Cimbri* «Cimbricus, -a, -um», adj. *Cimbrian* «cîncîctus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «cingô», *surround*]], _girt, surrounded_ «cingô, -ere, cînxî, cîncîctus», *gird, surround* «circiter», adv. *about* «circum», prep, with acc. *around* «circum'dô, -dare, -dedî, -datus», *place around, surround, inclose* «circum'eô, -îre, -îi, -itus», *go around* «circum-sistô, -ere, circum'stetî», ----, *stand around, surround* «circum-veniô, -îre, -vênî, -ventus» (*come around*), *surround* «citerior, -ius», adj. in comp., superl. «citimus», *hither, nearer* (§475) «cîvîlis, -e», adj. [[«cîvis»]], *civil* «cîvis, -is», m. and f. *citizen* (§243.1) «cîvitâs, -âtis», f. [[«cîvis», *citizen*]], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship* «clâmor, -ôris», m. *shout, cry* «clârus, -a, -um», adj. *clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining* «classis, -is», f. *fleet* «claudô, -ere, -sî, -sus», *shut, close* «clavus, -î», m. *stripe* «cliêns, -entis», m. *dependent, retainer, client* (§465.a) «Cocles, -itis», m. (*blind in one eye*), *Cocles*, the surname of Horatius «co-gnôscô, -ere, -gnôvî, -gnîtus», *learn, know, understand*. Cf. «sciô» (§420.b) «côgô, -ere, coêgî, coactus» [[«co(m)-», *together*, + «agô», *drive*]], (*drive together*), *collect; compel, drive* «cohors, cohortis», f. *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion, about 360 men «collis, -is», m. *hill*, «in summô colle», *on top of the hill* (§247.2.a) «collum, -î», n. *neck* «colô, -ere, colû, cultus», _cultivate, till; honor, worship; devote one's self to_ «columna, -ae», f.

column, pillar «com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-)», a prefix, *together, with*, or intensifying the meaning of the root word «coma, -ae», f. *hair* «comes, -itis», m. and f. [[«com-», *together*, + «eô», *go*], *companion, comrade* «comitatus, -ûs», m. [[«comitor», *accompany*]], *escort, company* «comitor, -ârî, -âtus sum», dep. verb [[«comes», *companion*]], *accompany* «com-meâtus, -ûs», m. *supplies* «com-minus», adv. [[«com-», *together*, + «manus», *hand*]], *hand to hand* «com-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus», *join together; commit, intrust*. «proelium committere», *join battle*. «sê committere» with dat, *trust one's self to* «commodê», adv. [[«commodus», *fit*]], compared «commodius, commodissimê», *conveniently, fitly* «commodus, -a, -um», adj. *suitable, fit* «com-môtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «commoveô», *move*]], *aroused, moved* «com-parô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «parô», *prepare*]], *prepare; provide, get* «com-pleô, -êre, -plêvî, -plêtus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «pleô», *fill*]], *fill up* «complexus, -ûs», m. *embrace* «com-primô, -ere, -pressî, -pressus» [[«com-», *together*, + «premô», *press*]], *press together, grasp, seize* «con-cidô, -ere, -cidî», ---- [[«com-», *intensive*, + «cadô», *fall*]], *fall down* «concilium, concilî», n. *meeting, council* «con-clûdô, -ere, -clûsî, -clûsus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «claudô», *close*]], *shut up, close; end, finish* «con-currô, -ere, -currî, -cursus» [[«com-», *together*, + «currô», *run*]], *run together; rally, gather* «condiciô, -ônîs», f. [[«com-», *together*, + «dicô», *talk*]], *agreement, condition, terms* «con-dônô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *pardon* «con-dûcô, -ere, -dûxî, -ductus», *hire* «côn-ferô, -ferre, -tulî, -lâtus», *bring together*. «sê cônferre», *betake one's self* «côn-fertus, -a, -um», adj. *crowded, thick* «côn-festim», adv. *immediately* «côn-ficiô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus» [[«com-», *completely*, + «faciô», *do*]], *make, complete, accomplish, finish* «côn-firmô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *make firm, establish, strengthen, affirm, assert* «côn-fluô, -ere, -flûxî», ----, *flow together* «côn-fugiô, -ere, -fûgî, -fugitûrus», *flee for refuge, flee* «con-iciô, -ere, -iêcî, -iectus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «iaciô», *throw*]], *hurl* «con-iungô, -ere, -iûnxî, -iûnctus» [[«com-», *together*, + «iungô», *join*]], *join together, unite* «con-iûrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«com-», *together*, + «iûrô», *swear*]], *unite by oath, conspire* «con-locô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«com-», *together*, + «locô», *place*]], *arrange, place, station* «conloquium, conlo'quî», n. [[«com-», *together*, + «loquor», *speak*]], *conversation, conference* «côn-or, -ârî, -âtus sum», dep. verb, *endeavor, attempt, try* «côn-scendô, -ere, -scendî, -scênsus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «scandô», *climb*]], *climb up, ascend*. «nâvem cônscendere», *embark, go on board* «côn-scribô, -ere, -scripsî, -scriptus» [[«com-», *together*, + «scribô», *write*]], (*write together*), *enroll, enlist* «côn-secrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «sacrô», *consecrate*]], *consecrate, devote* «côn-sequor, -sequî, -secûtus sum», dep. verb [[«com-», *intensive*, + «sequor», *follow*]], *pursue; overtake; win* «côn-servô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «servô», *save*]], *preserve, save* «côn-silium, côn-silî», n. *plan, purpose, design; wisdom* «côn-sistô, -ere, -stîtî, -stîtus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «sistô», *cause to stand*]], *stand firmly, halt, take one's stand* «côn-spiciô, -ere, -spêxî, -spectus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «spiciô», *spy*]], *look at attentively, perceive, see* «côn-stantia, -ae», f. *firmness, steadiness, perseverance* «côn-stituô, -ere, -uî, -ûtus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «statuô», *set*]], *establish, determine, resolve* «côn-stô, -âre, -stîtî, -stâtûrus» [[«com-», *together*, + «stô», *stand*]], *agree; be certain; consist of* «côn-sul, -ulis», m. *consul* (§464.2.a) «côn-sûmô, -ere, -sûmpsî, -sûmptus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «sumô», *take*]], *consume, use up* «con-tendô, -ere, -dî, -tus», *strain; hasten; fight, contend, struggle* «con-tineô, -êre, -uî, -tentus» [[«com-», *together*, + «teneô», *hold*]], *hold together, hem in, contain; restrain* «contrâ», prep, with acc. *against, contrary to* «con-trahô, -ere, -trâxî, -trâctus» [[«com-», *together*, + «trahô», *draw*]], *draw together; of sails, shorten, furl* «contrôversia, -ae», f. *dispute, quarrel* «con-veniô, -îre, -vênî, -ventus» [[«com-», *together*, + «veniô», *come*]], *come together, meet, assemble* «con-vertô, -ere, -vertî, -versus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «vertô», *turn*]], *turn* «con-vocô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«com-», *together*, + «vocô», *call*]], *call together* «co-orior, -îrî, -ortus sum», dep. verb [[«com-», *intensive*, + «orior», *rise*]], *rise, break forth* «côpia, -ae», f. [[«com-», *intensive*, + «ops», *wealth*]], *abundance, wealth, plenty*. *Plur.* «côpiae, -ârum», *troops* «coquô, -ere, coxî, coctus», *cook* «Corinthus, -î», f. *Corinth, the famous city on the Isthmus of Corinth* «Cornêlia, -ae», f. *Cornelia, daughter of Scipio and mother of the Gracchi* «Cornêlius, Cornê'li», m. *Cornelius, a Roman name* «cornû, -ûs», n. *horn; wing of an army*, «â dextrô cornû», *on the right wing* (§466) «corôna, -ae», f. *garland, wreath; crown* «corônâtus, -a, -um», adj. *crowned* «corpus, -oris», n. *body* «cor-ripiô, -ere, -uî, -reptus» [[«com-», *intensive*, + «rapiô», *seize*]], *seize, grasp* «cotîdiânus, -a, -um», adj. *daily* «cotîdiê», adv. *daily* «crêber, -bra, -brum», adj. *thick, crowded, numerous, frequent* «crêdô, -ere, -dîdî, -dîtus», *trust, believe*, with dat. (§501.14) «cremô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *burn* «creô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *make; elect, appoint* «Crêôn, -ontis», m. *Creon, a king of Corinth* «crêscô, -ere, crêvî, crêtus», *rise, grow, increase* «Crêta, -ae», f. *Crete, a large island in the Mediterranean* «Crêtaeus, -a, -um», adj. *Cretan* «crûs, crûris», n. *leg* «crûstulum, -î», n.

pastry, cake «cubîle, -is», n. *bed* «cultûra, -ae», f. *culture, cultivation* «cum», conj. with the indic. or subjv. *when; since; although* (§501.46) «cum», prep, with abl. *with* (§209) «cupidê», adv. [[«cupidus», *desirous*]], compared «cupidius, cupidissimê», *eagerly* «cupiditâs, -âtis», f. [[«cupidus», *desirous*]], *desire, longing* «cupiô, -ere, -îvî» or «-î, -îtus», *desire, wish*. Cf. «volô» «cûr», adv. *why, wherefore* «cûra, -ae», f. *care, pains; anxiety* «cûria, -ae», f. *senate house* «cûrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«cûra», *care*]], *care for, attend to, look after* «currô, -ere, cucurrî, cursus», *run* «curre, -ûs», m. *chariot* «cursus, -ûs», m. *course* «custôdiô, -îre, -îvî, -îtus» [[«custôs», *guard*]], *guard, watch*

D

«Daedalus, -î», m. *Dæd'alus*, the supposed inventor of the first flying machine «Dâvus, -î», m. *Davus*, name of a slave «dê», prep, with abl. *down from, from; concerning, about, for* (§209). «quâ dê causâ», *for this reason, wherefore* «dea, -ae», f. *goddess* (§461.a) «dêbeô, -êre, -uî, -itus» [[«dê», *from*, + «habeô», *hold*]], *owe, ought, should* «decem», indecl. numeral adj. *ten* «dê-cernô, -ere, -crêvî, -crêtus» [[«dê», *from*, + «cernô», *separate*]], *decide, decree* «dê-cidô, -ere, -cidî», ---- [[«dê», *down*, + «cadô», *fall*]], *fall down* «decimus, -a, -um», numeral adj. *tenth* «dê-clîvis, -e», adj. *sloping downward* «dê-dô, -ere, -didî, -ditus», *give up, surrender*, «sê dêdere», *surrender one's self* «dê-dûcô, -ere, -dûxî, -ductus» [[«dê», *down*, + «dûcô», *lead*]], *lead down, escort* «dê-fendô, -ere, -dî, -fênsus», *ward off, repel, defend* «dê-ferô, -ferre, -tulî, -lâtus» [[«dê», *down*, + «ferô», *bring*]], *bring down; report, announce* (§426) «dê-fessus, -a, -um», adj. *tired out, weary* «dê-ficiô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus» [[«dê», *from*, + «faciô», *make*]], *fail, be wanting; revolt from* «dê-figô, -ere, -fîxî, -fîxus» [[«dê», *down*, + «fîgô», *fasten*]], *fasten, fix* «dê-iciô, -ere, -iêcî, -iectus» [[«dê», *down*, + «iaciô», *hurl*]], *hurl down; bring down, kill* «de-inde», adv. (*from thence*), *then, in the next place* «dêlectô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *delight* «dêleô, -êre, -êvî, -êtus», *blot out, destroy* «dêliberô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *weigh, deliberate, ponder* «dê-ligô, -ere, -lêgî, -lêctus» [[«dê», *from*, + «legô», *gather*]], *choose, select* «Delphicus, -a, -um», adj. *Delphic* «dêmissus, -a, -um» [[part. of «dêmittô», *send down*]], *downcast, humble* «dê-mônstrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«dê», *out*, + «mônstrô», *point*]], *point out, show* «dêmum», adv. *at last, not till then*. «tum dêmum», *then at last* «dênique», adv. *at last, finally*. Cf. «postrêmô» «dêns, dentis», m. *tooth* (§247.2.a) «dênsus, -a, -um», adj. *dense, thick* «dê-pendeô, -êre», ----, ---- [[«dê», *down*, + «pendeô», *hang*]], *hang from, hang down* «dê-plôrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«dê», *intensive*, + «plôrô», *wail*]], *bewail, deplore* «dê-pônô, -ere, -posuî, -positus» [[«dê», *down*, + «pônô», *put*]], *put down* «dê-scendô, -ere, -dî, -scênsus» [[«dê», *down*, + «scandô», *climb*]], *climb down, descend* «dê-scribô, -ere, -scripsî, -scriptus» [[«dê», *down*, + «scribô», *write*]], *write down* «dê-siderô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *long for* «dê-siliô, -îre, -uî, -sultus» [[«dê», *down*, + «saliô», *leap*]], *leap down* «dê-spêrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«dê», *away from*, + «spêrô», *hope*]], *despair* «dê-spiciô, -ere, -spêxi, -spectus» [[«dê», *down*]], *look down upon, despise* «dê-sum, -esse, -fuî, -futûrus» [[«dê», *away from*, + «sum», *be*]], *be wanting, lack*, with dat. (§426) «deus, -î», m. *god* (§468) «dê-volvô, -ere, -volvî, -volûtus» [[«dê», *down*, + «volvô», *roll*]], *roll down* «dê-vorô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«dê», *down*, + «vorô», *swallow*]], *devour* «dexter, -tra, -trum» («-tera, -terum»), adj. *to the right, right*. «â dextrô cornû», *on the right wing* «Diâna, -ae», f. *Diana*, goddess of the moon and twin sister of Apollo «dîcô, -ere, dîxî, dictus» (imv. «dîc»), *say, speak, tell*. Usually introduces indirect discourse (§420.a) «dictâtor, -ôris», m. [[«dictô», *dictate*]], *dictator*, a chief magistrate with unlimited power «diês, -êi» or «diê», m., sometimes f. in sing., *day* (§467) «dif-ferô, -ferre, distulî, dîlâtus» [[«dis-», *apart*, + «ferô», *carry*]], *carry apart; differ*. «differre inter sê», *differ from each other* «dif-ficilis, -e», adj. [[«dis-», *not*, + «facilis», *easy*]], *hard, difficult* (§307) «difficultâs, -âtis», f. [[«difficilis», *hard*]], *difficulty* «dîligenter», adv. [[«dîligêns», *careful*]], compared «dîligentius, dîligentissimê», *industriously, diligently* «dîligentia, -ae», f. [[«dîligêns», *careful*]], *industry, diligence* «dî-micô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *fight, struggle* «dî-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus» [[«dî-», *off*, + «mittô», *send*]], *send away, dismiss, disband*. «dîmittere animum in», *direct one's mind to, apply one's self to* «Diomêdês, -is», m. *Dî-o-mê'dês*, a name «dis-, dî-», a prefix expressing separation, *off, apart, in different directions*. Often negatives the meaning «dis-cêdô, -ere, -cessî, -cessus» [[«dis-», *apart*, + «cêdô», *go*]], *depart from, leave, withdraw, go away* «dis-cernô, -ere, -crêvî, -crêtus» [[«dis-», *apart*, + «cernô», *sift*]], *separate; distinguish* «disciplîna, -ae», f. *instruction, training, discipline* «discipulus, -î», m. [[«discô», *learn*]], *pupil, disciple* «discô, -ere, didicî», ----, *learn* «dis-cutiô, -ere, -cussî, -cussus» [[«dis-», *apart*, + «quatiô», *shake*]], *shatter, dash to pieces* «dis-pônô, -ere, -posuî, -positus» [[«dis-», *apart*, + «pônô», *put*]],

put here and there, arrange, station «dis-similis, -e», adj. [[«dis-», *apart*, + «similis», *like*]], *unlike, dissimilar* (§307) «dis-tribuô, -ere, -uî, -ûtus», *divide, distribute* «diû», adv., compared «diûtius, diûtissimê», *for a long time, long* (§477) «dô, dare, dedî, datus», *give*. «in fugam dare», *put to flight*. «alicui negôtium dare», *employ some one* «doceô, -êre, -uî, -tus», *teach, show* «doctrîna, -ae», f. [[«doctor», *teacher*]], *teaching, learning, wisdom* «dolor, -ôris», m. *pain, sorrow* «domesticus, -a, -um», adj. [[«domus», *house*]], *of the house, domestic* «domicilium, domici lî», n. *dwelling; house, abode*. Cf. «domus» «domina, -ae», f. *mistress* (of the house), *lady* (§461) «dominus, -î», m. *master* (of the house), *owner, ruler* (§462) «domus, -ûs», f. *house, home*. «domî», locative, *at home* (§468) «dormiô, -îre, -îvî, -îtus», *sleep* «dracô, -ônîs», m. *serpent, dragon* «dubitô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *hesitate* «dubius, -a, -um», adj. [[«duo», *two*]], (*moving two ways*), *doubtful, dubious* «du-centî, -ae, -a», numeral adj. *two hundred* «dûcô, -ere, dûxî, ductus» (imv. «dûc»), *lead, conduct* «dum», conj. *while, as long as* «duo, duae, duo», numeral adj. *two* (§479) «duo-decim», indecl. numeral adj. *twelve* «dûrus, -a, -um», adj. *hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter* «dux, ducis», m. and f. [[cf. «dûcô», *lead*]], *leader, commander*

E

«ê» or «ex», prep, with abl. *out of, from, off, of* (§209) «eburneus, -a, -um», adj. *of ivory* «ecce», adv. *see! behold! there! here!* «ê-dûcô, -ere, -dûxî, -ductus» [[«ê», *out*, + «dûcô», *lead*]], *lead out, draw out* «ef-ficiô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus» [[«ex», *thoroughly*, + «faciô», *do*]], *work out; make, cause* «ef-fugiô, -ere, -fûgî, -fugitûrus» [[«ex», *from*, + «fugiô», *flee*]], *escape* «egeô, -êre, -uî», ----, *be in need of, lack*, with abl. (§501.32) «ego», pers. pron. *I*; plur. «nôs», *we* (§480) «ê-gredior, -î, êgressus sum», dep. verb [[«ê», *out of*, + «gradior», *go*]], *go out, go forth*. «ê nâvî êgredi», *disembark* «ê-iciô, -ere, -iêcî, -iectus» [[«ê», *forth*, + «iaciô», *hurl*]], *hurl forth, expel* «elementum, -î», n., in plur. *first principles, rudiments* «elephantus, -î», m. *elephant* «Êlis, Êlidis», f. *E'lis*, a district of southern Greece «emô, -ere, êmî, êmptus», *buy, purchase* «enim», conj., never standing first, *for, in fact, indeed*. Cf. «nam» «Ennius, Ennî», m. *Ennius*, the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C. «eô, îre, îî» («îvî»), «itûrus», *go* (§499) «eô», adv. *to that place, thither* «Êpîrus, -î», f. *Epi'rus*, a district in the north of Greece «eques, -itis», m. [[«equus», *horse*]], *horseman, cavalryman* «equitâus, -ûs», m. [[«equitô», *ride*]], *cavalry* «equus, -î», m. *horse* «ê-rigô, -ere, -rêxî, -rêctus» [[«ê», *out*, + «regô», *make straight*]], *raise up* «ê-ripiô, -ere, -uî, -reptus» [[«ê», *out of*, + «rapiô», *seize*]], *seize, rescue* «ê-rumpô, -ere, -rûpî, -ruptus» [[«ê», *forth*, + «rumpô», *break*]], *burst forth* «êruptiô, -ônîs», f. *sally* «Erymanthius, -a, -um», adj. *Erymanthian, of Erymanthus*, a district in southern Greece «et», conj. *and, also*. «et ... et», *both ... and*. Cf. «atque, ac, -que» «etiam», adv. (rarely conj.) [[«et», *also*, + «iam», *now*]], *yet, still; also, besides*. Cf. «quoque». «nôn solum ... sed etiam», *not only ... but also* «Etrûscî, -ôrum», m. *the Etruscans*, the people of Etruria. See map of Italy «Eurôpa, -ae», f. *Europe* «Eurystheus, -î», m. *Eurys'theus*, a king of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece «ê-vâdô, -ere, -vâsî, -vâsus» [[«ê», *out*, + «vâdô», *go*]], *go forth, escape* «ex», see «ê» «exanimâus, -a, -um» [[part. of «exanimô», *put out of breath* («anima»)], adj. *out of breath, tired; lifeless* «ex-cipiô, -ere, -cêpî, -ceptus» [[«ex», *out*, + «capiô», *take*]], *welcome, receive* «exemplum, -î», n. *example, model* «ex-eô, -îre, -îî, -itûrus» [[«ex», *out*, + «eô», *go*]], *go out, go forth* (§413) «ex-erceô, -êre, -uî, -itus» [[«ex», *out*, + «arceô», *shut*]], *(shut out), employ, train, exercise, use* «exercitus, -us», m. [[«exercêô», *train*]], *army* «ex-îstimô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«ex», *out*, + «aestimô», *reckon*]], *estimate; think, judge* (§420.c). Cf. «arbitror, putô» «ex-orior, -îrî, -ortus sum», dep. verb [[«ex», *forth*, + «orior», *rise*]], *come forth, rise* «expeditus, -a, -um», adj. *without baggage* «ex-pellô, -ere, -pulî, -pulsus» [[«ex», *out*, + «pellô», *drive*]], *drive out* «ex-piô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«ex», *intensive*, + «piô», *atone for*]], *make amends for, atone for* «explôrâtor, -ôris», m. [[«explôrô», *investigate*]], *spy, scout* «explôrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *examine, explore* «ex-pugnô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«ex», *out*, + «pugnô», *fight*]], *take by storm, capture* «exsilium, exsi lî», n. [[«exsul», *exile*]], *banishment, exile* «ex-spectô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«ex», *out*, + «spectô», *look*]], *expect, wait* «ex-struô, -ere, -strûxî, -strûctus» [[«ex», *out*, + «struô», *build*]], *build up, erect* «exterus, -a, -um», adj., compared «exterior, extrêmus» or «extimus», *outside, outer* (§312) «extrâ», prep, with acc. *beyond, outside of* «ex-trahô, -ere, -trâxî, -trâctus» [[«ex», *out*, + «trahô», *drag*]], *drag out, pull forth* «extrêmus, -a, -um», adj., superl. of «exterus», *utmost, farthest* (§312)

F

«fâbula, -ae», f. *story, tale, fable* «facile», adv. [[«facilis», *easy*]], compared «facilius, facillimê», *easily* (§322) «facilis, -e», adj. [[cf. «faciô», *make*]], *easy, without difficulty* (§307) «faciô, -ere, fêcî, factus» (imv. «fac»), *_make, do; cause, bring about_*. «impetum facere in», *make an attack upon*. «proelium facere», *fight a battle*. «iter facere», *make a march or journey*. «aliquem certiorem facere», *inform some one*. «facere verba prô», *speak in behalf of*. Passive «fiô, fierî, factus sum», *be done, happen*. «certior fierî», *be informed* «fallô, -ere, fefellî, falsus», *trip, betray, deceive* «fâma, -ae», f. *report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation* «famês, -is» (abl. «famê»), f. *hunger* «familia, -ae», f. *servants, slaves; household, family* «fascês, -ium» (plur. of «fascis»), f. *fasces* (p. 225) «fastûgium, fastû'gî», n. *top; slope, descent* «fâtum, -î», n. *fate, destiny* «faucês, -ium», f. plur. *jaws, throat* «faveô, -êre, fâvî, fautûrus», *be favorable to, favor*, with dat. (§501.14) «fêlîx, -îcis», adj. *happy, lucky* «fêmina, -ae», f. *woman*. Cf. «mulier» «fera, -ae», f. [[«ferus», *wild*]], *wild beast* «ferâx, -âcis», adj. *fertile* «ferê», adv. *about, nearly, almost* «ferô, ferre, tulî, lâtus», *bear*. «graviter» or «molestê ferre», *be annoyed* (§498) «ferreus, -a, -um», adj. [[«ferrum», *iron*]], *made of iron* «fidêlis, -e», adj. [[«fidês», *trust*]], *faithful, true* «fidês, fidei» or «fidê», *trust, faith; promise, word; protection*. «in fidem venîre», *come under the protection*. «in fidê manêre», *remain loyal* «fîlia, -ae» (dat. and abl. plur. «fîliâbus»), f. *daughter* (§461.a) «fîlius, fîlî» (voc. sing. «fîlî»), m. *son* «fînis, -is», m. *boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country* (§243.1) «fînitimus, -a, -um», adj. [[«fînis», *boundary*]], *_adjoining, neighboring_*. Plur. «fînitimî, -ôrum», m. *neighbors* «fiô, fierî, factus sum», used as passive of «faciô». See «faciô» (§500) «flamma, -ae», f. *fire, flame* «flôs, flôris», m. *flower* «fluctus, -ûs», m. [[of. «fluô», *flow*]], *flood, wave, billow* «flûmen, -inis», n. [[cf. «fluô», *flow*]], *river* (§464.2.b) «fluô, -ere, flûxî, fluxus», *flow* «fluvius, fluvî», m. [[cf. «fluô», *flow*]], *river* «fodiô, -ere, fôdî, fossus», *dig* «fôns, fontis», m. *fountain* (§247.2.a) «fôrma, -ae», f. *form, shape, appearance; beauty* «Formiae, -ârum», f. *Formiae*, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map «forte», adv. [[abl. of «fors», *chance*]], *by chance* «fortis, -e», adj. *strong; fearless, brave* «fortiter», adv. [[«fortis», *strong*]], compared «fortius, fortissimê», *strongly; bravely* «fortûna, -ae», f. [[«fors», *chance*]], *chance, fate, fortune* «forum, -î», n. *market place*, esp. the «Forum Rômânium», where the life of Rome centered «Forum Appî», *Forum of Appius*, a town in Latium on the Appian Way «fossa, -ae», f. [[cf. «fodiô», *dig*]], *ditch* «fragor, -ôris», m. [[cf. «frangô», *break*]], *crash, noise* «frangô, -ere, frêgî, frâctus», *break* «frâter, -tris», m. *brother* «fremitus, -ûs», m. *loud noise* «frequentô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *attend* «frêtus, -a, -um», adj. *supported, trusting*. Usually with abl. of means «frôns, frontis», f. *front*, «â fronte», *in front* «frûctus, -ûs», m. *fruit* «frûmentârius, -a, -um», adj. *pertaining to grain*. «rês frûmentâria», *grain supplies* «frûmentum, -î», n. *grain* «frûstrâ», adv. *in vain, vainly* «fuga, -ae», f. [[cf. «fugiô», *flee*]], *flight*. «in fugam dare», *put to flight* «fugiô, -ere, fûgî, fugitûrus», *flee, run; avoid, shun* «fûmô, -are, -----, -----», *smoke* «fûnis, -is», m. *rope* «furor, -ôris», m. [[«furô», *rage*]], *madness*. «in furôrem incîdere», *go mad*

G

«Gâius, Gâî», m. *Gaius*, a Roman name, abbreviated «C.», English form *Caius* «Galba, -ae», m. *Galba*, a Roman name «galea, -ae», f. *helmet* «Gallia, -ae», f. *Gaul*, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France «Gallicus, -a, -um», adj. *Gallic* «gallîna, -ae», f. *hen, chicken* «Gallus, -î», m. *a Gaul* «gaudium, gaudî», n. *joy* «Genâva, -ae», f. *Geneva*, a city in Switzerland «gêns, gentis», f. [[cf. «gignô», *beget*]], *_race, family; people, nation, tribe_* «genus, -eris», n. *kind, variety* «Germânia, -ae», f. *Germany* «Germânus, -î», m. *a German* «gerô, -ere, gessî, gestus», *carry, wear; wage*. «bellum gerere», *wage war*. «rês gestae», *exploits*. «bene gerere», *carry on successfully* «gladiâtôrius, -a, -um», adj. *gladiatorial* «gladius, gladî», m. *sword* «glôria, -ae», f. *glory, fame* «Gracchus, -î», m. *Gracchus*, name of a famous Roman family «gracilis, -e», adj. *slender* (§307) «Graeca, -ôrum», n. plur. *Greek writings, Greek literature* «Graecê», adv. *in Greek* «Graecia, -ae», f. *Greece* «grammaticus, -î», m. *grammarian* «grâtia, -ae», f. *thanks, gratitude* «grâtus, -a, -um», adj. *acceptable, pleasing*. Often with dat. (§501.16) «gravis, -ê», adj. *_heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty_* «graviter», adv. [[«gravis», *heavy*]], compared «gravius, gravissimê», *heavily; greatly, seriously*. «graviter ferre», *bear ill, take to heart* «gubernâtor, -ôris», m. [[«gubernô», *pilot*]], *pilot*

H

«habêna, -ae», f. *halter, rein*. «habeô, -êre, -uî, -itus», *have, hold; regard, consider, deem* «habitô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[cf. «habeô», *have*]], *_dwell, abide, inhabit_*. Cf. «incolô, vîvô» «hâc-tenus», adv. *thus far* «Helvétîi, -ôrum», m. *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe «Herculês, -is», m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength «Hesperidês, -um», f. *the Hesperides*, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples «hic, haec, hoc», demonstrative adj. and pron. *this* (of mine); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§481) «hîc», adv. *here* «hiems, -emis», f. *winter* «hînc», adv. [[«hîc», *here*]], *from here, hence* «Hippolytê, -ês», f. *Hippolyte*, queen of the Amazons «ho-diê», adv. [[modified form of «hôc diê», *on this day*]], *to-day* «homô, -inis», m. and f. (*human being*), *man, person* «honestus, -a, -um», adv. [[«honor», *honor*]], *respected, honorable* «honor, -ôris», m. *honor* «hôra, -ae», f. *hour* «Horâtius, Horâ'tî», m. *Horatius*, a Roman name «horribilis, -e», adj. *terrible, horrible* «hortor, -âri, -âtus sum», dep. verb. *urge, incite, exhort, encourage* (§493) «hortus, -î», m. *garden* «hospitium, hospî'tî», n. [[«hospes», *host*]], *hospitality* «hostis, -is», m. and f. *enemy, foe* (§465.a) «humilis, -e», adj. *low, humble* (§307) «Hydra, -ae», f. *the Hydra*, a mythical water snake slain by Hercules

I

«iaciô, -ere, iêcî, iactus», *throw, hurl* «iam», adv. *now, already*. «nec iam», *and no longer* «Iâniculum, -î», n. *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome «iânuâ, -ae», f. *door* «ibi», adv. *there, in that place* «Îcarus, -î», m. *Ic'arus*, the son of Dædalus «ictus, -ûs», m. [[cf. «îcô», *strike*]], *blow* «îdem, e'adem, idem», demonstrative pron. [[«is» + «dem»]], *same* (§481) «idôneus, -a, -um», adj. *suitable, fit* «igitur», conj., seldom the first word, *therefore, then*. Cf. «itaque» «ignis, -is», m. *fire* (§§243.1; 247. 2.a; 465, 1) «ignôtus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «(g)notus», *known*]], *unknown, strange* «ille, illa, illud», demonstrative adj. and pron. *that* (yonder); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§481) «illîc», adv. [[cf. «ille»]], *yonder, there* «im-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus» [[«in», *against*, + «mittô», *send*]], *send against; let in* «immolô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«in», *upon*, + «mola», *meal*]], *sprinkle with sacrificial meal; offer, sacrifice* «im-mortâlis, -e», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «mortalis», *mortal*]], *immortal* «im-mortâlitâs, -âtis», f. [[«immortâlis», *immortal*]], *immortality* «im-parâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «parâtus», *prepared*]], *unprepared* «impedîmentum», -î, n. [[«impediô», *hinder*]], *hindrance*; in plur. *baggage* «impedîtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «impediô», *hinder*]], *_hindered, burdened_* «im-pellô, -ere, -pulî, -pulsus» [[«in», *against*, + «pellô», *strike*]], *strike against; impel, drive, propel* «imperâtor, -ôris», m. [[«imperô», *command*]], *general* «imperium, impe'ri», n. [[«imperô», *command*]], *_command, order; realm, empire; power, authority_* «imperô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *command, order*. Usually with dat. and an object clause of purpose (§501.41). With acc. object, *levy, impose* «impetus, -ûs», m. *attack*, «impetum facere in», *make an attack upon* «im-pônô, -ere, -posui, -positus» [[«in», *upon*, + «pônô», *place*]], *place upon; impose, assign* «in», prep. with acc. *into, to, against, at, upon, towards*; with abl. *in, on*. «in reliquum tempus», *for the future* «in-», inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives often with a negative force, like English *un-, in-* «in-cautus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «cautus», *careful*]], *_off one's guard_* «incendium, incendi», n. *flame, fire*. Cf. «ignis, flamma» «in-cendô, -ere, -dî, -cênsus», *set fire to, burn* «in-cidô, -ere, -cidî, ----», [[«in», *in, on*, + «cadô», *fall*]], *fall in, fall on; happen*. «in furôrem incidere», *go mad* «in-cipiô, -ere, -cêpi, -ceptus» [[«in», *on*, + «capiô», *take*]], *begin* «in-cognitus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «cognitus», *known*]], *unknown* «in-colô, -ere, -uî, ----», [[«in», *in*, + «colô», *dwell*]], *_inhabit; live_* «incolumis, -e», adj. *sound, safe, uninjured, imharmed* «in-crêdibilis, -e», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «crêdibilis», *_to be believed_*]], *incredible_* «inde», *from that place, thence* «induô, -ere, -uî, -ûtus», *put on* «indûtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «induô», *put on*]], *clothed* «in-eô, -îre, -îi, -itus» [[«in», *into*, + «eô», *go*]], *_go into; enter upon, begin_*, with acc. (§413) «în-fâns, -fantis», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + *«fâns», *speaking*]], *_not speaking. As a noun, m. and f. infant_* «în-fêlîx, -îcis», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «fêlîx», *happy*]], *_unhappy, unlucky_* «în-fênsus, -a, -um», adj. *hostile* «în'-ferô, înfê're, in'tulî, inlâ'tus» [[«in», *against*, + «ferô», *bear*]], *bring against or upon, inflict*, with acc. and dat. (§501.15). «bellum înfêrre», with dat., *make war upon* «înferus, -a, -um», adj. *low, below* (§312). «în-fînîtus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «fînîtus», *bounded*]], *boundless, endless* «în-fîrmus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «fîrmus», *strong*]], *weak, infirm* «ingenium, inge'ni», n. *talent, ability* «ingêns, -entis», adj. *vast, huge, enormous, large*. Cf. «magnus» «in-gredior, -gredî, -gressus sum» [[«in», *in*, + «gradior», *walk*]], *advance, enter* «inimîcus, -a, -um», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «amîcus», *friendly*]], *hostile*. As a noun, «inimîcus, -î», m. *enemy, foe*. Cf. «hostis» «initium, ini'tî», *entrance, beginning* «initus, -a, -um», part. of «ineô». «initâ

aestâte», *at the beginning of summer* «iniûria, -ae», f. [[«in», *against*, + «iûs», *law*]], *injustice, wrong, injury*. «alicui iniûriâs îfferre», *inflict wrongs upon some one* «inopia, -ae», f. [[«inops», *needy*]], *want, need, lack* «in-opînâns, -antis», adj. [[«in-», *not*, + «opînâns», *thinking*]], *not expecting, taken by surprise* «inquit», *said he, said she*. Regularly inserted in a direct quotation «in-rigô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *irrigate, water* «in-rumpô, -ere, -rûpî, -ruptus» [[«in», *into*, + «rumpô», *break*]], *burst in, break in* «in-ruô, -ere, -ruî, ----» [[«in», *in*, + «ruô», *rush*]], *rush in* «în-sequor, -sequî, -secûtus sum», dep. verb [[«in», *on*, + «sequor», *follow*]], *follow on, pursue* «în-signe, -is», n. *badge, decoration* (§465.b) «însignis, -e», adj. *remarkable, noted* «înstâns, -antis», adj. [[part. of «însto», *be at hand*]], *present, immediate* «în-stô, -âre, -stîtî, -statûrus» [[«in», *upon*, + «stô», *stand*]], *stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on* «înstrûmentum, -î», n. *instrument* «în-struô, -ere, -strûxî, -strûctus» [[«in», *on*, + «struô», *build*]], *draw up* «însula, -ae», f. *island* «integer, -gra, -grum», *untouched, whole; fresh, new* «intellegô, -ere, -lêxî, -lêctus» [[«inter», *between*, + «legô», *choose*]], *perceive, understand* (§420.d) «intentô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *aim; threaten* «inter», prep. with acc. *between, among; during, while* (§340) «interfectus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «inter-ficiô», *kill*]], *slain, dead* «inter-ficiô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus» [[«inter», *between*, + «faciô», *make*]], *put out of the way, kill*. Cf. «necô, occîdô, trucîdô» «interim», adv. *meanwhile* «interior, -ius», adj. *interior, inner* (§315) «inter-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus», *leave off, suspend* «interpres, -etis», m. and f. *interpreter* «inter-rogô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *question* «inter-sum, -esse, -fuî, -futûrus» [[«inter», *between*, + «sum», *be*]], *be present, take part in*, with dat. (§501.15) «inter-vâllum, -î», n. *interval, distance* «intrâ», adv. and prep. with acc. *within, in* «intrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *go into, enter* «in-veniô, -îre, -vênî, -ventus» [[«in», *upon*, + «veniô», *come*]], *find* «invîsus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «invideô», *envy*]], *hated, detested* «Iolâus, -î», m. *I-o-lâ'us*, a friend of Hercules «ipse, -a, -um», intensive pron. *that very, this very; self, himself, herself, itself*, (§481) «îra, -ae», f. *wrath, anger* «îrâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «îrâscor», *be angry*]], *angered, enraged* «is, ea, id», demonstrative adj. and pron. *this, that; he, she, it* (§481) «iste, -a, -ud», demonstrative adj. and pron. *that (of yours), he, she, it* (§481) «ita», adv. *so, thus*. Cf. «sîc» and «tam» «Italia, -ae», f. *Italy* «ita-que», conj. *and so, therefore* «item», adv. *also* «iter, itineris», n. *journey, march, route; way, passage* (§§247.1.a; 468). «iter dare», *give a right of way, allow to pass*. «iter facere», *march* (see p. 159) «iubeô, -êre, iussî, iussus», *order, command*. Usually with the infin. and subj. acc. (§213) «iûdex, -icis», m. and f. *judge* (§464.1) «iûdicô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«iûdex», *judge*]], *judge, decide* (§420.c) «Iûlia, -ae», *Julia*, a Roman name «Iûlius, Iûlî», m. *Julius*, a Roman name «iungô, -êre, iûnxî, iûnctus», *join; yoke, harness* «Iûnô, -ônîs», f. *Juno*, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter «Iuppiter, Iovis», m. *Jupiter*, the supreme god «iûrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *swear, take an oath* «iussus, -a, -um», part. of «iubeô», *ordered*

L

«L.», abbreviation for «Lûcius» «labefactus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «labefaciô», *cause to shake*]], *shaken, weakened, ready to fall* «Labiênus, -î», m. *La-bi-e' nus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenants «labor, -ôris», m. *labor, toil* «labôrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«labor», *labor*]], *labor; suffer, be hard pressed* «lacrima, -ae», f. *tear* «lacus, -ûs» (dat. and abl. plur. «lacubus»), m. *lake* «laetê», adv. [[«laetus», *glad*]], compared «laetius, laetissimê», *gladly* «laetitia, -ae», f. [[«laetus», *glad*]], *joy* «laetus, -a, -um», adj. *glad, joyful* «lapis, -idis», m. *stone* (§§247.2.a; 464.1) «Lâr, Laris», m.; plur. «Larês, -um» (rarely «-ium»), *the Lares or household, gods* «lâtê», »adv. [[«lâtus», *wide*]], compared «lâtius, lâtissimê», *widely* «Latinê», adv. *in Latin*. «Latîné loquî», *to speak Latin* «lâtitudô, -inis», f. [[«lâtus», *wide*]], *width* «Lâtôna, -ae», f. *Latona*, mother of Apollo and Diana «latus, -a, -um», adj. *wide* «latus, -eris», n. *side, flank*. «ab utrôque latere», *on each side* «laudô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«laus», *praise*]], *praise* «laurea, -ae», f. *laurel* «laureâtus, -a, -um», adj. *crowned with laurel* «laus, laudis», f. *praise* «lectulus, -î», m. *couch, bed* «lêgâtus, -î», m. *ambassador; lieutenant* «legiô, -ônîs», f. [[cf. «legô», *gather*]], (*body of soldiers*), *legion*, about 3600 men (§464.2.a) «legiônârius, -a, -um», adj. *legionary*. Plur. «legiônâriî, -ôrum», m. *the soldiers of the legion* «legô, -ere, lêgî, lêctus», *read* «lênis, -e», adj. *gentle, smooth, mild* «lêniter», adv. [[«lênis», *gentle*]], compared «lênius, lênissimê», *gently* «Lentulus, -i», m. *Lentulus*, a Roman family name «leô, -ônîs», m. *lion* «Lernaëus, -a, -um», adj. *Lernaean*, of Lerna, in southern Greece «Lesbia, -ae», f. *Lesbia*, a girl's name «levis, -e», adj. *light* «lêx, lêgis», f. *measure, law* «libenter», adv. [[«libêns», *willing*]], compared «libentius, libentissimê», *willingly, gladly* «líber, -era, -erum», adj. *free* (§469.b) «líberî, -ôrum», m. [[«líber», *free*]], *children* «líberô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«líber», *free*]], *set*

free, release, liberate_ «lîbertâs, -âtis», f. [[«lîber», *free*]], *freedom, liberty* «lîctor, -ôris», m. *lictor* (p. 225) «lîmus, -î», m. *mud* «littera, -ae», f. *a letter* of the alphabet; in plur. *_a letter, epistle_* «lîtus, -oris», n. *seashore, beach* «locus, -î», m. (plur. «locî» and «loca», m. and n.), *place, spot* «longê», adv. [[«longus», *long*]], comp. «longius, longissimê», *_a long way off; by far_* «longinquus, -a, -um», adj. [[«longus», *long*]], *distant, remote* «longitûdô, -inis», f. [[«longus», *long*]], *length* «longus, -a, -um», adj. *long* «loquor, loqui, locûtus sum», dep. verb, *talk, speak* «lôrîca, -ae», f. [[«lôrûm», *thong*]], *coat of mail, corselet* «lûdô, -ere, lûsî, lûsus», *play* «lûdus, -î», m. *play; school, the elementary grades*. Cf. «schola» «lûna, -ae», f. *moon* «lûx, lûcis», f. (no gen. plur.), *light*. «prîma lûx», *daybreak* «Ly:dia, -ae», f. *Lydia, a girl's name*

M

«M.», abbreviation for «Mârcus» «magicus, -a, -um», adj. *magic* «magis», adv. in comp. degree [[«magnus», *great*]], *_more, in a higher degree_* (§323) «magister, -trî», m. *master, commander; teacher* «magistrâtus, -ûs», m. [[«magister», *master*]], *_magistracy; magistrate_* «magnitûdô, -inis», f. [[«magnus», *great*]], *greatness, size* «magnopere», adv. [[abl. of «magnum opus»]], compared «magis, maximê», *greatly, exceedingly* (§323) «magnus, -a, -um», adj., compared «maior, maximus», *_great, large; strong, loud_* (§311) «maior, maius, -ôris», adj., comp. of «magnus», *greater, larger* (§311) «maiôrês, -um», m. plur. of «maior», *ancestors* «mâlô, mâlle, mâluî, ----» [[«magis», *more, + «volô», wish*]], *_wish more, prefer_* (§497) «malus, -a, -um», adj., compared «peior, pessimus», *bad, evil* (§311) «mandô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«manus», *hand, + «dô», put*]], *_ (put in hand), intrust; order, command_* «maneô, -êre, mânsî, mânsûrus», *stay, remain, abide* «Mânlius, Mânlî», m. *Manlius, a Roman name* «mânsuêtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «mânsuêscô», *tame*]], *tamed* «manus, -ûs», f. *hand; force, band* «Mârcus, -î», m. *Marcus, Mark, a Roman first name* «mare, -is», n. (no gen. plur.), *sea*. «mare tenêre», *be out to sea* «margô, -inis», m. *edge, border* «marîtus, -î», m. *husband* «Marius, Marî», m. *Marius, a Roman name, esp. C. Marius, the general* «Mârtius, -a, -um», adj. *of Mars, esp. the Campus Martius* «mâter, -tris», f. *mother* «mâtrimônium, mâtrimô ´nî», n. *marriage*. «in mâtrimônium dúcere», *marry* «mâtûrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *hasten*. Cf. «contendô», «properô» «mâtûrus, -a, -um», adj. *ripe, mature* «maximê», adv. in superl. degree [[«maximus», *greatest*]], compared «magnopere, magis, maximê», *especially, very much* (§323) «maximus, -a, -um», adj., superl. of «magnus», *greatest, extreme* (§311) «medius, -a, -um», adj. *middle part; middle, intervening* «melior, -ius, -ôris», adj., comp. of «bonus», *better* (§311) «melius», adv. in comp. degree, compared «bene, melius, optimê», *better* (§323) «memoria, -ae», f. [[«memor», *mindful*]], *memory*. «memoriâ tenêre», *remember* «mêns, mentis», f. *mind*. Cf. «animus» «mênsis, -is», m. *month* (§247.2. a) «mercâtor, -ôris», m. [[«mercor», *trade*]], *trader, merchant* «merîdiânus, -a, -um», adj. [[«merîdiês», *noon*]], *of midday* «merîdiês, ----» (acc. «-em», abl. «-ê»), m. [[«medius», *mid, + «diês», day*]], *noon* «metus, -ûs», m. *fear, dread* «meus, -a, -um», possessive adj. and pron. *my, mine* (§98) «mîles, -itis», m. *soldier* (§464.1) «mîlîtâris, -e», adj. [[«mîles», *soldier*]], *military*. «rês mîlîtâris», *science of war* «mîlîtô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«mîles», *soldier*]], *serve as a soldier* «mîlle», plur. «mîlia, -ium», numeral adj. and subst. *thousand* (§479) «minimê», adv. in superl. degree, compared «parum, minus, minimê», *least, very little; by no means* (§323) «minimus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree, compared «parvus, minor, minimus», *least, smallest* (§311) «minor, minus, -ôris», adj. in comp. degree, compared «parvus, minor, minimus», *smaller, less* (§311) «Mînôs, -ôis», m. *Minos, a king of Crete* «minus», adv. in comp. degree, compared «parum, minus, minimê», *less* (§323) «Minyae, -ârum», m. *the Minyae, a people of Greece* «mîrâbilis, -e», adj. [[«mîror», *wonder at*]], *wonderful, marvelous* «mîror, -ârî, -âtus sum», dep. verb [[«mîrus», *wonderful*]], *_wonder, marvel, admire_* «mîrus, -a, -um», adj. *wonderful* «Mîsênum, -î», *Mise ´num, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania*. See map «miser, -era, -erum», adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable* «missus, -a, -um», part. of «mittô», *sent* «mittô, -ere, mîsî, missus», *send* «modicus, -a, -um» [[«modus», *measure*]], *modest, ordinary* «modo», adv. [[abl. of «modus», *measure, with shortened «o»*]], *_only, merely, just now_*. «modo ... modo», *now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes* «modus, -î», m. *measure; manner, way; kind* «moenia, -ium», n. plur. [[cf. «mûniô», *fortify*]], *walls, ramparts* «molestê», adv. [[«molestus», *troublesome*]], compared «molestius, molestissimê», *annoyingly*. «molestê ferre», *to be annoyed* «molestus, -a, -um», *troublesome, annoying, unpleasant* (§501.16) «moneô, -êre, -uî, -itus», *remind, advise, warn* (§489) «mônus, montis», m. *mountain* (§247.2. a) «mônstrum, -î», n. *monster* «mora, -ae», f. *delay* «moror, -ârî, -âtus sum», dep. verb [[«mora», *delay*]], *_delay, linger; impede_* «mors, mortis», f. [[cf. «moriôr», *die*]], *death* «môs,

môris», m. *custom, habit* «môtus, -ûs», m. [[cf. «moveô», *move*]], *motion, movement*. «terrae môtus», *earthquake* «moveô, -êre, môvî, môtus», *move* «mox», adv. *soon, presently* «mulier, -eris», f. *woman* «multitûdô, -inis», f. [[«multus», *much*]], *multitude* «multum (multô)», adv. [[«multus», *much*]], compared «plûs, plûrimum», *much* (§477) «multus, -a, -um», adj., compared «plûs, plûrimus», *much*; plur. *many* (§311) «mûniô, -îre, -îvî or -îi, -îtus», *fortify, defend* «mûnitiô, -ônis», f. [[«mûniô», *fortify*]], *defense, fortification* «mûrus, -î», m. *wall*. Cf. «moenia» «mûsica, -ae», f. *music*

N

«nam», conj. *for*. Cf. «enim» «nam-que», conj., a strengthened «nam», introducing a reason or explanation, *for, and in fact; seeing that* «nârrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *tell, relate* «nâscor, nâscî, nâtus sum», dep. verb, *be born, spring from* «nâtûra, -ae», f. *nature* «nâtus», part. of «nâscor» «nauta, -ae», m. [[for «nâvita», from «nâvis», *ship*]], *sailor* «nâvâlis, -e», adj. [[«nâvis», *ship*]], *naval* «nâvigium, nâvî'gî», n. *ship, boat* «nâvigô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«nâvis», *ship*, + «agô», *drive*]], *sail, cruise* «nâvis, -is» (abl. -î or -e), f. *ship* (§243.1). «nâvem cõscendere», *embark, go on board*. «nâvem solvere», *set sail*. «nâvis longa», *man-of-war* «nê», conj. and adv. *in order that not, that* (with verbs of fearing), *lest; not*. «nê ... quidem», *not even* «-ne», interrog. adv., enclitic (see §§16, 210). Cf. «nõnne» and «num» «nec» or «neque», conj. [[«nê», *not*, + «que», *and*]], *and not, nor*. «nec ... nec» or «neque ... neque», *neither ... nor* «necessârius, -a, -um», adj. *needful, necessary* «necô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[cf. *nex, death*]], *kill*. Cf. «interficiô, occîdô, trucîdô» «negô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *deny, say not* (§420.a) «negôtium, negô'tî», n. [[«nec», *not*, + «ôtium», *ease*]], *_business, affair, matter_*. «alicui negôtium dare», *to employ some one* «Nemaëus, -a, -um», adj. *Neme'an, of Neme'a*, in southern Greece «nêmo», dat. «nêminî» (gen. «nûllîus», abl. «nûllô», supplied from «nûllus»), m. and f. [[«nê», *not*, + «homô», *man*]], *_not a man, no one, nobody_* «Neptûnus, -î», m. *Neptune, god of the sea, brother of Jupiter* «neque», see «nec» «neuter, -tra, -trum» (gen. «-trîus», dat. «-trî»), adj. *neither* (of two) (§108) «nê-ve», conj. adv. *and not, and that not, and lest* «nihil», n. indecl. [[«nê», *not*, + «hîlum», *a whit*]], *nothing*. «nihil posse», *to have no power* «nihilum, -î», n., see «nihil» «Niobê, -ês», f. *Ni'obe*, the queen of Thebes whose children were destroyed by Apollo and Diana «nisi», conj. [[«nê», *not*, + «sî», *if*]], *if not, unless, except* «nõbilis, -e», adj. *well known; noble* «noceô, -êre, -uî, -itûrus» [[cf. «necô», *kill*]], *hurt, injure*, with dat. (§501.14) «noctû», abl. used as adv. [[cf. «nox», *night*]], *at night, by night* «Nõla, -ae», f. *Nola*, a town in central Campania. See map «nõlô, nõlle, nõluî», ---- [[«ne», *not*, + «volô», *wish*]], *_not to wish, be unwilling_* (§497) «nõmen, -inis», n. [[cf. «nõscô», *know*]], (*means of knowing*), *name* «nõminô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«nõmen», *name*]], *name, call*. Cf. «appellô, vocô» «nõn», adv. [[«nê», *not*, + «ûnum», *one*]], *not*. «nõn solum ... sed etiam», *not only ... but also* «nõn-dum», adv. *not yet* «nõn-ne», interrog. adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, *not?* (§210). Cf. «-ne» and «num» «nõs», pers. pron. *we* (see «ego») (§480) «noster, -tra, -trum», possessive adj. and pron. *our, ours*. Plur. «nostrî, -ôrum», m. *our men* (§98) «novem», indecl. numeral adj. *nine* «novus, -a, -um», adj. *new*. «novae rês», *a revolution* «nox, noctis», f. *night*, «multâ nocte», *late at night* «nûllus, -a, -um» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î») adj. [[«nê», *not*, + «ûllus», *any*]], *not any, none, no* (§108) «num», interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer (§210). Cf. «-ne» and «nõnne». In indir. questions, *whether* «numerus, -î», m. *number* «numquam», adv. [[«nê», *not*, + «umquam», *ever*]], *never* «nunc», adv. *now*. Cf. «iam» «nûntiô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«nûntius», *messenger*]], *_report, announce_* (§420.a) «nûntius, nûntî», m. *messenger* «nûper», adv. *recently, lately, just now* «nympha, -ae», f. *nymph*

O

«ob», prep. with acc. *on account of*. In compounds it often means *_in front of, against_*, or it is intensive. «quam ob rem», *for this reason* (§340) «obses, -idis», m. and f. *hostage* «ob-sideô, -êre, -sêdî, -sessus» [[«ob», *against*, + «sedeô», *sit*]], *besiege* «obtineô, -êre, -uî, -tentus» [[«ob», *against*, + «teneô», *hold*]], *possess, occupy, hold* «occâsiô, -ônis», f. *favorable opportunity, favorable moment* «occâsus, -ûs», m. *going down, setting* «occîdô, -ere, -cîdî, -cîsus» [[«ob», *down*, + «caedô», *strike*]], *strike down; cut down, kill*. Cf. «interficiô, necô» «occupô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«ob», *completely*, + «capiô», *take*]], *seize, take possession of, occupy*. Cf. «rapio» «oc-currô, -ere, -currî, -cursus» [[«ob», *against* + «currô», *run*]], *run towards; meet*, with dat. (§426) «ôceanus, -î», m. *the ocean* «octô», indecl. numeral adj. *eight* «oculus, -î», m. *eye* «officium,

offi'cí», n. *duty* «ôlim», adv. *formerly, once upon a time* «ômen, -inis», n. *sign, token, omen* «ô-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus» [[«ob», *over, past*, + «mittô», *send*]], *let go, omit*. «consilium omittere», *give up a plan* «omnînô», adv. [[«omnis», *all*]], *altogether, wholly, entirely* «omnis, -e», adj. *all, every*. Cf. «tôtus» «onerâria, -ae», f. [[«onus», *load*]], with «nâvis» expressed or understood, *merchant vessel, transport* «onus, -eris», n. *load, burden* «opîniô, -ônîs», f. [[«opînor», *suppose*]], *opinion, supposition, expectation* «oppidânus, -î», m. [[«oppidum», *town*]], *townsman* «oppidum, -î», n. *town, stronghold* «opportûnus, -a, -um», adj. *suitable, opportune, favorable* «op-primô, -ere, -pressî, -pressus» [[«ob», *against*, + «premô», *press*]], (*press against*), *crush; surprise* «oppugnâtiô, -ônîs», f. *storming, assault* «oppugnô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«ob», *against*, + «pugnô» *fight*]], *fight against, assault, storm, assail* «optimê», adv. in superl. degree, compared «bene, melius, optimê», *very well, best of all* (§323) «optimus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree, compared «bonus, melior, optimus», *best, most excellent* (§311) «opus, -eris», n. *work, labor, task* (§464.2.b) «ôrâculum, -î», n. [[«ôrô», *speak*]], *oracle* «ôrâtor, -ôris», m. [[«ôrô», *speak*]], *orator* «orbis, -is», m. *ring, circle*. «orbis terrârûm», *the earth, world* «orbita, -ae», f. [[«orbis», *wheel*]], *rut* «Orcus, -î», m. *Orcus, the lower world* «ôrdô, -inis», m. *row, order, rank* (§247.2.a) «orîgo, -inis», f. [[«orior», *rise*]], *source, origin* «orior, -îrî, ortus sum», dep. verb, *arise, rise, begin; spring, be born* «ôrnâmentum, -î», n. [[«ôrnô», *fit out*]], *ornament, jewel* «ôrnâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «ôrnô», *fit out*]] *fitted out; adorned* «ôrnô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *fit out, adorn*

P

«P.», abbreviation for «Pûblius» «paene», adv. *nearly, almost* «palûdâmentum, -î», n. *military cloak* «palûs, -ûdis», f. *swamp, marsh* «pânîs, -is», m. *bread* «pâr, paris», adj. *equal* (§471. III) «parâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «parô», *prepare*]], *prepared, ready* «parcô, -ere, peper'cí» («parsî»), «parsûrus», *spare, with dat.* (§501.14) «pâreô, -êre, -uî, ----», *obey, with dat.* (§501.14) «parô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *prepare for, prepare; provide, procure* «pars, partis», f. *part, share; side, direction* «parum», adv., compared «minus, minimê», *too little, not enough* (§323) «parvus, -a, -um», adj., compared «minor, minimus», *small, little* (§311) «passus, -ûs», m. *step, pace*. «mîlle passuum», *thousand paces, mile* (§331.b) «pateô, -êre, patuî, ----», *lie open, be open; stretch, extend* «pater, -tris», m. *father* (§464.2.a) «patior, -î, passus sum», dep. verb, *bear, suffer, allow, permit* «patria, -ae», f. [[cf. «pater», *father*]], *fatherland, (one's) country* «paucus, -a, -um», adj. (generally plur.), *few, only a few* «paulisper», adv. *for a little while* «paulô», adv. *by a little, little* «paulum» adv. *a little, somewhat* «pâx, pâcis», f. (no gen. plur.), *peace* «pecûnia, -ae», f. [[«pecus», *cattle*]], *money* «pedes, -itis», m. [[«pês», *foot*]], *foot soldier* «pedester, -tris, -tre», adj. [[«pês», *foot*]], *on foot; by land* «peior, peius, -ôris», adj. in comp. degree, compared «malus, peior, pessimus», *worse* (§311) «pellis, -is», f. *skin, hide* «penna, -ae», f. *feather* «per», prep. with acc. *through, by means of, on account of*. In composition it often has the force of *thoroughly, completely, very* (§340) «percussus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «percutiô», *strike through*]], *pierced* «per-dûcô, -ere, -dûxî, -ductus» [[«per», *through*, + «dûcô», *lead*]], *lead through*. «fossam perdûcere», *to construct a ditch* «per-exiguus, -a, -um», adj. [[«per», *very*, + «exiguus», *small*]], *very small, very short* «perfidus, -a, -um», adj. *faithless, treacherous, false* «per-fringô, -ere, -frêgî, -frâctus» [[«per», *through*, «frangô», *break*]], *shatter* «pergô, -ere, perrêxî, perrêctus» [[«per», *through*, + «regô», *conduct*]], *go on, proceed, hasten* «perîculum, -î», n. *trial, test; danger* «peristy:lum, -î», n. *peristyle, an open court with columns around it* «perîtus, -a, -um», adj. *skillful* «perpetuus, -a, -um», adj. *perpetual* «Perseus, -eî», *Perseus, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter and Danaë* «persôna, -ae», f. *part, character, person* «per-suâdeô, -êre, -suâsî, -suâsus» [[«per», *thoroughly*, + «suâdeô», *persuade*]], *persuade, advise, with dat.* (§501.14), often with an object clause of purpose (§501.41) «per-terreô, -êre, -uî, -itus» [[«per», *thoroughly*, + «terreô», *frighten*]], *thoroughly terrify, alarm* «per-veniô, -îre, -vênî, -ventus» [[«per», *through*, + «veniô», *come*]], *arrive, reach, come to* «pês, pedis», m. *foot*. «pedem referre», *retreat* (§247.2.a) «pessimus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree, compared «malus, peior, pessimus», *worst* (§311) «petô, -ere, -îvî or -îî, -îtus», *strive for, seek, beg, ask; make for, travel to*. Cf. «postulô, quaerô, rogô» «Pharsâlus, -î», f. *Pharsa'lus* or *Pharsa'lia*, a town in Thessaly, near which Cassar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C. «philosophia, -ae», f. *philosophy* «philosophus, -î», m. *philosopher* «pictus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «pingô», *paint*]], *colored, variegated* «pîlum, -î», n. *spear, javelin* (§462.b) «piscîna, -ae», f. [[«piscis», *fish*]], *fish pond* «piscis, -is», m. *fish* «pîstor, -ôris», m. *baker* «placeô, -êre, -uî, -itus», *please, be pleasing, with dat.* (§501.14) «plânitiês, -êî», f.

[[«plânus», *level*]], *plain* «plânus, -a, -um», adj. *level, flat* «plênus, -a, -um», *full* «plûrimum», adv. in superl. degree, compared «multum, plûs, plûrimum», *very much*. «plûrimum valêre», *be most influential* (§322) «plûrimus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree, compared «multus, plûs, plûrimus», *most, very many* (§311) «plûs, plûris», adj. in comp. degree, compared «multus, plûs, plûrimus»; sing. n. as substantive, *more*; plur. *more, several* (§311) «pluteus, -î», m. *shield, parapet* «poena, -ae», f. *punishment, penalty* «poêta, -ae», m. *poet* «pompa, -ae», f. *procession* «Pompêiî, -ôrûm», m. *Pompeii*, a city of Campania. See map «Pompêius, Pompê î», m. *Pompey*, a Roman name «pômum, -î», n. *apple* «pônô, -ere, posuî, positus», *put, place*. «castra pônere», *pitch camp* «pônus, pontis», m. *bridge* (§247.2.a) «popîna, -ae», f. *restaurant* «populus, -î», m. *people* «Porsena, -ae», m. *Porsena*, king of Etruria, a district of Italy. See map «porta, -ae», f. *gate, door* «portô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *bear, carry* «portus, -ûs», m. [[cf. «porta», *gate*]], *harbor* «possidê, -êre, -sêdî, -sessus», *have, own, possess* «possum, posse, potuî, ----», irreg. verb [[«potis», *able*, + «sum», *I am*]], *be able, can* (§495). «nihil posse», *have no power* «post», prep. with acc. *after, behind* (§340) «posteâ», adv. [[«post», *after*, + «eâ», *this*]], *afterwards* («posterus»), «-a, -um», adj., compared «posterior, postrêmus» or «postumus», *following, next* (§312) «postquam», conj. *after, as soon as* «postrêmô», adv. [[abl. of «postrêmus», *last*]], *at last, finally*. Cf. «dênum, dênique» (§322) «postrîdiê», adv. [[«posterô», *next*, + «diê», *day*]], *on the next day* «postulô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *ask, demand, require*. Cf. «petô, quaerô, rogô» «potentia, -ae», f. [[«potêns», *able*]], *might, power, force* «prae-beô, -êre, -uî, -itus» [[«prae», *forth*, + «habeô», *hold*]], *offer, give* «praeda, -ae», f. *booty, spoil, plunder* «prae-dîcô, -ere, -dîxî, -dictus» [[«prae», *before*, + «dîcô», *tell*]], *foretell, predict* «prae-ficiô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus» [[«prae», *before*, + «faciô», *make*]], *place in command*, with acc. and dat. (§501.15) «prae-mittô, -ere, -mîsî, -missus» [[«prae», *forward*, + «mittô», *send*]], *send forward* «praemium, praemî», n. *reward, prize* «praeruptus, -a, -um» [[part. of «prae-rumpô», *break off*]], *broken off, steep* «praesêns, -entis», adj. *present, immediate* «praesertim», adv. *especially, chiefly* «praesidium, praesi'di», n. *guard, garrison, protection* «prae-stô, -âre, -stitî, -stîtus» [[«prae», *before*, + «sto», *stand*]], (*stand before*), *excel, surpass*, with dat. (§501.15); *show, exhibit* «prae-sum, -esse, -fuî, -futûrus» [[«prae», *before*, + «sum», *be*]], *be over, be in command of*, with dat. (§501.15) «praeter», prep. with acc. *beyond, contrary to* (§340) «praetereâ», adv. [[«praeter», *besides*, + «eâ», *this*]], *in addition, besides, moreover* «praetextus, -a, -um», adj. *bordered, edged* «praetôrîum, praetô'ri», n. *praetorium* «prandium, prandî», n. *luncheon* «premo, -ere, pressî, pressus», *press hard, compress; crowd, drive, harass* («prex, precis»), f. *prayer* «prîmô», adv. [[«prîmus», *first*]], *at first, in the beginning* (§322) «prîmum», adv. [[«prîmus», *first*]], *first*. «quam primum», *as soon as possible* «prîmus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree, compared «prior, prîmus», *first* (§315) «prînceps, -cipis», m. [[«prîmus», *first*, + «capiô», *take*]], (*taking the first place*), *chief, leader* (§464.1) «prior, prius, -ôrîs», adj. in comp. degree, superl., «prîmus», *former* (§315) «prîstinus, -a, -um», adj. *former, previous* «prô», prep. with abl. *before; for, for the sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as* (§209). *In composition*, *forth, forward* «prô-cêdô, -ere, -cussî, -cessûrus» [[«prô», *forward*, + «cêdô», *go*]], *go forward, proceed* «procul», adv. *far, afar off* «prô-currô, -ere, -currî» («-cucurrî»), «-cur-sus» [[«prô», *forward*, + «currô», *run*]], *run forward* «proelium, proeli», n. *battle, combat*. «proelium committere», *join battle*. «proelium facere», *fight a battle* «profectiô, -ônîs», f. *departure* «proficîscor, -î, -fectus sum», dep. verb, *set out, march*. Cf. «êgredior, exeô» «prô-gredior, -î, -gressus sum», dep. verb [[«prô», *forth*, + «gradior», *go*]], *go forth, proceed, advance*. Cf. «pergô, prôcêdô» «prôgressus», see «prôgredior» «prohibeô, -êre, -uî, -itus» [[«prô», *forth, away from*, + «habeô», *hold*]], *keep away from, hinder, prevent* «prô-moveô, -êre, -môvî, -môtus» [[«prô», *forward*, + «moveô», *move*]], *move forward, advance* «prô-nûntiô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«prô», *forth*, + «nûntiô», *announce*]], *proclaim, declare* «prope», adv., compared «propius, proxî-mê», *nearly*. Prep. with acc. *near* «prô-pellô, -ere, -pulî, -pulsus» [[«prô», *forth*, + «pellô», *drive*]], *drive forth; move, impel* «properô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«properus», *quick*]], *go quickly, hasten*. Cf. «contendô, maturô» «propinquus, -a, -um», adj. [[«prope», *near*]], *near, neighboring* «propior, -ius, -ôrîs», adj. in comp. degree, superl., «proximus», *nearer* (§315) «propius», adv. in comp. degree, compared «prope, propius, proximê», *nearer* (§323) «propter», prep. with acc. *on account of, because of* (§340) «prô-scribô, -ere, -scripsî, -scriptus» [[«prô», *forth*, + «scribô», *write*]], *proclaim, publish*. Cf. «prônûntiô» «prô-sequor, -sequî, -secûtus sum», dep. verb [[«prô», *forth*, + «sequor», *follow*]], *escort, attend* «prô-sum, prôdesse, prôfuî, prôfutûrus» [[«prô», *for*, + «sum», *be*]], *be useful, benefit*, with dat. (§§496; 501.15) «prô-tegô, -ere, -têx=i], -têctus» [[«prô», *in front*, + «tegô», *cover*]], *cover in front, protect* «prôvincia, -ae», f. *territory, province* «proximê», adv. in superl. degree, compared «prope, propius, proximê», *nearest, next; last, most recently* (§323) «proximus, -a, -um»,

adj. in superl. degree, compared «propior, proximus», *nearest, next* (§315) «públicus, -a, -um», adj. [[«populus», *people*]], *_of the people, public, «res pública», the commonwealth_* «puella, -ae», f. [[diminutive of «puer», *boy*]], *girl, maiden* «puer, -eri», m. *boy; slave* (§462.c) «pugna, -ae», f. *-fight, battle*. Cf. «proelium» «pugnô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«pugna», *battle*]], *fight*. Cf. «contendô, dîmicô» «pulcher, -chra, -chrum», adj. *beautiful, pretty* (§§469.b; 304) «Pullô, -ônis», m. *Pullo*, a centurion «pulsô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *strike, beat* «puppis, -is» (acc. «-im», abl. «-î»), f. *stern of a ship, deck* «pûrê», adv. [[«pûrus», *pure*]], comp. «pûrius», *purely* «pûrgô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *cleanse, clean* «purpureus, -a, -um», adj. *purple, dark red* «putô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *reckon, think* (§420.c). Cf. «arbitror, exîstimô» «Py:thia, -ae», f. *Pythia*, the inspired priestess of Apollo at Delphi

Q

«quâ dê causâ», *for this reason, wherefore* «quâ rê», *therefore, for this reason* «quaerô, -ere, -sîvî, -sîtus», *seek, ask, inquire*. Cf. «petô, postulô, rogô» «quâlis, -e», interrog. pronom. adj. *of what sort, what kind of*. «talis ... qualis», *such ... as* «quam», adv. *how*; after a comparative, *than*; with a superlative, translated as ... as possible, «quam prîmum», *_as soon as possible_* «quantus, -a, -um», adj. [[«quam», *how*]], *how great, how much*, «tantus ... quantus», *as great as* «quârtus, -a, -um», numeral adj. [[«quattuor», *four*]], *fourth* «quattuor», indecl. numeral adj. *four* «quattuor-decim», indecl. numeral adj. *fourteen* «-que», conj., enclitic, *and* (§16). Cf. «ac, atque, et» «quî, quae, quod», rel. pron. and adj. *who, which, what, that* (§482) «quia», conj. *because*. Cf. «quod» «quîdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam)», indef. pron. and adj. *_a certain one, a certain, a_* (§485). «quidem», adv. *to be sure, certainly, indeed*, «nê ... quidem», *_not even_* «quiês, -êtis», f. *rest, repose* «quiêtus, -a, -um», adj. *quiet, restful* «quîndecim», indecl. numeral adj. *fifteen* «quîngentî, -ae, -a», numeral adj. *five hundred* «quînque», indecl. numeral adj. *five* «quîntus, -a, -um», numeral adj. *fifth* «quis (quî), quae, quid (quod)», interrog. pron. and adj. *_who? what? which?_* (§483). «quis (quî), qua (quae), quid (quod)», indef. pron. and adj., used after «sî, nisi, nê, num», *_any one, anything, some one, something, any, some_* (§484). «quisquam, quicquam» or «quidquam» (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *_any one (at all), anything_* (at all) (§486). «quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)», indef. pron. and adj. *_each, each one, every_* (§484). «quô», interrog. and rel. adv. *whither, where* «quô», conj. *in order to, that*, with comp. degree (§350). «quod», conj. *because, in that*. Cf. «quia» «quoque», conj., following an emphatic word, *also, too*. Cf. «etiam» «quot-annîs», adv. [[«quot», *how many* + «annus», *year*]], *_every year, yearly_* «quotiêns», interrog. and rel. adv. *how often? as often as*

R

«râdîx, -îcis», f. *root; foot* «rapiô, -ere, -uî, -tus», *seize, snatch* «rârô», adv. [[«rârus», *rare*]], *rarely* «rârus, -a, -um», adj. *rare* «re-» or «red-», an inseparable prefix, *again, back, anew, in return* «rebelliô, -ônis», f. *renewal of war, rebellion* «recêns, -entis», adj. *recent* «re-cipiô, -ere, -cêpî, -ceptus» [[«re-», *back*, + «capiô», *take*]], *take back, receive*. «sê recipere», *withdraw, retreat* «re-clînâtus, -a, -um», part. of «reclînô», *leaning back* «re-creâtus, -a, -um», part. of «recreô», *refreshed* «rêctus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «regô», *keep straight*]], *_straight, direct_* «re-cûsô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *refuse* «red-âctus, -a, -um», part. of «redigô», *reduced, subdued* «red-eô, -îre, -îi, -itus» [[«red-», *back*, + «eô», *go*]], *_go back, return_* (§413). Cf. «revertô» «reditus, -ûs», m. [[cf. «redeô», *return*]], *return, going back* «re-dûcô, -ere, -dûxî, -ductus» [[«re-», *back*, + «dûcô», *lead*]], *lead back* «re-ferô, -ferre, rettulî, -lâtus» [[«re-», *back*, + «ferô», *bear*]], *bear back; report*. «pedem referre», *withdraw, retreat* «re-ficiô, -ere, -fêcî, -fectus» [[«re-», *again*, + «faciô», *make*]], *make again, repair*. «sê reficere», *refresh one's self* «rêgîna, -ae», f. [[«rêx», *king*]], *queen* «regiô, -ônis», f. *region, district* «rêgnum, -î», n. *sovereignty; kingdom* «regô, -ere, rêxî, rêctus» [[cf. «rêx», *king*]], *govern, rule* (§490) «re-iciô, -ere, -iêcî, -iectus» [[«re-», *back*, + «iaciô», *hurl*]], *hurl back; throw away* «re-linquô, -ere, -lîquî, -lictus» [[«re-», *behind*, + «linquô», *leave*]], *leave behind, leave, abandon* «reliquus, -a, -um», adj. [[cf. «relinquô», *leave*]], *_left over, remaining. As a noun, plur. the rest_* «remôtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «re-moveô», *remove*]], *_remote, distant_* «re-moveô, -êre, -môvî, -motus» [[«re-», *back*, + «moveô», *move*]], *remove* «rêmus, -î», m. *oar* «re-periô, -îre, repperî, repertus», *find* «re-portô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«re-», *back*, + «portô», *carry*]], *carry back, bring back, win, gain* «rês, rêi», f. *thing, business, matter, deed, event*,

circumstance (§467). «quam ob rem», *for this reason*. «rês adversae», *adversity*. «rês frumentária», *grain supplies*. «rês gestae», *exploits*. «rês militaris», *science of war*. «rês pública», *the commonwealth*. «rês secundae», *prosperity* «re-scindô, -ere, -scidî, -scissus» [[«re-», *back*, + «scindô», *cut*]], *cut off, cut down* «re-sistô, -ere, -stitî», ---- [[«re-», *back*, + «sistô», *_cause to stand*]], *oppose, resist*, with dat. (§501.14) «re-spondeô, -êre, -spondî, -spônsum» [[«re-», *in return*, + «spondeô», *promise*]], *answer, reply* (§420.a) «re-vertô, -ere, -î», ----, or dep. verb «re-vertor, -î, -sus sum» [[«re-», *back*, + «vertô», *turn*]], *turn back, return*. Usually active in the perf. system «re-vinciô, -îre, -vînxî, -vîctus» [[«re-», *back*, + «vinciô», *bind*]], *fasten* «rêx, rêgis», m. [[cf. «regô», *rule*]], *king* «Rhênus, -î», m. *the Rhine*, a river of Germany «rîpa, -ae», f. *bank* «rogô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *ask*. Cf. «petô, postulô, quaerô» «Rôma, -ae», f. *Rome*. See map «Rômânus, -a, -um», adj. [[«Rôma», *Rome*]], *Roman*, follows its noun. As a noun, m. and f. *a Roman* «rosa, -ae», f. *rose* «rôstrum, -î», n. *beak* of a ship. In plur., *the rostra*, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum «rota, -ae», f. *wheel* «Rubicô, -ônus», m. *the Rubicon*, a river in northern Italy. See map «rûmor, -ôris», m. *report, rumor* «rûsus», adv. [[for «reversus», *turned back*]], *again, in turn* «rûs, rûris» (locative abl. «rûrî», no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), n. *the country* (§501.36.1). Cf. «ager, patria, terra»

S

«Sabînus, -a, -um», adj. *Sabine*. As a noun, m. and f. *a Sabine*. The Sabines were an ancient people of central Italy. See map «sacrum, -î», n. [[«sacer», *consecrated*]], *_something consecrated, sacrifice; usually in plur., religious rites* «saepe», adv., compared «saepius, saepissimê», *often, frequently* «saevus, -a, -um», adj. *cruel, savage* «sagitta, -ae», f. *arrow* «saliô, -îre, -uî, saltus», *jump* «salûs, -ûtis», f. *safety; health*. «salûtem dîcere», *send greetings* «salûtô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«salûs», *health*]], *greet, salute* «salvê», imv. of «salveô», *hail, greetings* «sanguis, -inis», m. *blood* (§247.2.a) «sânitâs, -âtis», f. [[«sânus», *sound*]], *health, sanity* «sapiêns, -entis», adj. [[part. of «sapiô», *be wise*]], *_wise, sensible* «satis», adv. and indecl. noun, *enough, sufficient, sufficiently* «saxum, -î», n. *rock, stone* «scelus, -eris», n. *crime, sin* «scêptrum, -î», n. *scepter* «schola, -ae», f. *school*, the higher grades. Cf. «lûdus» «scientia, -ae», f. [[«sciêns», *knowing*]], *skill, knowledge, science* «scindô, -ere, scidî, scissus», *cut, tear* «sciô, -îre, -îvî, -îtus», *know* (§420.b). Cf. «cognôscô» «scrîbô, -ere, scrîpsî, scrîptus», *write* «scûtum, -î», n. *shield, buckler* «sê», see «suî» «sêcum» = «sê» + «cum» «secundus, -a, -um», adj. [[«sequor», *follow*]], *_following, next, second; favorable, successful*. «rês secundae», *prosperity* «sed», conj. *but, on the contrary*. «nôn solum ... sed etiam», *not only ... but also* «sêdecim», indecl. numeral adj. *sixteen* «sedeô, -êre, sêdî, sessus», *sit* «semper», adv. *always, forever* «senâtus, -ûs», m. [[cf. «senex», *old*]], *council of elders, senate* «sentiô, -îre, sênsî, sênsus», *feel, know, perceive* (§420.d). Cf. «intelligô», «videô» «septem», indecl. numeral adj. *seven* «septimus, -a, -um», numeral adj. *seventh* «sequor, -î, secûtus sum», dep. verb, *follow* (§493) «serpêns, -entis», f. [[«serpô», *crawl*]], *serpent, snake* «sertae, -ârum», f. plur. *wreaths, garlands* «servitûs, -ûtis», f. [[«servus», *slave*]], *slavery, servitude* «servô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *save, rescue, keep* «servus, -î», m. *slave* «sêsê», emphatic for «sê» «sex», indecl. numeral adj. *six* «Sextus, -î», m. *Sextus*, a Roman first name «sî», conj. *if* «sîc», adv. *thus, in this way*. Cf. «ita», «tam» «Sicilia, -ae», f. *Sicily*. See map «sîc-ut», *just as, as if* «signifer, -erî», m. [[«signum», *standard*, + «ferô», *bear*]], *standard bearer* (p. 224) «signum, -î», n. *ensign, standard; signal* «silva, -ae», f. *wood, forest* «similis, -e», adj., compared «similior, simillimus», *like, similar* (§307) «simul», adv. *at the same time* «simul ac» or «simul atque», conj. *as soon as* «sine», prep. with abl. *without* (§209) «singulî, -ae, -a», distributive numeral adj. *one at a time, single* (§334) «sinister, -tra, -trum», adj. *left* «Sinuessa, -ae», f. *Sinues' sa*, a town in Campania. See map «sitis, -is» (acc. «-im», abl. «-î», no plur.), f. *thirst* «situs, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «sinô», *set*]], *_situated, placed, lying* «socius, socî», m. *comrade, ally* «sôl, sôlis» (no gen. plur.), m. *sun* «soleô, -êre, solitus sum», semi-dep. verb, *be wont, be accustomed* «sollicitus, -a, -um», adj. *disturbed, anxious* «solum», adv. [[«sôlus», *alone*]], *alone, only*. «nôn solum ... sed etiam», *not only ... but also* «sôlus, -a, -um» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), adj. *alone, only* (§108) «solvô, -ere, solvî, solûtus», *loosen, unbind*. «nâvem solvere», *set sail* «somnus, -î», m. *sleep* «soror, -ôris», f. *sister* «spatium, spatî», n. *space, distance; time; opportunity* «spectâculum, -î», n. [[«spectô», *look at*]], *show, spectacle* «spectô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *look at, witness* «spêrô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[spês, *hope*]], *hope, expect* (§420.c) «spês, speî», f. *hope* (§273.2) «splendidê», adv. [[«splendidus»]], compared «splendidus, splendidissimê», *splendidly, handsomely* «splendidus, -a, -um», adj. *brilliant, gorgeous, splendid* «Stabiânus, -a, -um», *Stabian* «stabulum, -î», n. [[cf. «stô», *stand*]], *_standing*

place, stable, stall_ «statim», adv. [[cf. «stô», *stand*]], *on the spot, at once, instantly* «statua, -ae», f. [[«sistô», *place, set*]], *statue* «statuô, -ere, -uî, -âtus» [[«status», *station*]], *decide, determine* «stilus, -î», m. *iron pencil, style* (p. 210) «stô, -âre, stetí, status», *stand* «strâtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «sternô», *spread*]], *paved* (of streets) «strepitus, -ûs», m. [[«strepô», *make a noise*]], *noise, din* «stringô, -ere, strînxî, strictus», *bind tight; draw, unsheathe* «studeô, -êre, -uî, ----», *give attention to, be eager*, with dat. (§501.14) «studium, studî», n. [[cf. «studeô», *be eager for*]], *_eagerness, desire, zeal, devotion_* «stultus, -a, -um», adj. *foolish, stupid* «Stymphâlis, -idis», adj. f. *Stymphalian, of Stympha'lus*, a lake in southern Greece «Stymphâlus, -î», m. *Stympha'lus*, a district of southern Greece with a town, mountain, and lake, all of the same name «suâdeô, -êre, -sî, -sus», *advise, recommend*, with subjv. of purpose (§501.41) «sub», prep. with acc. and abl. *under, below, up to; at or _to the foot of_* «sub-igô, -ere, -êgî, -âtus» [[«sub», *under*, + «agô», *drive*]], *subdue, reduce* «subitô», adv. [[«subitus», *sudden*]], *suddenly* «sub-sequor, -î, -secûtus sum», dep. verb [[«sub», *below*, + «sequor», *follow*]], *follow close after, follow up* «suc-cêdô, -ere, -cessî, -cessus» [[«sub», *below*, + «cêdô», *go*]], *follow, succeed* «suî», reflexive pron. *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)* (§480). «sêcum» = «sê» + «cum». «sêsê», emphatic form of «sê» «sum, esse, fuî, futûrus», irreg. verb, *be; exist* (§494) «summus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree, compared «superus, superior, suprêmus» or «summus» (§312), *supreme, highest; best, greatest*. «in summô colle», *on the top of the hill* «sûmô, -ere, sûmpsî, sûmptus», *take up; assume, put on*. «sûmere supplicium dê», *inflict punishment on* «super», prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above* «superbia, -ae», f. [[«superbus», *proud*]], *pride, arrogance* «superbus, -a, -um», adj. *proud, haughty* «superior», comp. of «superus» «superô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«superus», *above*]], *_go over; subdue, overcome; surpass, excel_* «super-sum, -esse, -fuî, ----», *be over, survive*, with dat. (§501.15) «superus, -a, -um», adj., compared «superior, suprêmus» or «summus», *above, upper* (§312) «supplicium, suppli'cí», n. [[«supplex», *kneeling in entreaty*]], *punishment, torture*. «supplicium sûmere dê», *inflict punishment on*. «supplicium dare», *suffer punishment* «surgô, -ere, surrêxî», ---- [[«sub», *from below*, + «regô», *straighten*]], *rise* «sus-cipiô, -ere, -cêpî, -ceptus» [[«sub», *under*, + «capiô», *take*]], *undertake, assume, begin* «suspîcor, -ârî, -âtus sum», dep. verb, *suspect, surmise, suppose* «sus-tineô, -êre, -tinuî, -tentus» [[«sub», *under*, + «teneô», *hold*]], *hold up, bear, sustain, withstand* «suus, -a, -um», reflexive possessive adj. and pron., *_his, her, hers, its, their, theirs_* (§98)

T

«T.», abbreviation of «Titus» «taberna, -ae», f. *shop, stall* «tabula, -ae», f. *tablet for writing* «tâlis, -e», adj. *such*. «tâlis ... quâlis», *such ... as* «tam», adv. *so, such*. Cf. «ita, sîc» «tamen», adv. *yet, however, nevertheless* «tandem», adv. *at length, finally* «tangô, -ere, tetigî, tâctus», *touch* «tantum», adv. [[«tantus»]], *only* «tantus, -a, -um», adj. *so great, such*. «tantus ... quantus», *as large as* «tardus, -a, -um», adj. *slow, late; lazy* «Tarpêia, -ae», f. *Tarpeia* (pronounced *Tar-pê'ya*), the maiden who opened the citadel to the Sabines «Tarquinius, Tarqui'nî», *Tarquin*, a Roman king. With the surname «Superbus», *Tarquin the Proud* «Tarracîna, -ae», f. *Tarracî'na*, a town in Latium. See map «taurus, -î», m. *bull* «têctus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «tegô», *cover*]], *_covered, protected_* «têlum, -î», n. *weapon* «temerê», adv. *rashly, heedlessly* «tempestâs, -âtis», f. [[«tempus», *time*]] *storm, tempest* «templum, -î», n. *temple, shrine* «tempto, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *try, test; make trial of, attempt* «tempus, -oris», n. *time* (§464.2.b). «in reliquum tempus», *for the future* «teneô, -êre, tenuî», ----, *hold, keep* «tergum, -î», n. *back*, «â tergô», *on the rear*, «tergum vertere», *retreat, flee* «ternî, -ae, -a», distributive numeral adj. *three each, by threes* (§334) «terra, -ae», f. *earth, ground, land*. «orbis terrârum», *the whole world* «terror, -ôris», m. [[cf. «terreô», *frighten*]], *dread, alarm, terror* «tertius, -a, -um», numeral adj. *third* «Teutonês, -um», m. *the Teutons* «theâtrum, -î», n. *theater* «Thêbae, -ârum», f. *Thebes*, a city of Greece «Thêbânî, -ôrum», m. *Thebans*, the people of Thebes «thermae, -ârum», f. plur. *baths* «Thessalia, -ae», f. *Thessaly*, a district of northern Greece «Thrâcia, -ae», f. *Thrace*, a district north of Greece «Tiberius, Tibe'ri», m. *Tiberius*, a Roman first name «tîbîcen, -înis», m. [[cf. «tîbia», *pipe*]], *pipe, flute player* «timeô, -êre, -uî», ----, *fear, be afraid of*. Cf. «vereor» «timor, -ôris», m. [[cf. «timeô», *fear*]], *fear, dread, alarm*. Cf. «metus» «Tîryns, Tîrynthîs», f. *Ti'ryns*, an ancient town in southern Greece, where Hercules served Eurystheus «toga, -ae», f. [[cf. «tegô», *cover*]], *toga* «tormentum, -î», n. *engine of war* «totiêns», adv. *so often, so many times* «tôtus, -a, -um», (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), adj. *_all, the whole, entire_* (§108) «trâ-dô, -ere, -didî, -ditus» [[«trâns», *across*, + «dô», *deliver*]], *give up, hand over, surrender, betray* «trâ-dûcô, -ere, -dûxî, -ductus»

[[«trâns», *across*, + «dûcô», *lead*]], *lead across* «trahô, -ere, trâxî, trâctus», *draw, pull, drag*. «multum trahere», *protract, prolong much* «trâ-iciô, -ere, -iêcî, -iectus» [[«trâns», *across*, + «iaciô», *hurl*]], *throw across; transfix* «trâ-nô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«trâns», *across*, + «nô», *swim*]], *_swim across_* «trâns», prep. with acc. *across, over* (§340) «trâns-eô, -îre, -îi, -itus» [[«trâns», *across*, + «eô», *go*]], *_go across, cross_* (§413) «trâns-figô, -ere, -fixî, -fixus» [[«trâns», *through*, + «figô», *drive*]], *transfix* «trânsitus», ---- (acc. «-um», abl. «-û»), m. [[cf. «trânseô», *_cross over_*]], *passage across_* «três, tria», numeral adj. *three* (§479) «trîduum, trîduû», n. [[«três», *three*, + «diês», *days*]], *_three days' time, three days_* «trîgintâ», indecl. numeral adj. *thirty* «trîplex, -icis», adj. *threefold, triple* «trîstis, -e», adj. *sad; severe, terrible* «trîstitia, -ae», f. [[«trîstis», *sad*]], *sadness, sorrow* «trîumphô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«trîumphus», *triumph*]], *_celebrate a triumph_* «trîumphus, -î», m. *triumphal procession, triumph*. «trîumphum agere», *celebrate a triumph* «trucîdô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *cut to pieces, slaughter*. Cf. «interficiô», «necô», «occîdô» «tû, tuî» (plur. «vôs»), pers. pron. *thou, you* (§480) «tuba, -ae», f. *trumpet* «Tullia, -ae», f. *Tullia*, a Roman name «tum», adv. *then, at that time* «turrîs, -is», f. *tower* (§465.2) «tûtus, -a, -um», adj. *safe* «tuus, -a, -um», possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (§98)

U

«ubi», rel. and interrog. adv. *where, when* «ûllus, -a, -um» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), adj. *any* (§108) «ulterior, -ius, -ôris», adj. in comp. degree, superl. «ultimus», *farther, more remote* (§315) «ultimus, -a, -um», adj. in superl. degree (see «ulterior»), *farthest* (§315) «umbra, -ae», f. *shade* «umerus, -î», m. *shoulder* «umquam», adv. *ever, at any time* «ûnâ», adv. [[«ûnus», *one*]], *in the same place, at the same time* «ûndecimus, -a, -um», numeral adj. [[«ûnus», *one*, + «decimus», *tenth*]], *eleventh* «undique», adv. *from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere* «ûnus, -a, -um» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), numeral adj. *one; alone* (§108) «urbs, -is», f. *city* (§465.a) «urgeô, -êre, ursî», ----, *press upon, crowd, hem in* «ûrus, -î», m. *wild ox, urus* «ûsque», adv. *all the way, even* «ûsus, -ûs», m. *use, advantage* «ut», conj. with the subjv. *that, in order that, that not* (with verbs of fearing), *so that, to* (§350.1) «uter, -tra, -trum» (gen. «-îus», dat. «-î»), interrog. pron. *_which of two? which?_* (§108) «uterque, utraque, utrumque», indef. pron. *each of two, each, both*. «ab utrâque parte», *on both sides* «ûtilis, -e», adj. [[«ûtor», *use*]], *useful* «utrimque», adv. [[«uterque», *each of two*]], *_on each side, on either hand_* «ûva, -ae», f. *grape, bunch of grapes* «uxor, -ôris», f. *wife*

V

«vâgîna, -ae», *sheath, scabbard* «vâgor, -ârî, -âtus sum», dep. verb. *wander* «valeô, -êre, -uî, -itûrus», *be powerful, be well*; in the imperative as a greeting, *farewell*. «plûrimum valêre», *have the most power* «valêtûdô, -inis», f. [[«valeô», *be well*]], *health* «validus, -a, -um», adj. [[cf. «valeô», *be strong*]], *_strong, able, well_* «vallês, -is», f. *valley* «vâllum, -î», n. *rampart, earthworks* «varius, -a, -um», adj. *bright-colored* «vâstô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«vâstus», *empty*]], *_ (make empty), devastate, lay waste_* «vectîgal, -âlis», n. *tax, tribute* «vehementer», adv. [[«vehemêns», *eager*]], compared «vehementius, vehementissimê», *eagerly, vehemently* «vehô, -ere, vexî, vectus», *convey, carry*. In the passive often in the sense of *ride, sail* «vel», conj. *or*. «vel ... vel», *either ... or*. Cf. «aut» «vêlôcîtâs, -âtis», f. [[«vêlôx», *swift*]], *swiftness* «vêlôx, -ôcis», adj. *swift, fleet* «vêlum, -î», n. *sail* «vêndô, -ere, vëndidî, vënditus», *sell* «veniô, -îre, vênî, ventus», *come, go* «ventus, -î», m. *wind* «verbum, -î», n. *word*. «verba facere prô», *speak in behalf of* «vereor, -êrî, -itus sum», dep. verb. *fear; reverence, respect* (§493). Cf. «timeô» «Vergîlius, Vergî lí», m. *Vergil*, the poet «vergô, -ere, ----, ----», *turn, lie* «vêrô», adv. [[«vêrus», *true*]], *in truth, surely*; conj. *_but, however_*. «tum vêrô», *then you may be sure*, introducing the climax of a story «vertô, -ere, -tî, -sus», *turn, change*. «tergum vertere», *retreat, flee* «vêrus, -a, -um», *true, actual* «vesper, -erî», m. *evening* «vester, -tra, -trum», possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (§98) «vestîgium, vestî'gî», n. [[cf. «vestîgô», *track*]], *_footstep, track, trace_* «vestîmentum, -î», n. [[«vestis», *clothing*]], *garment* «vestiô, -îre, -îvî, -îtus» [[«vestis», *clothing*]], *clothe, dress* «vestis, -is», f. *clothing, attire, garment, robe* «vestîtus, -a, -um», adj. [[part. of «vestiô», *clothe*]], *clothed* «Vesuvius, Vesu'vi», m. *Vesuvius*, the volcano near Pompeii. See map «veterânus, -a, -um», adj. *old, veteran* «vetô, -âre, -uî, -itus», *forbid, prohibit* «vexô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *trouble, annoy* «via, -ae», f. *way, road, street; way, manner*. Cf. «iter» «viâtor, -ôris», m. [[«via»]], *traveler* «victor, -ôris», m. [[«vincô», *conquer*]], *conqueror, victor*. In apposition, with adj. force *victorious* «victôria, -ae», f. [[«victor», *victor*]], *victory* «vîcus, -î», m.

village «videô, -êre, vîdî, vîsus», *see, perceive*. Pass. *be seen; seem* (§420.d) «vigilia, -ae», f. [[«vigil» *awake*]], watch. «dê tertia vigilia», *about the third watch* «vîgintî», indecl. numeral adj. *twenty* «vîlicus, -î», m. [[«vîlla», *farm*]], *steward, overseer of a farm* «vîlla, -ae», f. *farm, villa* «vinciô, -îre, vînxî, vînctus», *bind, tie, fetter* «vincô, -ere, vîcî, victus», *conquer, defeat, overcome*. Cf. «subigô, superô» «vînea, -ae», f. *shed* (p. 219) «vînum, -î», n. *wine* «violenter», adv. [[«violentus», *violent*]], compared «violentius, violentissimê», *violently, furiously* «vir, virî», m. *man, husband; hero* (§462.c) «virîlis, -e», adj. [[vir, man]], *manly* «virtûs, -ûtis», f. [[«vir», *man*]], *manliness; courage, valor; virtue* (§464.1) «vîs», («vîs»), f. *strength, power, might, violence* (§468) «vîta, -ae», f. [[cf. «vîvô», *live*]], *life*, «vîtam agere», *spend or pass life* «vîto, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *shun, avoid* «vîvô, -ere, vîxî, ----», *live*. Cf. «habitô, incolô» «vîvus, -a, -um», adj. [[cf. «vîvô», *live*]], *alive, living* «vîx», adv. *scarcely, hardly* «vocô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus», *call, summon, invite*. Cf. «appellô, nôminô» «volô, -âre, -âvî, -âtûrus», *fly* «volô, velle, voluî, ----», irreg. verb, *will, be willing; wish* (§497). Cf. «cupio» «volûmen, -inis», n. *roll, book* «Vorênus, -î», m. *Vore' nus, a centurion* «vôs», pers. pron.; *you* (see «tû») (§480) «vôtum, -î», n. [[neut. part. of «voveô», *vow*]], *vow, pledge, prayer* «vôx, vôcis», f. [[cf. «vocô», *call*]], *voice, cry; word* «vulnerô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus» [[«vulnus», *wound*]], *wound, hurt* «vulnus, -eris», n. *wound, injury* «vulpês, -îs», f. *fox*

[Illustration: EQUES ROMANUS]

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

A

«a, an», *commonly not translated* «able (be)», possum, posse, potuî, ---- (§495) «abode», domicilium, domici' lî, n. «about» (*adv.*), circiter «about» (*prep.*), dê, *with abl.* «about to», *expressed by fut. act. part.* «abundance», cõpia, -ae, f. «across», trãns, *with acc.* «active», âcer, âcris, âcre «advance», prõgredior, 3 «advantage», ûsus, -ûs, m. «advise», moneô, 2 «after» (*conj.*), postquam; *often expressed by the perf. part.* «after» (*prep.*), post, *with acc.* «against», in, contrâ, *with acc.* «aid», auxiliium, auxili' lî, n. «all», omnis, -e; tõtus, -a, -um (§108) «allow», patior, 3 «ally», socius, soci' m. «almost», paene; ferê «alone», ûnus, -a, -um; sõlus, -a, -um (§108) «already», iam «also», quoque «always», semper «ambassador», lêgâtus, -î, m. «among», apud, *with acc.* «ancient», antîquus, -a, -um «and», et; atque (ac); -que «and so», itaque «Andromeda», Andromeda, -ae, f. «angry», îrâtus, -a, um «animal», animal, -âlis, n. «announce», nûntiô, 1 «annoying», molestus, -a, -um «another», alius, -a, -ud (§109) «any», ûllus, -a, -um (§108) «any one, anything», quisquam, quicquam *or* quidquam (§486) «appearance», fõrma, -ae, f. «appoint», creô, 1 «approach», adpropinquô, 1, *with dat.* «are», *used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula*, sum (§494) «arise», orior, 4 «arm», bracchium, bracchî, n. «armed», armâtus, -a, -um «arms», arma, -õrum, n. plur. «army», exercitus, -ûs, m. «around», circum, *with acc.* «arrival», adventus, -us, m. «arrow», sagitta, -ae, f. «art of war», rês militãris «as possible», *expressed by quam and superl.* «ask», petô, 3; quaerô, 3; rogô, 1 «assail», oppugnô, 1 «at», in, *with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition* (§268); *time when, abl.* «at once», statim «at the beginning of summer», inîtã aestãte «Athens», Athênæ, -ârum, f. «attack», impetus, -us, m. «attempt», cõnor, 1; temptô, 1 «away from», â *or* ab, *with abl.*

B

«bad», malus, -a, -um «baggage», impedîmenta, -õrum, n. plur. «bank», rîpa, -ae, f. «barbarians», barbarî, -õrum, m. plur. «battle», proelium, proelî, n.; pugna, -ae, f. «be», sum (§494) «be absent, be far», absum (§494) «be afraid», timeô, 2; vereor, 2 «be away», absum (§494) «be in command of», praesum, *with dat.* (§§494, 426) «be informed», certior fîô «be off, be distant», absum (§494) «be without», egeô, *with abl.* (§180) «beast (wild)», fera, -ae, f. «beautiful», pulcher, -chra, -chrum «because», quia; quod «because of»,

propter, *with acc.*; or *abl. of cause* «before, heretofore» (*adv.*), antea «before» (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*; prô, *with abl.* «begin», incipiô, 3 «believe», crêdô, 3, *with dat.* (§153) «belong to», *predicate genitive* (§409) «best», optimus, *superl. of bonus* «betray», trãdô, 3 «better», melior, *comp. of bonus* «between», inter, *with acc.* «billow», fluctus, -us, *m.* «bird», avis, -is, *f.* (§243.1) «blood», sanguis, -inis, *m.* «body», corpus, -oris, *n.* «bold», audãx, -ãcis; fortis, -e «boldly», audãcter; fortiter «boldness», audãcia, -ae, *f.* «booty», praeda, -ae, *f.* «both, each» (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque «both ... and», et ... et «boy», puer, -erî, *m.* «brave», fortis, -e «bravely», fortiter «bridge», pônus, pontis, *m.* «bright», clãrus, -a, -um «bring back», reportô, 1 «bring upon», înerô, -ferre, -tulî, -lãtus, *with acc. and dat.* (§426) «brother», frãter, -tris, *m.* «building», aedificium, aedifi'cí. *n.* «burn», cremô, 1; incendô, 3 «business», negôtium, negô'ti, *n.* «but, however», autem, sed «by», â, ab, *with abl.*; *denoting means, abl. alone; sometimes implied in a participle* «by night», noctû

C

«Cæsar», Caesar, -aris, *m.* «calamity», calamitãs, -ãtis, *f.* «call», vocô, 1; appellô, 1; nôminô, 1 «call together», convocô, 1 «camp», castra, -ôrum, *n. plur.* «can, could», possum, posse, potuî, ---- (§495) «capture», capiô, 3; occupô, 1 «care», cûra, -ae, *f.* «care for», cûrô, 1 «careful», attentus, -a, -um «carefulness», dîligentia, -ae, *f.* «carry», ferô, ferre, tulî, lãtus (§498); portô, 1 «carry on», gerô, 3 «cart», carrus, -î, *m.* «cause», causa, -ae, *f.* «cavalry», equitãtus, -ûs, *m.* «cease», cessô, 1 «Cepheus», Cêpheus, -î, *m.* «certain (a)», quîdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (§485) «chicken», gallîna, -ae, *f.* «chief», prînceps, -cipis, *m.* «children», liberî, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «choose», dêligô, 3 «choose, elect», creô, 1 «citizen», cîvis, -is, *m. and f.* (§243.1) «city», urbs, urbis, *f.* «clear», clãrus, -a, -um «cohort», cohors, -rtis, *f.* «come», veniô, 4 «command», imperô, 1, *with dat.* (§45); iubeô, 2; praesum, *with dat.* (§426) «commit», committô, 3 «commonwealth», rês pûblica, reî pûblica «concerning», dê, *with abl.* «conquer», superô, 1; vincô, 3 «construct» (*a ditch*), perdûcô, 3 «consul», cônsul, -ulis, *m.* «contrary to», contrã, *with acc.* «Corinth», Corinthus, -î, *f.* «Cornelia», Cornêlia, -ae, *f.* «Cornelius», Cornêlius, Cornê'li, *m.* «corselet», lôrica, -ae, *f.* «cottage», casa, -ae, *f.* «country», *as distinguished from the city*, rûs, rûris, _n.; *as territory, fînês, -ium, m., plur. of _ finis* «courage», virtûs, -ûtis, *f.* «crime», scelus, -eris, *n.* «cross», trãnsêô, 4 (§499) «crown», corôna, -ae, *f.*

D

«daily», cotîdiê «danger», perîculum, -î, *n.* «daughter», filia, -ae, *f.* (§67) «day», diês, -êi, *m.* «daybreak», prîma lûx «dear», cãrus, -a, -um «death», mors, mortis, *f.* «deed», rês, reî, *f.* «deep», altus, -a, -um «defeat», calamitãs, -ãtis, *f.* «defend», dêfendô, 3 «delay» (*noun*), mora, -ae, *f.* «delay» (*verb*), moror, 1 «demand», postulô, 1 «dense», dênsus, -a, -um «depart», discêdô, 3; exeô, 4; proficîscor, 3 «dependent», cliêns, -entis, *m.* «design», cônsilium, consi'li *n.* «desire», cupiô, 3 «destroy», dêleô, 2 «Diana», Diãna, -ae, *f.* «differ», differô, differre, distulî, dîlãtus (§498) «different», dissimilis, -e «difficult», difficilis, -e «difficulty», difficultãs, -ãtis, *f.* «diligence», dîligentia, -ae, *f.* «dinner», cêna, -ae, *f.* «disaster», calamitãs, -ãtis, *f.* «distant (be)», absûm, -esse, âfuî, âfutûrus (§494) «ditch», fossa, -ae, *f.* «do», agô, 3; faciô, 3; *when used as auxiliary, not translated* «down from», dê, *with abl.* «drag», trahô, 3 «drive», agô, 3 «dwell», habitô, 1; incolô, 3; vîvô, 3 «dwelling», aedificium, aedifi'cí, *n.*

E

«each», quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§484) «each of two», uterque, utraque, utrumque «each other», inter *with acc. of a reflexive* «eager», âcer, âcris, âcre; alacer, alacris, alacre «eager (be)», studeô, 2 «eagerness», studium, studî, *n.* «eagle», aquila, -ae, *f.* «easily», facile «easy», facilis, -e «either ... or», aut ... aut «empire», imperium, impe'ri, *n.* «employ», negôtium dô «encourage», hortor, 1 «enemy», hostis, -is, *m. and f.*; inimîcus, -î, *m.* «enough», satis «entire», tôtus, -a, -um (§108) «expectation», opîniô, -ônis, *f.* «eye», oculus, -î, *m.*

F

«faithless», perfidus, -a, -um «famous», clârus, -a, -um «far», longê «farmer», agricola, -ae, *m.* «farther», ulterior, -ius «father», pater, patris, *m.* «fatherland», patria, -ae, *f.* «favor», faveô, 2 «favorable», idôneus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um «fear», metus, -ûs, *m.*; timor, -ôris, *m.* «fear, be afraid», timeô, 2 «few», paucî, -ae, -a «field», ager, agrî, *m.* «fifteen», quîndecim «fight», contendô, 3; pugnô, 1 «find», reperiô, 4 «finish», cõnciô, 3 «fire», ignis, -is, *m.* (§243.1) «firmness», cõstantia, -ae, *f.* «first», prîmus, -a, -um «flee», fugiô, 3 «flight», fuga, -ae, *f.* «fly», volô, 1 «foe», see «enemy» «follow close after», subsequor, 3 «food», cibus, -î, *m.* «foot», pês, pedis, *m.* «foot-soldier», pedes, -itis, *m.* «for» (*conj.*), enim, nam «for» (*prep.*), *sign of dat.*; dê, prô, _with *abl.*; to express purpose, *ad.* with gerundive; implied in *acc.* of time and of extent of space_ «for a long time», diû «forbid», vetô, 1 «forces», cõpia, -ârum, *f., plur. of cõpia* «forest», silva, -ae, *f.* «fort», castellum, -î, *n.*; castrum, -î, *n.* «fortification», mûnitiô, -ônîs, *f.* «fortify», mûniô, 4 «fortune», fortûna, -ae, *f.* «fourth», quârtus, -a, -um «free», liber, -era, -erum «free, liberate», liberô, 1 «frequent», crêber, -bra, -brum «friend», amîcus, -î, *m.* «friendly» (*adj.*), amîcus, -a, -um «friendly» (*adv.*), amîcê «friendship», amîcîtia, -ae, *f.* «frighten», perterreô, 2 «from», â *or ab*, dê, ê, ex, *with abl.* *Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.* «from each other», inter, *with acc. of a reflexive pron.* «full», plênus, -a, -um

G

«Galba», Galba, -ae, *m.* *garland*, corôna, -ae, *f.* «garrison», praesidium, praesi'dî, *n.* «gate», porta, -ae, *f.* «Gaul», Gallia, -ae, *f.* «Gaul» («a»), Gallus, -î, *m.* «general», imperâtor, -ôris, *m.* «Geneva», Genâva, -ae, *f.* «gentle», lênîs, -e «German», Germânus, -a, -um «Germans» («the»), Germânî, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «Germany», Germânia, -ae, *f.* «get» (*dinner*), parô, 1 «girl», puella, -ae, *f.* «give», dô, dare, dedî, datus «give over, surrender», dêdô, 3; trâdô, 3 «give up», omittô, 3 «go», eô, 4 (§499) «go forth», prôgredior, 3 «god», deus, -î, *m.* (§468) «goddess», dea, -ae, *f.* (§67) «gold», aurum, -î, *n.* «good», bonus, -a, -um «grain», frûmentum, -î, *n.* «grain supply», rês frûmentâria «great», ingêns, -entîs; magnus, -a, -um «greatest», maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um «guard», praesidium, praesi'dî, *n.*

H

«hand», manus, -ûs, *f.* «happy», laetus, -a, -um «harbor», portus, -ûs, *m.* «hasten», contendô, 3; mâtûrô, 1; properô, 1 «hateful», invîsus, -a, -um «haughty», superbus, -a, -um «have», habeô, 2 «have no power», nihil possum «he», is; hic; iste; ille; *or not expressed* «head», caput, -itis, *n.* «hear», audiô «heart», animus, -î, *m.* «heavy», gravis, -e «Helvetii» («the»), Helvétîi, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «hem in», contineô, 2 «hen», gallîna, -ae, *f.* «her», eius; huius; istîus; illîus; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (§116) «hide», abdô, 3 «high», altus, -a, -um «highest», summus, -a, -um «hill», collis, -is, *m.* «himself», suî. See «self» «hindrance», impedîmentum, -î, *n.* «his», eius; huius; istîus; illîus; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (§116) «hither», citerior, -ius (§315) «hold», teneô, 2 «home», domus, -ûs, *f.* (§468). «at home», domî (§267) «hope» (*noun*), spês, speî, *f.* «hope» (*verb*), spêrô, 1 «horse», equus, -î, *m.* «horseman», eques, -itis, *m.* «hostage», obses, -idis, *m. and f.* «hostile», inimîcus, -a, -um «hour», hõra, -ae, *f.* «house», domicilium, domici'li, *n.*; domus, -ûs, *f.* (§468) «hurl», iaciô, 3

I

«I», ego (§280); *or not expressed* «if», sî. «if not», nisi «ill», aeger, -gra, -grum «immediately», statim «in» (*of place*), in, *with abl.*; (*of time or of specification*) *abl. without prep.* «in order that», ut, *with subjv.*; «in order that not, lest», nê, *with subjv.* «in vain», frûstrâ «industry», dîligentia, -ae, *f.* «inflict injuries upon», iniûriâs înerô *with dat.* (§426) «inflict punishment on», supplicium sùmô de «inform some one», aliquem certiõrem faciô «injure», noceô, 2, *with dat.* (§153) «injury», iniûria, -ae, *f.* «into», in, *with acc.* «intrust», committô, 3; mandô, 1 «invite», vocô, 1 «is», *used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula*, sum (§494) «island», însula, -ae, *f.* «it», is; hie; iste; ille; *or not expressed* «Italy», Italia, -ae, *f.* «its», eius; huius; istîus; illîus; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (§116) «itself», suî. See «self»

J

«join battle», proelium committô «journey», iter, itineris, *n.* (§468) «judge» (*noun*), iûdex, -icis, *m.* «judge» (*verb*), iûdicô, 1 «Julia», Iûlia, -ae, *f.* «just now», nûper

K

«keep», contineô, 2; prohibeo, 2; teneô, 2 «keep on doing something», expressed by the *impf. indic.* «kill», interficiô, 3; necô, 1; occidô, 3 «king», rêx, rêgis, *m.* «kingdom», rêgnum, -î, *n.* «know», cognôscô, 3, *in perf.*; sciô, 4

L

«labor» (*noun*), labor, -ôris, *m.* «labor» (*verb*), labôrô, 1 «lack» (*noun*), inopia, -ae, *f.* «lack» (*verb*), egeô, 2, *with abl.* (§180) «lady», domina, -ae, *f.* «lake», lacus, -ûs, *m.* (§260.2) «land», terra, -ae, *f.* «language», lingua, -ae, *f.* «large», ingêns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um «larger», maior, maius «lately», nûper «Latona», Lâtôna, -ae, *f.* «law», lêx, lêgis, *f.* «lay waste», vâstô, 1 «lead», dûco, 3 «leader», dux, ducis, *m. and f.* «learn, know», cognôscô, 3 «leave, depart from», discêdô, 3 «leave behind, abandon», relinquô, 3 «left», sinister, -tra, -trum «legion», legiô, -ônîs, *f.* «legionaries», legiônârii, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «length», longitûdô, -inîs, *f.* «lest», nê, *with subjv.* «letter» (*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*; (*an epistle*) litterae, -ârum, *f. plur.* «lieutenant», lêgâtus, -î, *m.* «light», lûx, lûcis, *f.* «like» (*adj.*), similis, -e «like, love», amô, 1 «line of battle», aciês, aciêi, *f.* «little», parvus, -a, -um «live», habitô, 1; incolô, 3; vîvô, 3 «long», longus, -a, -um «long, for a long time», diû «long for», désîderô, 1 «look after», cûrô, 1 «love», amô, 1

M

«maid, maid servant», ancilla, -ae, *f.* «make», faciô, 3 «make war upon», bellum înerô *with dat.* (§426) «man», homô, -inîs, *m. and f.*; vir, viri, *m.* «man-of-war», nâvis longa «many», multî, -ae, -a, *plur. of multus* «march», iter, itineris, *n.* (§468) «Mark», Mârcus, -î, *m.* «marriage», mâtirimônium, mâtirimô nî, *n.* «master», dominus, -î, *m.*; magîster, -trî, *m.* «matter», negôtiûm, negô tî, *n.*; rês, reî, *f.* «means, by means of», *the abl.* «messenger», nûntius, nûntî, *m.* «midnight», media nox «mile», mîlle passuum (§331.b) «miles», mîlia passuum «mind», animus, -î, *m.*; mêns, mentis, *f.* «mine», meus, -a, -um «mistress», domina, -ae, *f.* «money», pecûnia, -ae, *f.* «monster», mônstrum, -î, *n.* «month», mênsis, -is, *m.* «moon», lûna, -ae, *f.* «more» (*adj.*), plûs, plûris (§313); *or a comparative. Adverb*, magis «most» (*adj.*), plûrimus, -a, -um; *superl. degree. Adverb*, maximê; plûrimum «mother», mâtêr, mâtis, *f.* «mountain», môn(s), montis, *m.* «move», moveô, 2 «moved», commôtus, -a, -um «much (by)», multô «multitude», multîtûdô, -inîs, *f.* «my», meus, -a, -um «myself», mê, *reflexive.* See «self»

N

«name», nômen, -inîs, *n.* «nation», gêns, gentis, *f.* «near», propinquus, -a, -um «nearest», proximus, -a, -um «nearly», ferê «neighbor», fînitimus, -î, *in.* «neighboring», fînitimus, -a, -um «neither», neque *or* nec; «neither ... nor», neque (nec) ... neque (nec) «never», numquam «nevertheless», tamen «new», novus, -a, -um «next day», postrîdiê eius diêi «next to», proximus, -a, -um «night», nox, noctis, *f.* «nine», novem «no», minimê; *or repeat verb with a negative* (§210) «no, none», nûllus, -a, -um (§109) «no one», nêmô, nûllîus «nor», neque *or* nec «not», nôn «not even», nê ... quidem «not only ... but also», nôn sôlum ... sed etiam «nothing», nihil *or* nihilum, -î, *n.* «now», nunc «number», numerus, -î, *m.*

O

«obey», pâreô, 2, *with dat.* (§153) «of», *sign of gen.*; dê, *with abl.*; «out of», ê *or* ex, *with abl.* «often», saepe «on» (*of place*), in, *with abl.*; (*of time*) *abl. without prep.* «on account of», propter, *with acc.*; *or abl. of cause.* «on all sides», undique «once» (*upon a time*), ôlim «one», ûnus, -a, -um (§108) «one ... another», alius ... alius (§110) «only» (*adv.*), sôlum; tantum «opportune», opportunus, -a, -um «opposite», adversus, -a, -um «oracle»,

ôrâculum, -î, *n.* «orator», ôrâtor, -ôris, *m.* «order», imperô, 1; iubeô, 2 «ornament», ôrnâmentum, -î, *n.* «other», alius, -a, -ud (§109) «others (the)», reliquî, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «ought», dêbeô, 2 «our», noster, -tra, -trum «ourselves», nôs, *as reflexive object.* See «self» «overcome», superô, 1; vincô, 3 «own (his, her, its, their)», suus, -a, -um

P

«part», pars, partis, *f.* «peace», pâx, pâcis, *f.* «people», populus, -î, *m.* «Perseus», Perseus, -î, *m.* «persuade», persuâdeô, 2, *with dat.* (§153) «pitch camp», castra pônô «place» (*noun*), locus, -î, *m.* «place, arrange», conlocô, 1 «place, put», pônô, 3 «place in command», praeficiô, 3, *with acc. and dat.* (§426) «plan (a)», cônsilium, cônsilî, *n.* «please», placeô, 2, *with dat.* (§154) «pleasing», grâtus, -a, -um «plow», arô, 1 «Pompeii», Pompêiî, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «possible (as)», *expressed by quam and superl.* «powerful (be)», valeô, 2 «praise», laudô, 1 «prefer», mâlô, mâlle, mâluî, ---- (§497) «prepare for», parô, 1, *with acc.* «press hard», premô, 3 «protection», fidês, fideî, *f.* «province», prôvincia, -ae, *f.* «public», pûblicus, -a, -um «Publius», Pûblius, Pûblî, *m.* «punishment», poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, supplîcî, *n.* «purpose, for the purpose of», ut, quî, *or quô, with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*; causâ, *following the genitive of a gerund or gerundive* «pursue», însequor, 3

Q

«queen», rêgîna, -ae, *f.* «quickly», celeriter «quite», *expressed by the comp. degree*

R

«rampart», vâllum, -î, *n.* «rear», novissimum agmen «reason», causa, -ae, *f.* «receive», accipiô, 3; excipiô, 3 «recent», recêns, -entis «recently», nûper «redoubt», castellum, -î, *n.* «refuse», recûsô, 1 «remain», maneô, 2 «remaining», reliquus, -a, -um «reply», respondeô, 2 «report» (*noun*), fama, -ae, *f.*; rûmor, -ôris, *m.* «report» (*verb*), adferô; dêferô; referô (§498) «republic», rês pûblica «require», postulô, 1 «resist», resistô, 3, *with dat.* (§154) «rest (the)», reliquî, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «restrain», contineô, 2 «retainer», cliêns, -entis, *m.* «retreat», pedem referô; terga vertô «return», redeô, 4; revertor, 3 «revolution», rês novae «Rhine», Rhênus, -î, *m.* «right», dexter, -tra, -trum «river», flûmen, -inis, *n.*; fluvius, fluvî, *m.* «road», via, -ae, *f.* «Roman», Rômânus, -a, -um «Rome», Rôma, -ae, *f.* «row», ôrdô, -inis, *m.* «rule», regô, 3 «rumor», fâma, -ae, *f.*; rûmor, -ôris, *m.* «run», currô, 3

S

«sacrifice», sacrum, -î, *n.* «safety», salûs, -ûtis, *f.* «sail», nâvigô, 1 «sailor», nauta, -ae, *m.* «sake, for the sake of», causâ, *following a gen.* «same», îdem, eadem, idem (§287) «savages», barbarî, -ôrum, *m. plur.* «save», servô, 1 «say», dîcô, 3 «school», lûdus, -î, *m.*; schola, -ae, *f.* «scout», explôrâtor, -ôris, *m.* «sea», mare, -is, *n.* «second», secundus, -a, -um «see», videô, 2 «seek», petô, 3 «seem», videor, 2, *passive of videô* «seize», occupô, 1; rapiô, 3 «self», ipse, -a, -um (§286); suî (§281) «send», mittô, 3 «set fire to», incendô, 3 «set out», proficîscor, 3 «seven», septem «Sextus», Sextus, -î, *m.* «she», ea; haec; ista; illa (§115); *or not expressed* «ship», nâvis, -is, *f.* (§243.1) «short», brevis, -e «shout», clâmor, -ôris, *m.* «show», dêmônstrô, 1 «Sicily», Sicilia, -ae, *f.* «sick», aeger, -gra, -grum «side», latus, -eris, *n.* «siege», obsidiô, -ônis, *f.* «since», cum, *with subjv.* (§396); *the abl. abs.* (§381) «sing», canô, 3; cantô, 1 «sister», soror, -ôris, *f.* «sit», sedeô, 2 «size», magnitûdô, -inis, *f.* «skillful», perîtus, -a, -um «slave», servus, -î, *m.* «slavery», servitiûs, -ûtis, *f.* «slow», tardus, -a, -um «small», parvus, -a, -um «snatch», rapiô, 3 «so», ita; sîc; tam «so great», tantus, -a, -um «so that», ut; «so that not», ut nôn «soldier», mîles, -itis, *m.* «some», *often not expressed*; quis (quî), qua (quae), quid (quod); aliquî, aliqua, aliquod «some one», quis; aliquis (§487) «some ... others», alî ... alî (§110) «something», quid; aliquid (§487) «son», filius, filî, *m.* «soon», mox «space», spatium, spatî, *n.* «spear», pîlum, -î, *n.* «spirited», âcer, âcris, âcre; alacer, alacris, alacre «spring», fôns, fontis, *m.* «spur», calcar, -âris, *n.* «stand», stô, 1 «state», cîvîtâs, -âtis, *f.* «station», conlocô, 1 «steadiness», cônstantia, -ae, *f.* «stone», lapis,

-idis, *m.* «storm», oppugnô, 1 «story», fâbula, -ae, *f.* «street», via, -ae, *f.* «strength», vîs, (*vîs*), *f.* «strong», fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um «sturdy», validus, -a, -um «such», tâlis, -e «suddenly», subitô «suffer punishment», supplicium dô «sufficiently», satis «suitable», idôneus, -a, -um «summer», aestâs, -âtis, *f.* «sun», sôl, sôlis, *m.* «supplies», commeâtus, -ûs, *m.* «surrender», trândô, 3 «suspect», suspicor, 1 «swift», celer, -eris, -ere; vêlôx, -ôcis «sword», gladius, gladî, *m.*

T

«take, capture», capiô, 3 «take part in», intersum, -esse, -fuî, -futûrus, *with dat.* (§426) «take possession of», occupô, 1 «tall», altus, -a, -um «task», opus, operis, *n.* «teach», doceô, 2 «teacher», magister, -trî, *m.* «tear» (*noun*), lacrima, -ae, *f.* «tell», dîcô, 3; nârrô, 1 «ten», decem «terrified», perterritus, -a, -um «terrify», perterreô, 2 «than», quam «that» (*conj. after verbs of saying and the like*), *not expressed* «that» (*pron.*), is; iste; ille «that, in order that», *in purpose clauses*, ut; _after verbs of fearing_, nê (§§349, 366, 372) «that not, lest», *in purpose clauses*, nê; *after verbs of fearing*, ut (§§349, 366, 372) «the», *not expressed* «their», *gen. plur. of is; reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (§116) «their own», suus, -a, -um (§116) «then, at that time», tum «then, in the next place», deinde, tum «there», *as expletive, not expressed* «there, in that place», ibi «therefore», itaque «they», îî; hî; istî; illî; *or not expressed* «think», arbitror, 1; exîstimô, 1; putô, 1 «third», tertius, -a, -um «this», hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id «though», cum. *with subjv.* (§396) «thousand», mîlle (§479) «three», trê, tria (§479) «through», per, *with acc.* «thy», tuus, -a, -um «time», tempus, -oris, *n.* «to», *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *with acc.*; *expressing purpose*, ut, quî, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive* «to each other», inter, *with acc. of a reflexive pron.* «to-day», hodiê «tooth», dêns, dentis, *m.* «top of», summus, -a, -um «tower», turris, -is, *f.* (§243.2) «town», oppidum, -î, *n.* «townsman», oppidânus, -î, *m.* «trace», vestîgium, vestîgî, *n.* «trader», mercâtor, -ôris, *m.* «train», exerceô, 2 «tree», arbor, -oris, *f.* «tribe», gêns, gentis, *f.* «troops», côpiæ, -ârum, *f. plur.* «true», vêrus, -a, -um «trumpet», tuba, -ae, *f.* «try», cônor, 1; temptô, 1 «twelve», duodecim «two», duo, duae, duo (§479)

U

«under», sub, *with acc. or abl.* «undertake», suscipiô, 3 «unharmed», incolumis, -e «unless», nisi «unlike», dissimilis, -e «unwilling» («be»), nôlô, nôlle, nôluî, ---- (§497) «up to», sub, *with acc.* «us», nôs, *acc. plur. of ego*

V

«very», *superl. degree*; maximê; ipse, -a, -um (§285) «victor», victor, -ôris, *m.* «victory», victôria, -ae, *f.* «village», vîcus, -î, *m.* «violence», vîs, (*vîs*), *f.* «violently», vehementer «voice», vôx, vôcis, *f.*

W

«wage», gerô, 3 «wagon», carrus, -î, *m.* «wall», mûrus, -î, *m.* «want», inopia, -ae, *f.* «war», bellum, -î, *n.* «watch», vigilia, -ae, *f.* «water», aqua, -ae, *f.* «wave», fluctus, -ûs, *m.* «way», iter, itineris, *n.* (§468); via, -ae, *f.* «way, manner», modus, -î, *m.* «we», nôs, *plur. of ego*; *or not expressed* «weak», înfîrmus, -a, -um «weapons», arma, -ôrum, *n. plur.*; têla, -ôrum, *n. plur.* «wear», gerô, 3 «weary», dêfessus, -a, -um «what», quis (quî), quae, quid (quod) (§483) «when», ubi; cum (§396); *often expressed by a participle* «where», ubi «which», quî, quae, quod (§482); «which of two», uter, utra, utrum (§108) «while», *expressed by a participle* «whither», quô «who» (*rel.*), quî, quae (§482); (*interrog.*) quis (§483) «whole», tôtus, -a, -um (§108) «whose», cuius; quôrum, quârum, quôrum, *gen. of quî, quae, quod, rel.*; *or of quis, quid, interrog.* «why», cûr «wicked», malus, -a, -um «wide», lâtus, -a, -um «width», lâtitûdô, -inis, *f.* «wild beast», fera, -ae, *f.* «willing» («be»), volô, velle, voluî, ---- (§497) «win» (*a victory*), reportô, 1 «wind», ventus, -î, *m.* «wine», vînum, -î, *n.* «wing», cornû, -ûs, *n.* «winter», hiems, -emis, *f.* «wisdom», cônsilium, consi'li, *n.* «wish», cupiô, 3; volô, velle, voluî, ---- (§497); «wish not», nôlô, nôlle, nôluî, ---- (§497) «with», cum, *with abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone* «withdraw», sê recipere «without», sine, *with abl.* «woman», fêmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*

«wonderful», *mîrus*, -a, -um «word», *verbum*, -î, *n.* «work», *labor*, -ôris, *m.*; *opus*, -eris, *n.* «worse», *peior*, *peius*, *comp. of malus* «worst», *pessimus*, -a, -um, *superl. of malus* «wound» (*noun*), *vulnus*, -eris, *n.* «wound» (*verb*), *vulnerô*, 1 «wreath», *corôna*, -ae, *f.* «wretched», *miser*, -era, -erum «wrong», *iniûria*, -ae, *f.*

Y

«year», *annus*, -î, *m.* «yes», *certê*; *ita*; *vêrô*; *or, more usually, repeat the verb* (§210) «yonder (that)», *ille*, -a, -ud «you», *sing. tû*; *plur. vôs* (§480); *or not expressed* «your», *sing. tuus*, -a, -um; *plur. vester*, -tra, -trum (§98.b)

Z

«zeal», *studium*, *studî*, *n.*

INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

«â»-declension of nouns, 57, 461 «â»-verbs, conjugation of, 488 «ablative» case, 48, 50 absolute, 381 after a comparative, 309 of accompaniment, 104 of agent, 181 of cause, 102 of description, 444, 445 of manner, 105 of means or instrument, 103 of measure of difference, 317 of place from which, 179 of place where, 265 of separation, 180 of specification, 398 of time, 275 «accent», 14-16 «accompaniment» abl. of, 104 «accusative» case, 33 as subject of the infinitive, 214 object, 37 of duration and extent, 336 of place to which, 263, 266 predicate, 392 with prepositions, 340 «adjectives», 54, 55 agreement, 65 comparison regular, 301 by adverbs, 302 irregular, 307, 311, 312, 315 declension of comparatives, 303 of first and second declensions, 83, 93, 469 of third declension, 250-257, 471 with the dative, 143 «adverbs», 319 comparison, 320, 323 formation regular, 320, 321 irregular, 322, 323 «agent» expressed by the abl. with *â* or *ab*, 181 «agreement» of adjectives, 65, 215.a of appositives, 81 of predicate nouns, 76 of relative pronouns, 224 of verbs, 28 «aliquis», 487 «alius», 108, 110, 470 «alphabet», 1-3 «alter», 108, 110 «antepenult», 9.3; accent of, 15 «apposition», 80, 81 «article» not used in Latin, 22.a

«base», 58

«cardinal numerals», 327-329, 478 «case», 32.2 «causal clauses» with *cum*, 395, 396 «cause», expressed by the abl., 102 «characteristic» subjv. of, 389, 390 «comparative» declension of, 303 «comparison» abl. of, 309 degrees of, 300 of adjectives, 300-315 irregular, 311-315, 473, 475 of adverbs regular, 320-476 irregular, 323, 477 positive wanting, 315 six adjectives in *-lis*, 307 «complementary infinitive», 215 «compound verbs» with the dative, 425, 426 «concessive» «clauses» with *cum*, 395, 396 «conjugation stems», 184 «conjugations» the four regular, 126, 488-491 irregular, 494-500 «consonants», 2 «copula», 21 «cum» conjunction, 395 «cum» preposition, 209

«dative» case, 43 of indirect object, 44, 45 of purpose, or end for which, 437 with adjectives, 143 with compound verbs, 426 with special verbs, 153 «deâ» declension of, 67 «declension», 23, 32 «degree of difference» expressed by the abl., 317 «demonstrative adjectives and pronouns», 112-115, 290-292, 481 «deponent verbs», 338, 339, 493 «descriptive ablative and genitive», 441-445 «descriptive relative clause» with the subjv., 389, 390 «deus» declension of, 468 «difference, measure of», 316, 317 «diphthongs», 6 «direct statements», 414 «distributive numerals», 327.3, 334 «domî» locative, 267 «domus» declension of, 468 «duo» declension of, 479 «duration» of time, expressed by the acc., 336

«ê»-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467 «ê»-verbs, conjugation of, 489 «e»-verbs, conjugation of, 490 «ego» declension of, 280, 480 «enclitics», 16 «eô» conjugation of, 499 «extent» of space expressed by the acc., 336

«fearing» subjv. after verbs of, 370-372 «ferô» conjugation of, 498 «fifth or ê-declension», 272, 273, 467 «filia» declension of, 67 «filius» declension of, 87-89 «finite verb» defined, 173 «fiô» conjugation of, 500 «first conjugation», 488 «first or â-declension», 57, 461 «fourth conjugation», 491 «fourth or u-declension», 259, 260, 466 «from» how expressed, 178-181 «future participle» formation of, 374.c «future perfect» formation of active, 187.3 passive, 202 «future tense» formation of, 137, 156

«gender» in English and in Latin, 60 in the first declension, 61 in the second declension, 72 in the third declension, 247 in the fourth declension, 260 in the fifth declension, 272 «general observations on declension», 74 «genitive» case English equivalents of, 33 of description, 443, 445 of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 87 partitive, 331 possessive, 38, 409 «gerund» a verbal noun, 402, 403 «gerundive» a verbal adjective, 404 with *ad* to express purpose, 407

«hic» declension and use of, 290, 291 «how to read Latin», 17

«i» consonant, 3 «i»-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244 «î»-verbs conjugation of, 491 «îdem» declension of, 287, 481 «iêns» declension of, 472 «ille» declension and use of, 290-293, 481 «imperative» formation of, 161, 175 irregular, 161.2 in commands, 161 «imperfect indicative», formation and use of, 133, 134, 165.1 «imperfect subjunctive», 354 «indefinite pronouns and adjectives», 296, 297, 484-487 «independent clauses», 219 «indirect object», 44, 45 «indirect questions», 430-432 «indirect statements», 414-419 «infinitive» as object, 213 as subject, 216 complementary, 215 definition of, 173 does not express purpose, 352 formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206 in indirect statements, 415-410 used as in English, 213-216 «inflection» defined, 23 «instrument» abl. of, 100.b, 103 «intensive pronoun» *ipse*, declension and use of, 285, 286, 481 «interrogative pronouns and adjectives», 225-227, 483 «intransitive verbs», defined, 20.a with the dative, 153 «iô-verbs of the third conj.», 492 «ipse» declension and use of, 285, 481 «irregular adjectives», 108 «irregular comparison» of adjectives, 307 311, 312 of adverbs, 323 «irregular nouns», 67, 246, 468 «irregular verbs», 494-500 «is» declension and use of, 113-116 «iste» declension and use of, 290, 292, 481 «iter» declension of, 468

«Latin word order», 68 «locative» case, 267

«magis and maximê» comparison by, 302 «mâlô» conjugation of, 4.97 «manner» abl. of, 105 «means» abl. of, 103 «measure of difference» abl. of, 316, 317 «mille», declension of, 479 construction with, 331.a,b «moods», defined, 121

«-ne», enclitic in questions, 210 «nê», conj., *that not, lest* with negative clauses of purpose, 350.II with verbs of fearing, 370 «nine irregular adjectives», 108-110 «nôlô» conjugation of, 497 «nominative» case, 35, 36 «nônne» in questions, 210 «nôs» declension of, 280, 480 «nouns», 19. 2 first declension, 57, 461 second declension, 71-74, 87-92, 462 third declension, 230-247, 463-465 fourth declension, 259, 260, 466 fifth declension, 272, 273, 467 «num», in questions, 210 «number», 24 «numerals», 327-334, 478, 479

«o»-declension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92, 462 «object», 20 direct, 37 indirect, 44, 45 «order of words», 68 «ordinal numerals», 327. 2, 478

«participial stem», 201.2 «participles», defined, 203 agreement of, 204 formation, of present, 374.b of perfect, 201 of future, 374.c,d of deponent verbs, 375 tenses of, 376 translated by a clause, 377 «partitive genitive», 330, 331 «passive voice» defined, 163 formation of, 164, 202 «penult», 9.3 accent of, 15 «perfect indicative» formation, in the active, 185, 186 in the passive, 202 meaning of, 190 definite, 190 indefinite, 190 distinguished from the imperfect, 190 «perfect infinitive» active, 195 passive, 205 «perfect passive participle», 201 «perfect stem», 185 «perfect subjunctive» active, 361 passive, 362 «person», 122 «personal endings» active, 122 passive, 164 «personal pronouns», 280, 480 «place» where, whither, whence, 263-265 names of towns and *domus* and *rûs*, 266-268 «pluperfect indicative» active, 187.2 passive, 202 «pluperfect subjunctive» active, 361 passive, 363 «plûs» declension of, 313 «possessive pronouns», 97, 98 «possum»

conjugation of, 495 «predicate» defined, 19 «predicate adjective» defined, 55 «predicate noun», 75, 76 «prepositions» with the abl., 209 with the acc., 340 «present indicative», 128, 130, 147 «present stem», 126.a «present subjunctive», 344 «primary tenses», 356 «principal parts», 183 «pronouns» classification of, 278 defined, 19.2.a demonstrative, 481 indefinite, 297, 484-487 intensive, 285, 286, 481 interrogative, 483 personal, 480 possessive, 97, 98 reflexive, 281 relative, 220, 221 «pronunciation», 4-7 «pròsum» conjugation of, 496 «purpose» dative of, 436, 437 expressed by the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, 407 not expressed by the infinitive, 352 subjunctive of, 348-350, 365-367

«quality» gen. or abl. of, 441-445 «quam» with a comparative, 308 «quantity», 11-13 «questions» direct, 210 indirect, 430-432 «quî» declension and use of, 220, 221, 482 «quîdam» declension of, 485 «quis» declension and use of, 225-227, 483 «quisquam» declension of, 486 «quisque» declension of, 484

«reflexive pronouns», 281 «relative clauses of characteristic or description», 389, 390 «relative clauses of purpose», 348, 349 «relative pronouns», 220, 221 «result clauses», 384-387 «reviews», 502-528 «rûs» constructions of, 266

«sê» distinguished from *ipse*, 285.a «second conjugation», 489 «second or o-declension», 71-93, 462 «sentences» simple, complex, compound, 219 «separation» abl. of, 180 «separative ablative», 178-181 «sequence of tenses», 356-358 «space» extent of, expressed by the acc., 336 «specification» abl. of, 398 «stems» of nouns, 230 of verbs, 184 «subject» defined, 19.2 of the infinitive, 213, 214 «subjunctive» formation of the present, 344 of the imperfect, 354 of the perfect, 361, 362 of the pluperfect, 361.c, 363 «subjunctive constructions» characteristic or description, 389, 390 indirect questions, 430-432 purpose, 349, 366, 372 result, 385, 386 time, cause, or concession, with *cum*, 395, 396 «subjunctive ideas», 346 «subjunctive tenses», 342, 343 «subordinate clauses», 219 «suî» declension of, 281, 480 «sum» conjugation of, 494 «suus» use of, 98.c, 116 «syllables», 8 division of, 9 quantity of, 13 «syntax» rules of, 501

«temporal clauses» with *cum*, 395, 396 «tense» defined, 120 «tense signs» imperfect, 133 future, 137, 156 pluperfect active, 187.2 future perfect active, 187.3 «tenses» primary and secondary, 356 sequence of, 357, 358 «third conjugation», 490, 492 «third declension of nouns» classes, 231, 463 consonant stems, 232-238, 464 gender, 247 i-stems, 241-244, 465 irregular nouns, 246 «time» abl. of, 275 «time» acc. of, 336 «towns» rules for names of, 266, 267, 268 «transitive verb», 20.a «três» declension of, 479 «tû» declension of, 280, 480 «tuus» compared with *vester*, 98. b

«u»-declension of nouns, 259, 260, 466 «ultima», 9. 3

«verbs» agreement of, 28 conjugation of, 126, 488-491 deponent, 338, 339, 493 irregular, 494-500 personal endings of, 122, 164 principal parts of, 183 «vester» compared with *tuus*, 98.b «vîs» declension of, 468 «vocabularies» English-Latin, pp. 332-343 Latin-English, pp. 299-331 special, pp. 283-298 «vocative» case, 56.a of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, 73.b of proper nouns in *-ius* and of *filius*, 88 «voice» defined, 163 «volô» conjugation of, 497 «vôs» declension of, 280, 480 «vowels» sounds of, 5, 6 quantity of, 12

End of Project Gutenberg's Latin for Beginners, by Benjamin Leonard D'Ooge

*** END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK LATIN FOR BEGINNERS ***

***** This file should be named 18251-8.txt or 18251-8.zip ***** This and all associated files of various formats will be found in: <http://www.gutenberg.org/1/8/2/5/18251/>

Produced by Louise Hope, Dave Maddock and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net> (This file was made using scans of public domain material by TextKit.com)

Updated editions will replace the previous one--the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. They may be modified and printed and given away--you may do practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

*** START: FULL LICENSE ***

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at <http://gutenberg.org/license>).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying,

performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following

each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg-tm works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. **LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES** - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. **YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.**

1.F.3. **LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND** - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS' WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING

BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY

- You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need, is critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation web page at <http://www.pgla.org>.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at <http://pglaf.org/fundraising>. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S. Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email business@pglaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official page at <http://pglaf.org>

For additional contact information: Dr. Gregory B. Newby Chief Executive and Director gbnewby@pglaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status

with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit <http://pglaf.org>

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: <http://pglaf.org/donate>

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

<http://www.gutenberg.org>

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

Latin for Beginners

A free ebook from <http://manybooks.net/>